Michael Swan • Catherine Walter

Oxford English Grammar Course

مجعزبان ایرانیان



Basic



+ 'Pronunciation for grammar' CD-ROM



with answers

irlanguage

Oxford English Grammar Course Basic

A grammar practice book for elementary to pre-intermediate students of English

Michael Swan & Catherine Walter

Oxford English Grammar Course

Basic



A grammar practice book for elementary to pre-intermediate students of English

With answers

این مجموعه با لوگوی مرجع زبان ایرانیان به صورت نشر بر خط و حامل به ثبت رسیده است. کپی بر داری از آن خلاف شرع، قانون و اخلاق است و شامل پیگیرد خواهد شد.



contents

introduction	vi
words for talking about grammar	viii
list of units	×
units	1
appendices	299
answer key	309
index	355

authors' acknowledgements

We owe a continuing debt to the many people whose advice and comments helped us with earlier versions of this material. The present book has benefited enormously from the hard work and professionalism of our editorial and design team at Oxford University Press. In particular, we would like to acknowledge the contributions of our remarkable editor, Sarah Parsons, and our equally remarkable designer, Phil Hargraves, who have made it possible for us to write the book that we wanted to, and whose input is evident on every page.

introduction

Who is this book for?

The Oxford English Grammar Course (Basic Level) is for all elementary and pre-intermediate learners who want to improve their knowledge of English grammar.

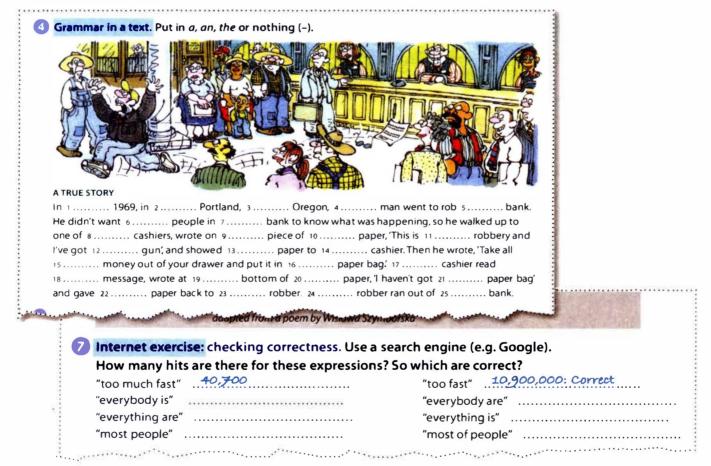
What kind of English does the book teach?

This book teaches the grammar of spoken and written British English. But it can also be used by students of American, Australian or other kinds of English – the grammatical differences are very small and unimportant.

How is the book organised?

There are 22 sections. A section covers one part of English grammar (for example: making questions and negatives; present tense verbs; problems with nouns). Each section contains:

- · a presentation page which introduces the point of grammar
- several short units with explanations and exercises
- two 'More Practice' pages: these include 'Grammar in a text' exercises and internet exercises
- a short revision test.



Two levels

More basic units are marked 'Level 1'; more advanced units are marked 'Level 2'.





One way of using the book: to study particular points

If you want to know more about a particular point (for example present tenses, the difference between *should* and *must*, or the position of adverbs), look in the index (pages 355–362) to find the right unit(s). Read the explanations and do the exercises. Check your answers in the answer key (pages 309–354).

Another way of using the book: for systematic study

If you are working without a teacher, we suggest:

- 1 DON'T go right through the book from beginning to end some parts will be unnecessary for you.
- 2 Decide which sections you most need to study. Section 1, 'be and have', for example? Section 8, 'questions and negatives'? Section 19, 'relative pronouns'? Or other sections?
- 3 Go to the pages that you need. Read the grammar explanations, do the exercises, and check your answers in the answer key (pages 309-354).
- 4 In some units there are 'Grammar and vocabulary' exercises for students who would like to learn more words. Try these as well if you want to.
- 5 Do some or all of the exercises in the 'More Practice' pages.
- 6 Go to the revision test at the end of the section, and try some or all of the questions.
- 7 Check your answers. If you still have problems, look at the explanations again.

Website

On the website there are tests which will help you to decide what you need to study, or to find out how well you have learnt the different points of grammar. There are also extra exercises and games to give you more practice on some of the points.

Pronunciation

The 'Pronunciation for grammar' CD-ROM will help you to pronounce structures fluently, with good rhythm and stress.



Examinations

This book teaches all of the grammar (and more!) that is needed for Common European Framework Levels A1 and A2, and is suitable for learners studying for Cambridge KET and PET.

If you know everything in the book, will you speak perfect English?

No, sorry!

- 1 Not many people learn foreign languages perfectly. (And not many people need to.) But this book will help you to speak and write much more correctly.
- 2 Books like this give short practical explanations. They cannot tell you the whole truth about English grammar, and they cannot give you enough practice to get all the difficult points right. If you follow the rules in this book, you will not make many mistakes. But you will probably need to practise using the structures in different situations. (The website material will help with this.) You will find more complete information about difficult points in the Intermediate Level of the Oxford English Grammar Course.
- 3 Grammar is not the only important thing in a language. You also need a wide vocabulary, and very important – you need a lot of practice in listening and speaking, reading and writing. Remember: this is a grammar practice book, not a complete English course.

1) what Snun Catherine Walter

We hope that you will enjoy using our book.

With our best wishes for your progress in English.

INTRODUCTION vii

words for talking about grammar

```
active and passive: I see, she heard are active verbs; I am seen, she was heard are passive verbs.
adjectives: for example big, old, yellow, unhappy.
adverbs: for example quickly, completely, now, there.
affirmative sentences or statements are not questions or negatives – for example I arrived.
articles: a/an ('indefinite article'); the ('definite article').
auxiliary verbs are used before other verbs to make questions, tenses etc – for example do you think; I have finished,
   she is working. See also modal auxiliary verbs.
clause: see sentence.
comparatives: for example older, better, more beautiful, more slowly.
conditional: a structure using the conjunction if.
conjunctions: for example and, but, because, while.
consonants: see vowels.
contractions: short forms like I'm, you're, he'll, don't.
conversational: see formal.
countable nouns: the names of things we can count – for example one chair, three cars; uncountable (or 'mass')
   nouns: the names of things we can't count, like oil, rice.
determiners: words like the, some, many, my, which go before (adjective +) noun.
double letters: pp, tt, ee etc.
formal, informal, conversational: We use formal language with strangers, in business letters etc: for example
  'Good afternoon, Mr Parker. May I help you?' We use informal or conversational language with family and
  friends: for example 'Hi, John. Want some help?'
future verbs: for example I will go; Ann is going to write to us.
imperatives: forms like Go home, Come and sit down, Don't worry, which we use when we tell or ask people (not)
  to do things.
indirect speech: the grammar that we use to say what people say or think: for example John said that he was tired.
infinitives: (to) go, (to) sleep etc.
informal: see formal.
-ing forms: going, sleeping etc.
irregular: see regular.
leave out: If we say Seen John?, we are leaving out Have you.
modal verbs or modal auxiliary verbs: must, can, could, may, might, shall, should, ought to, will and would.
negative sentences are made with not: for example I have not seen her.
nouns: for example chair, oil, idea, sentence.
object: see subject.
opposite: hot is the opposite of cold; up is the opposite of down.
passive: see active.
past perfect tense: see perfect tenses.
past progressive tense: see past tenses.
past tenses: for example went, saw, stopped (simple past); was going, were eating (past progressive).
past participles: for example gone, seen, stopped.
perfect tenses: forms with have/has/had + past participle: for example I have forgotten (present perfect); It has
  been raining (present perfect progressive); They had stopped (past perfect).
personal pronouns: for example I, you, us, them.
plural: see singular.
possessives: for example my, your, mine, yours; John's, my brothers'.
prepositions: for example at, in, on, between.
present participles: for example going, sleeping etc (also called -ing forms).
present perfect tenses: see perfect tenses.
```

present tenses: for example *He goes* (simple present); *She is walking* (present progressive).

progressive (or 'continuous'): for example *I am thinking* (present progressive); *They were talking* (past progressive).

pronouns: for example I, you, anybody, themselves.

question tags: for example isn't it?, doesn't she?

reflexive pronouns: myself, yourself etc.

regular: plurals like cats, buses; past tenses like started, stopped; irregular: plurals like teeth, men, children; past tenses like broke, went, saw.

relative clauses: clauses that begin with relative pronouns: for example the man who bought my car.

relative pronouns: who, which and that when they join clauses to nouns: for example the man who bought my car.

sentence, clause: A sentence begins with a capital letter (A, B etc) and ends with a full stop (.), like this one. A sentence may have more than one clause, often joined by a conjunction. For example: I'll come and see you when I'm in London.

simple past tense: see past tenses.

simple present tense: see present tenses.

singular: for example chair, cat, man; plural: for example chairs, cats, men.

spelling: writing words correctly: for example, we spell necessary with one c and double s.

subject and object: In She took the money – everybody saw her, the subjects are she and everybody; the objects are the money and her.

superlatives: for example oldest, best, most beautiful, most easily.

tense: She goes, she is going, she went, she was going, she has gone are different tenses.

third person: words for other people, not I or you: for example she, them, himself, John, has, goes.

uncountable nouns: see countable nouns. verbs: for example sit, give, hold, think, write.

vowels: a, e, i, o, u and their usual sounds; consonants: b, c, d, f, g etc and their usual sounds.

other useful words

Here are some other words that are used in this book. Find them in your dictionary and write the translations here.

action	polite
choose	politely
common	possibility
complete (<i>verb</i>)	possible
correct	practise
description	predict
difference	prefer
event	probable
exclamation	pronounce
explain	pronunciation
expression	repeat
form (<i>noun</i>)	report
go on, happen	revision
in general	rule
introduction	section
join	similar
mean (<i>verb</i>)	situation
meaning	stressed (pronunciation)
necessary	structure
news	unnecessary
normal	unusual
normally	use (noun)
particular	use (<i>verb</i>)
nslqn	(word) order

list of units

SECTION 1 be and nave pages 1-14		will: predicting I think it will rain tomorrow.	39
grammar summary	1	will: deciding, refusing, promising I'll answer	it. 40
be I am happy today. Are we late?	2-3	simple present for future	
be: past Where were you? I was in Glasgow.	4	Our train leaves at 8.10.	41
be: future The bus will be full.	5	future: more practice	42-43
there is/was There's a dog in the garden.	6	future: revision test	44
there is: future Will there be cars?	7		
have I have do you have? I don't have	8	SECTION 4 past tenses pages 45-56	
have: past and future	9	grammar summary	45
have: actions He's having a shower.	10	simple past: forms I worked. I went.	46
have without do: have got		simple past: use I left school in 1990.	47
Have you got a cat?	11	simple past: negatives I did not work.	
be and have: more practice	12-13	l did not go.	48
be and have: revision test	14	simple past questions Did you pay? What did she say?	49
SECTION 2 present tenses pages 15-	34	simple past: more practice	50
grammar summary	15	past progressive What were you doing at 8.00	0? 51
simple present affirmative		simple past or past progressive?	
I work; you work; she works	16	l walked / l was walking	52-53
simple present: use I work in a bank.	17	past tenses: more practice	54-55
simple present negatives		past tenses: revision test	56
I don't know. She doesn't ski.	18-19		
simple present questions		SECTION 5 perfect tenses pages 57–7.	2
Do you remember me?	20-21	grammar summary	57
simple present: more practice	22	present perfect: forms	
present progressive: forms		I have paid. Has she forgotten?	58-59
I'm reading. I'm not working.	23	finished actions: present perfect	
present progressive: use		or simple past?	60-61
I'm working just now.	24	time words: present perfect	
present progressive negatives		or simple past?	62-63
He's not listening to me.	25	already, yet and just	64
present progressive questions Is it raining?	26	since and for since Tuesday; for ten years	65
present progressive: more practice	27	present perfect progressive	
the two present tenses: the difference	28-29	It's been raining since Sunday.	66-67
non-progressive verbs <i>I don't understand</i> .	30-31	past perfect	
present tenses: more practice	32-33	It had already begun when we arrived.	68–69
present tenses: revision test	34	perfect tenses: more practice	70-71
		perfect tenses: revision test	72
SECTION 3 talking about the future			
pages 35–44		SECTION 6 modal verbs pages 73-92	
grammar summary	35	grammar summary	73
going to Look – it's going to rain.	36-37	modal verbs: introduction can, must, should	etc74
present progressive		must You must be home by eleven. Must you g	o? 75
What are you doing this evening?	38	have to Do you have to teach small children?	76

mustn't and don't have to		negatives Dogs can't fly. I don't know wh	y.112–113
We mustn't wake the baby.	77	not and no	114
had to, will have to I didn't have to pay.	78	negatives with nobody, never etc	
should What should I tell John?	79	Nobody loves me.	115
can He can play the piano.	80	questions and negatives: more practice	116–117
could; be able to		questions and negatives: revision test	118
She couldn't write. I'll be able to drive so	on. 81		
may and might		SECTION 9 infinitives and -ing forms	
It may snow. I might have a cold.	82-83	pages 119–138	
can, could and may: permission		grammar summary	119
Can I use the phone?	84-85	infinitives: using to I want to go. Must yo	u go? 120
can/could you?: requests		infinitive of purpose	
Can you lend me a stamp?	86	She went to Paris to study music.	121
shall in questions What shall we do?	87	verb + infinitive I hope to be an airline pil	ot.122-123
would Would you like a drink? I'd like to b	e taller. 88	verb + object + infinitive	
used to I used to play the piano.	89	He wants me to cook.	124-125
modal verbs: more practice	90-91	it with infinitive subjects	
modal verbs: revision test	92	It's nice to be here with you.	126-127
		adjective + infinitive	
SECTION 7 passives pages 93-102		glad to find you at home	128
grammar summary	93	adjectives with enough/to + infinitive	
passives: introduction		too tired to sing	129
English is spoken in Australia.	94	noun/pronoun + infinitive	
simple present passive		some letters to write	130
We are woken by the birds.	95	-ing forms as subjects Smoking is bad for	you. 131
future passive		preposition +ing Thank you for coming	g.132–133
Tomorrow your bicycle will be stolen.	96	verb +ing I can't help feeling unhappy.	134-135
simple past passive		infinitives and -ing forms: more practice	136-137
I was stopped by a policeman.	97	infinitives and -ing forms: revision test	138
present progressive passive It's being cle	eaned. 98		
present perfect passive		SECTION 10 special structures with	verbs
The house has been sold.	99	pages 139–150	
passives: more practice	100-101	grammar summary	139
passives: revision test	102	structures with get	
		get up get your coat it's getting cold	140
SECTION 8 questions and negatives		verbs with prepositions Wait for me.	141
pages 103–118		phrasal verbs	
grammar summary	103	Come in, take off your coat and sit down	. 142–143
<i>yes/no</i> questions		verbs with two objects	
Is the taxi here? Do I need a visa?	104-105	Take the boss these letters.	144
question words When will you see her?	106-107	have something done	
question-word subjects		I have my hair cut every week.	145
Who phoned? What happened?	108-109	imperatives Come in. Don't worry.	146
questions with long subjects		let's (suggestions) Let's go.	147
Are Ann and her mother coming?	110	special structures with verbs: more practic	ce148–149
prepositions in questions		special structures with verbs: revision test	150
Who did you go with?	111		

SECTION 11 articles: a/an and the		SECTION 14 nouns pages 195–208	
pages 151–166		grammar summary	195
grammar summary	151	singular and plural nouns cat, cats; box, bo	oxes 196
a/an; pronunciation of the	152	singular/plural team, family; jeans, scissors	197
countable and uncountable a car, cars; p	etrol 153	countable and uncountable nouns	198–199
the and a/an		one and ones a big one; the ones on the cha	air 200
Let's see a film. I didn't like the film.	154–155	'sand s' possessive: forms son's, sons', men	's 201
a/an She's a doctor.	156	's and s' possessive: use	
a/an: describing people She's got a nice s	mile. 157	lan's car; the boss's car	202-203
talking in general without the		noun + noun	
People are funny.	158–159	Milk chocolate is a kind of chocolate.	204-205
names Mary, Africa, the USA	160-161	nouns: more practice	206-207
special cases		nouns: revision test	208
in bed; after lunch; a hundred;	162–163		
articles: more practice	164–165	SECTION 15 adjectives and adverbs	
articles: revision test	166	pages 209–220	
		grammar summary	209
SECTION 12 determiners pages 167		adjectives	
grammar summary	167	a beautiful little girl who was not stupid	
this, that, these and those	168–169	adverbs of manner He ate quickly.	212
some and any		other adverbs I like sport very much.	213
I need some sugar. Have you got any?	170–171	adverbs with the verb often, certainly etc.	
somebody, anything, nowhere	172	interested and interesting etc	216
much and many		fast, hard, hardly, well, friendly,	217
How much milk? How many languages?		,	218-219
a lot of and lots of	174	adjectives and adverbs: revision test	220
a little and a few a little English; a few wor		CECTION AS	
enough money; fast enough	176	SECTION 16 comparison pages 221–	
too, too much/many and not enough	177	grammar summary	221
all all my friends are here; my friends are	170	comparative and superlative adjectives: for	
all here	178	comparative or superlative?	223
all and every; each	179 180	comparatives: use	224 225
both, either and neither determiners and of most people; most of		3	224–225
determiners and or most people, most or determiners: more practice	182–183	superlatives the highest mountain in the world	226
determiners: more practice	184	comparison of adverbs More slowly, please	
determiners, revision test	104	(not) as as Your hands are as cold as ice. 2	
SECTION 13 personal pronouns; pos	caccivac		230-229 230-231
pages 185–194	36331463	comparison: revision test	232
grammar summary	185	companson, revision test	232
personal pronouns: I and me etc	186–187	SECTION 17 conjunctions pages 233	-242
possessives: my, your etc This is my coat.	188-189	grammar summary	233
possessives: mine, yours etc This is mine.	190	conjunctions: introduction	233
reflexive pronouns: myself, yourself etc	191	and, but, because	234
personal pronouns and possessives:		position of conjunctions	234
more practice	192–193	If you need help, ask me.	235
personal pronouns and possessives:	. , , , ,	tenses with time conjunctions	233
revision test	194	I'll see you before you go.	236
		see you belove you go.	250

because and so; although and but	237	SECTION 21 prepositions pages 27:	3-286
and I speak Russian, English and Swahili	238	grammar summary	273
double conjunctions		at, in and on (time)	274-275
both and; (n)either (n)or	239	from to, until and by	276
conjunctions: more practice	240-241	for, during and while	277
conjunctions: revision test	242	in and on (place)	278
		at (place)	279
SECTION 18 if pages 243-252		other prepositions of place	280-281
grammar summary	243	prepositions of movement	282-283
if: position; unless	244	prepositions: more practice	284-285
if: future I'll phone you if I hear from Alice.	245	prepositions: revision test	286
not real / not probable If dogs could talk,	246		
If I were you,	247	SECTION 22 spoken grammar pages	s 287–298
If I go, I will; If I went, I would	248	grammar summary	287
unreal past		question tags	
If A had happened, B would have happe	ned. 249	This music isn't very good, is it?	288-289
if: more practice	250-251	short answers Yes, I have. No, they didn't.	290
if: revision test	252	reply questions Oh, yes? Did they really?	291
		revision of spoken question and	
SECTION 19 relative pronouns		answer structures	292
pages 253-262		leaving out words Don't know if she has.	293
grammar summary	253	so am I; nor do I etc	294-295
relative who and which		spoken grammar: more practice	296-297
the keys which I lost	254-255	spoken grammar: revision test	298
relative that a bird that can't fly	256		
leaving out relative pronouns			
the car (that) you bought	257		
prepositions the man that she works for	258		
relative what It was just what I wanted.	259		
relative pronouns: more practice	260-261		
relative pronouns: revision test	262		
SECTION 20 indirect speech pages 2			
grammar summary	263		
tenses and pronouns			
Bill said he was really happy.	264–265		
indirect questions			
She asked him what his name was.	266		
present reporting verbs			
She says she comes from London.	267		
here and now > there and then	268		
infinitives She told me to get out.	269		
indirect speech: more practice	270–271		
indirect speech: revision test	272		

SECTION 1 be and have

grammar summary

be (am/are/is/was/were)

- We can use adjectives, nouns or expressions of place after be.
 She is late. I'm hungry. Are you a doctor? Is everybody here?
- We use a special structure with be there is to introduce things: to say that they exist.
 There's a strange woman at the door.
 There are some letters for you.
- Be can be an auxiliary verb in progressive tenses (see page 23) and passives (see page 94).
 She is working. It was made in Hong Kong.

have (have/has/had)

- We can use have or have got to talk about possession, relationships and some other ideas.
 Do you have a car? I don't have any brothers or sisters. Ann has got a headache.
- And we can use have to talk about some kinds of actions.
 I'm going to have a shower.
 What time do you have breakfast?
- Have can also be an auxiliary verb in perfect tenses (see Section 5).
 I haven't seen her all day.
 We knew that he had taken the money.





'And were you good while I was out?'

To be or not to be, that is the question. (Shakespeare: Hamlet)

Is there life before death? (Seamus Heaney)

If you've got everything, you've got nothing.

(Leni MacShaw)

There's a thin man inside every fat man. (George Orwell.

You can have it all, but you can't do it all. (Michelle Pfeiffer)

When I was young there was no respect for the young, and now that I am old there is no respect for the old.

(JB Priestley)

be I am happy today. Are we late?

	BE: PRESEN	IT				
+ ?	lam am l? lam not	you are are you? you are not	he/she/it is is he/she/it? he/she/it is not	we are are we? we are not	they are are they? they are not	
_	a doctor.	Are you Amer			they die not	
			rearr. We are no	a ready.		
	ut in am, a					
	Youare				happy today.	
_		very well.	•		think you tired	
2	•	a doc Ann ir			our housevery very ready.	smail.
3	raul allu /	AIIII II	i America.	, ,	Hearry ready.	
n cc	onversation	and informal w	riting, we use cont i	ractions:		
m	you're	he's she's	it's John's	the train's	we're they're	
m a	doctor.	You're late.	John's in London.	The shop's	open. We' <mark>re</mark> ready.	
V	Vrite these	sentences wi	th contractions.			
			L .	4 N	ly name is Peter	
					ou are early	
2	They are h	ere		6 Т	he shop is closed	
3	I am sorry.			7 S	he is at home	
		I am late. Am I late?	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here?	We are la		
UES	STION ?:	Am I late?				
UES	STION ?:	Am I late?	Is the taxi here?	Are we la		the car?
UES	STION ? : Make quest Bill / Scott	Am I late? ions. ish !s Bill !	Is the taxi here?	Are we la	te? Are my keys in	the car?
N N 1	Aake quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro	ions. ishs Bill som Paris	Is the taxi here? Scottish?	7 w	re all / ready	the car?
1 2 3	Aake quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very l John / in b	ions. ish Is Bill som Paris	Is the taxi here?	7 w 8 I/ 9 th 10 y	re all / ready	the car?
N 1 2 3 4	Aake quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very l John / in b the boss /	ions. ish Is Bill som Paris late here	Is the taxi here?	7 w 8 l / 9 th 10 ye 11 Je	re all / ready	the car?
1 2 3 4 5	Aake quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very l John / in b the boss / your car /	ions. ish Is Bill some Paris late bed here	Is the taxi here? Scottish?	7 w 8 l 9 th 10 y 11 J 12 th	re all / ready re all / ready rearly ney / at home ou / happy ne / married nis / your house	the car?
1 2 3 4 5	Aake quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very l John / in b the boss / your car /	ions. ish Is Bill some Paris late bed here	Is the taxi here?	7 w 8 l 9 th 10 y 11 J 12 th	re all / ready	the car?
M 1 2 3 4 5 6	Aake quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very l John / in b the boss / your car / f Luke / here	Am I late? ish	Is the taxi here? Scottish? words? who wh	7 w 8 l 9 th 10 y 11 J 12 th 13 th	re all / ready	the car?
M 1 2 3 4 5 6	Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very l John / in b the boss / your car / Luke / here ou know all	ions. ish Is Bill some Paris late here fast these question	Is the taxi here? Scottish? words? who whhat's when's wh	Are we land 7 w 9 th 10 yo 12 th 13 th at when were's why's	re all / ready	the car?
M 1 2 3 4 5 6	Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very l John / in b the boss / your car / Luke / here ou know all	ions. ish Is Bill some Paris late here fast these question	Is the taxi here? Scottish? words? who wh	Are we land 7 w 9 th 10 yo 12 th 13 th at when were's why's	re all / ready	the car?
M 1 2 3 4 5 6 6 00 ye	Aake quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very l John / in b the boss / your car / Luke / here ou know all ractions wit sthat?	Am I late? ish	Is the taxi here? Scottish? words? who wh hat's when's when's when's the party? th are or 's.	Are we land 7 w 9 th 10 yo 12 th 13 th at when were's why's	re all / ready	the car?
M	Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very l John / in b the boss / your car / Luke / here ou know all tractions wit sthat? Who's	Am I late? ions. ish	Is the taxi here? Scottish? words? who wh hat's when's whe When's the party? th are or 's. s my brother:	Are we land 7 w 8 l / 9 th 10 y 11 J 12 th 13 th 13 th 15 why's Where's the st	re all / ready	re? How are you?
M 1 2 3 4 5 6 6 00 years ont	Aake quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very l John / in b the boss / your car / Luke / here ou know all ractions wit 's that? W	Am I late? ish	Is the taxi here? Scottish? I words? who wh hat's when's when's when's when's when's when's who when's the party? Ith are or 's. Is my brother.' Amy?' 'In London.'	Are we land 7 w 9 th 10 ye 12 th 13 th 13 th 15 where's why's Where's the st 5 '. 6 '.	re all / ready	re? How are you? 'My watch is broke her?' 'Not very well
M	Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very l John / in b the boss / your car / Luke / here ou know all ractions wit sthat? Who's , Who's , Where	ions. ish	s the taxi here? Scottish? words? who whhat's when's when's the party? th are or 's. s my brother.' Amy?' 'In London.' ne?' 'Maria.'	Are we land 7 w 9 th 10 ye 12 th 13 th 15 where's why's Where's the st 5 '. 6 '. 7 '.	re all / ready	the car? "e? How are you? "My watch is broke her?" 'Not very well In hospital.'
Mo your form to the state of th	Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very l John / in b the boss / your car / Luke / here ou know all tractions wit sthat? Who's , where	Am I late? ish	s the taxi here? Scottish? words? who whhat's when's when's the party? th are or 's. s my brother.' Amy?' 'In London.' ne?' 'Maria.'	Are we land 7 w 8 l / 10 y 11 J 12 th 13 th 13 th 5 ' 6 ' 7 '. 8 '.	re all / ready	re? How are you? 'My watch is broke her?' 'Not very well In hospital.' n?' 'I don't know.'

To make negative () sentences with be,	we put not after	am/are/is or 'm, 'r	es mantal tead	
I am not Scottish.				They're not my friends.	
	ontractions with n't: y				
5 Write negative	e (=) ends for the se	entences.	-laga c		
I'm Greek, bu	t (= from Athens)! t (= cold)it's not	cold	rieras.	tisn't cold	•••••
	_				
	_				
·					
_					
No often use he wit	h. hunaru shiresu cale	d hat right wron	a afraid interest	ed what colour? what size?	
And we use be with		i, not, right, wron	y, arraia, intereste	ed, what colour?, what size?	
	ng to eat? I'm hungry.	I'm sold	It's very hot here ir	o cummor	
	nt. Let's go.' Are you		l'm interested		
	air? What size are		How old are you?		
Complete the	sentences under th	e pictures.			
THE STATE OF THE S		STOP STOP)
She is hung! Put in words from		2 She	3	4 lt	
afraid ✓ cold	d colour hot	hungry interes	sted old rigi	nt size thirsty wrong	,
He is a big ma 1 You think I'm	n, but he is . afraid	of her.			

•	He is a big man, but he isafraid of her.
1	You think I'm wrong, but I know I'm
2	'Whatis that T-shirt?' 'Extra large
3	What is your car?

4 Sorry, I'm not in her problems. 5 'It's the 18th today.' 'You're – it's the 19th.'

6 'Something to drink?' 'No, thanks. I'm not'

7 'It's in here.' 'Open a window.'

8 Is it here in winter?

9 'How is your girlfriend?' 'She's 19.'

10 'I'm' 'Would you like a sandwich?'

be: past Where were you? I was in Glasgow.

	Iwas	У	ou wer	e he	/she/it was	we were	they we			
?	was I	? и	vere yo		s he/she/it?	were we?	were th		2711	
Ξ	Iwas	not y	ou wer	e not he	/she/it was not	we were not	they we	re not	tivel.	
	Cont	ractions:	wasn't,	weren't	Para trade and					
	Where	were you	ı yester	day? My	mother was a sir	nger. I wasn't	well last i	week.		
4	Dut in :	was or w	,oro							
				was in Br	essil					
						And I h	anny to (
						And Ih. not very good.	арру (О :	see you.		
					here this mor					
					ve tired	_				
				-		u. o brothers	both	doctors to	00	
					lay?' 'No, I		botti	doctors to	00.	
_		•			yester	_				
			•		•	•				
	B 'Why	•••••	you	iale: IIIe li	ain lat	·C.				
2	Put the	words	in the	correct or	der to make qu	estions.				
						ome yesterday?				
	•					••••				
4			•							
9										• • • • • •
(•		•							
8										
					•					
				n't and wo	rds from the b	ox. Make sure y	ou und	erstand	actual	lly.
					ids iroin the B	,				
				ecessary.		,				
	Use a c	lictiona	ry if ne	ecessary.				warm	well	with A
	U se a c a tea	cher g	ry if ne	in England	in their hotel	I interesting 🗸	late	warm	well	with A
	U se a c a tea	cher g	ry if ne	in England	in their hotel	I interesting 🗸	late	warm	well	with A
	a tea The I	cher g	good vasn't	in England	in their hotel		late ng.	warm	well	with A
	a tea The I	cher g	good wasn't	in England	in their hotel Actuall Actually, you	l interesting ✓ y, it was very bori	late ng. s early.		well	with Ai
	a tea The I You My fa	cher gesson	good	in England	in their hotel Actuall Actually, you a	interesting y, it was very bori	late ng. s early. ous drive		well	with A
	a tea The I You My fa I	cher gesson	good vasw't	in England	in their hotel Actuall Actually, you a Actually esterday. Actually	y, it was very bori arrived 10 minute t, he worked as a b	late ng. s early. ous drive in.	r.		with A
	a tea The I You My fa I The o	cher gesson	good wasn't	in England	in their hotel Actuall Actually, you a Actually esterday. Actually	y, it was very bori arrived 10 minute , he worked as a b ly, I was with Susa	late ng. s early. ous drive in. came to s	r. see them.		with A
	a tea The I You My fa I The G We .	cher gesson	good wasn't	in England	in their hotel Actuall Actually, you a Actually esterday. Actually yeste last week. We v	y, it was very bori arrived 10 minute , he worked as a b ly, I was with Susa rday. The doctor o	late ng. s early. ous drive in. came to s	r. see them.		with A
	a tea The I You My fa I The G We The S	cher gesson	good vasw't	in England	in their hotel Actuall Actually, you a Actually esterday. Actually yeste last week. We v	y, it was very bori arrived 10 minute t, he worked as a b ly, I was with Susa rday. The doctor of went to Scotland it	late ng. s early. ous drive in. came to s	r. see them.		with A

be: future The bus will be full.

+ ?	I/you/he/she/it/we/they will be will I/you/she etc be? I/you/he etc will not be
	Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; won't (= will not)
1+ 14/	Il he sold this evening. I'll he at home all day tomorrow

It will be cold this evening. I'll be at home all day tomorrow.			
Where will we be ten years from now? The exam won't be difficult.			
_			
Look at the table and complete the text.			
Tomorrow it will be very hot in Cairo.	Cairo	35°	
It hot in	Rio	30°	
warm in	Paris	23°	
cold in	London	30	
very cold in	Moscow	-18°	0°
2 Change these sentences to affirmative (♣) or negative (♠). ► The bus will not be full. ► She'll be late. 1 I'll be sorry. 2 It will not be hot. 3 We won't be at home. 4 The shops will be closed. 5 He'll be in Scotland.			
To make future questions with be, we put will before the STATEMENT +: We will be late. Her brother will be here at 10.00. The			
QUESTION ?: Will we be late? When will her brother be here? Will to	the bus be full?		
Make questions with will be?			
you / at home / this evening			
you / at home / this evening			
you / at home / this evening			
you / at home / this evening			
you / at home / this evening	2000 I		

Last year In 20..... In 20.....

there is/was There's a dog in the garden.

	PRESENT		PAST	
+ ?	there is is there? there is not	there are are there? there are not	therewas was there? therewas not	there were were there? there were not
	Contractions	s: there's; isn't, aren't,	wasn't, weren't	According to the Control of the Cont

We use *there is, there are* etc to say that something or somebody exists.

We often use there is, there are etc before alan, some and any.

There's a dog in the garden. (NOT A dog is in the garden.)

There are some letters for you.

Is there any milk in the fridge? (NOT Is any milk ...?)

There isn't much coffee.

Were there any phone calls? (NOT Were any phone calls?)

There was a good film last night.

Make some sentences with words from the three boxes, using there is etc.

There is/are a lot of There isn't much There aren't many There isn't/aren't any There wasn't/weren't any	->	water air grass dogs elephants trees cars people computers (you think of some more things)	→	in Africa in the USA in Antarctica in London on the moon in 1600 (you think of some more places or times)
--	----	--	----------	---

	There are a lot of animals in Africa.
	There weren't any cars in 1600.
2	***************************************
3	
5	***************************************
6	

To make questions with there is etc, we put is etc before there.							
STATEMENT +:	There is a letter for you.	There were some problems.	William says there are six eggs.				
QUESTION ?:	Is there a letter for me?	Were there any problems?	How many eggs are there?				

Make present or past questions with there is etc.

	any fruit juice in the fridge (present) Is there any truit juice in the triage?
	any letters for me (past) Were there any letters for me?
	how many people / in your family (present) How many people are there in your family?
1	a doctor here (present)
	any trains to London from this station (present)
	a special price for students (past)
4	any mistakes in my letter (past)
5	much money in your bank account (present)
6	how many students / in your class (present)
7	many children at the swimming pool (past)
8	how many people / at the party (past)

there is: future Will there be cars?

	FUTURE
+ ?	there will be will there be? there will not be
	Contraction: won't (= will not)
Th.	- will be a while heliday and Tyraday. Will be as be a madin to an and

There will be a public holiday next Tuesday. Will there be a meeting tomorrow? There will not be any time for us to see Mary. There won't be any of my friends at the party.

Complete the sentences with there will be and words from the box.

	fish flowers	food	hospital	rain 🗸	sun	ten peopl	e trouble	two new students
•	I think . there	will be r	ain	. tomorro	ow.			
	But I think					<i>/</i> .		
2 .			in the	class ton	orrow.			
3 .			in our	house at	the we	ekend.		
4 (One day, perhaps for everybody.							
								·
6.			a new				in our tow	n next year.
7	'Mum, I've brok	en a wind	dow.' '			wh	en your fathe	r comes home.'
8 .			a lot o	f			in the ga	rden this summer.
Ma	ke negative (🖪) sente	ences. Use	There w	ill not	be or Ther	e won't be.	
> 1	time / see Gran	ny The	re won't b	e time t	o see c	Granny.		
		-						
	_							
	•		_					
5 a	anybody / hom	e tomorro	ow evening					
6 8	any children / tl	he party						
7 8	a French lesson	/ Monda	y evening					
8 1	time / have lund	ch today				• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		
\ \ / :	i a	ahawa lir	fo in abou	2100		14/:11 45 000	h- 2	
	ite questions (cars) Will t							
,	(trains)							
						_		
	(computers)							
3 ((good food)				• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	/ (your c	question)	
Wri	ite your answ	ers to th	e questior	ns in Exe	rcise 3	3.		
▶ .	There will be	cars. of	There wo	n't be c	ars.	4		
1.						5		
						_		
2.	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • •		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		6		

have I have do you have? I don't have

I/you/we/they have he/she/it has

141							
		s, family (and other) relations					
I have a new car.	Nina has two sisters.	Pete has a nice girlfriend.	We all have colds.				
We also say that people have hair, eyes etc; and that things have parts.							
You have beautiful	eyes. My new car onl	y has two doors.					
Circle the cor	rect form						
► John / Dhave		4 I see tha	t your brother have / has a new girlfriend				
			ul has very long hair.				
 Grace(has) / have a cold. My father / My parents has two cars. These houses have / has big rooms. 							
2 We all / Sally			ead this book – it <i>has / have</i> 800 pages.				
3 have / has a	•		usie and Mick have a really nice flat.				
		1.1 .11 .1.					
	= -		one of your friends or relations has				
3		6					
		s (=) with do/does/did + infi	nitive (without to).				
	negatives without do, se	ee page 11.)					
STATEMENT +	QUESTION ?		NEGATIVE -				
have the keys.	Do I have the keys?	(I do not / don't have the keys.				
Joe has a car.							
l	Does Joe nave a car?	(NOT Does Joe has)	Joe does not / doesn't have a car.				
	ns (2) or negatives (Joe does not / doesn't have a car.				
	ns (🔁) or negatives (■) with <i>have</i> .	Joe does not / doesn't have a car.				
Make question you / a cat	ns (12) or negatives (1	■) with <i>have</i> .					
Make question → you / a cat → Eric / many fr	ns (?) or negatives (Do you have a ca iends Eric does	■) with have. t? N't have many friends.					
Make question → you / a cat → Eric / many fr 1 we / a garder	ns (?) or negatives (Do you have a ca iends Eric does We don't) with have. t? n't have many friends.					
Make question → you / a cat → Eric / many fr 1 we / a garder	ns (?) or negatives (Do you have a ca riends Eric does Me don't	■) with have. t? N't have many friends.					
Make question you / a cat 2 Eric / many fr we / a garder they / any ch Peter / a cold	ns (?) or negatives (Do you have a can iends	■) with have. t? n't have many friends.					
Make question you / a cat 2 Fric / many fr we / a garder they / any ch Peter / a cold my aunt / a d	ns (?) or negatives (Do you have a can iends Eric doesu We don't ildren ?) with have. t? n't have many friends.					
Make question you / a cat 2 Eric / many fr we / a garder they / any ch Peter / a cold my aunt / a d Monica / any	ns (?) or negatives (Do you have a can iends Tric does We don't ildren ? og The brothers or sisters ?) with have. t? n't have many friends.					
Make question you / a cat 2 Fric / many fr we / a garder they / any ch Peter / a cold my aunt / a d Monica / any / l / enough me	ns (?) or negatives (Do you have a can iends	■) with have. t? n't have many friends.					
Make question you / a cat 2 Fric / many fr we / a garder they / any ch Peter / a cold my aunt / a d Monica / any I / enough me Laura / a boy	ns (?) or negatives (Do you have a can itends — Eric does We don't ildren ? og — brothers or sisters ? friend ?	■) with have. t? n't have many friends.					
Make question you / a cat Eric / many fr we / a garder they / any ch Peter / a cold my aunt / a d Monica / any I / enough me Laura / a boy Why / you / to	ns (?) or negatives (Do you have a can iends We don't ildren ? og brothers or sisters ? oney friend ? wo cars ?	■) with have. t? n't have many friends.					
Make question you / a cat you / a cat represented in the proof of the	ns (?) or negatives (Do you have a can iends — Eric does iends — We don't ildren ? og — brothers or sisters ? oney — friend ? wo cars ? aree things that you of	■) with have. t? n't have many friends.					
Make question you / a cat 2 Fric / many fr we / a garder they / any ch Peter / a cold my aunt / a d Monica / any I / enough me Laura / a boy Write about th relations does	or negatives (Do you have a can iends We don't We don't og brothers or sisters ? oney friend ? wo cars ? aree things that you on't have.	st? "t have many friends. don't have, and three thin	gs that one of your friends or				
Make question you / a cat Fric / many fr we / a garder they / any ch Peter / a cold my aunt / a d Monica / any I / enough me Laura / a boy Write about th relations does	or negatives (Do you have a can iends We don't We don't og brothers or sisters ? oney friend ? wo cars ? aree things that you on't have.	st? "t have many friends. don't have, and three thin	gs that one of your friends or				
Make question you / a cat 2 Fric / many fr we / a garder they / any ch Peter / a cold my aunt / a d Monica / any I / enough me Laura / a boy Write about th relations does I don't have .	ns (?) or negatives (Do you have a can itends	with have. t? n't have many friends. Ion't have, and three thin	gs that one of your friends or				
Make question you / a cat 2 Fric / many fr we / a garder they / any ch Peter / a cold my aunt / a d Monica / any I / enough ma Laura / a boy Write about th relations does I I don't have .	or negatives (Do you have a can iends	with have. t? n't have many friends. Ion't have, and three thin	gs that one of your friends or				
Make question you / a cat Fric / many fr we / a garder they / any ch Peter / a cold my aunt / a d Monica / any I / enough me Laura / a boy Write about th relations does I don't have I don't have I don't have	ns (?) or negatives (Do you have a can iends Eric doese iends We don't ildren ? og E brothers or sisters ? oney E friend ? wo cars ? aree things that you on't have.	with have. t? n't have many friends. don't have, and three thin	gs that one of your friends or				
Make question you / a cat you / a cat relations does Make question you / a cat relations does Monica / any I / enough may Write about the relations does I don't have	ns (?) or negatives (Do you have a can iends — Eric doesu iends — We don't ildren ? og — brothers or sisters ? oney — friend ? wo cars ? aree things that you on't have.	with have. t? n't have many friends. don't have, and three thin					

have: past and future

PAST: I/you/he/she/it	/we/they had	Destacione Company
When I was a student	t I had an old Volkswagen.	Ann had a cold last week.
We make past quest	tions and negatives with di	d + infinitive (without to).
STATEMENT +	QUESTION ?	NEGATIVE -
Clara had a cold.	Did Clara have a cold?	
Clara nad a cola.	(NOT Did Clara had)	ciara dia noti dian thav
	es about Clara when she	
a bicycle ?	the didn't have a doo	?
•	she didn't have a dog.	
•		
_		
5 her own room	?	
Write sentence	s about vourself when v	ou were six. Use I had and I d
2 Tululi Cliave		············
FUTURE: 1/you	thatchalithus than will (not)	hava
	/he/she/it/we/they will (not) ou'll etc; won't (= will not)	nave
One day, everybody v	vill have enough food. Julio	a says that she <mark>won't have</mark> childre
To make future que s	stions with <i>have</i> , we put wil	before the subject.
	stions with <i>have</i> , we put <mark>wi</mark> l n <u>w</u> ill have a car soon.	
STATEMENT +: John	n will have a car soon.	The baby will have blue eyes.
STATEMENT +: John		
STATEMENT : John	n will have a car soon. I John have a car soon?	The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes?
STATEMENT +: John QUESTION =: Will Read the text a	n will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the senten	The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? ces about John's future.
QUESTION : Will Read the text a This year, John do	n will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentences of the sentences	The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? ces about John's future. nouse, a girlfriend, a suit or a car.
QUESTION : Will Read the text a This year, John do He has a small roo	n will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentences of the sentences	The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? ces about John's future. nouse, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year:
STATEMENT +: John QUESTION -: Will Read the text a This year, John do He has a small roo more money	n will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentences of the sentences	The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? ces about John's future. nouse, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: money.
STATEMENT +: John QUESTION =: Will Read the text a This year, John do He has a small roo more money a small room	In will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentencesn't have money, a job, a hom, a bicycle, old clothes, a He will have more He won't have a sw	The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? ces about John's future. nouse, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: money. Lall room.
Read the text a This year, John do He has a small roo more money a small room a cat ?	n will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentencesn't have money, a job, a hom, a bicycle, old clothes, a He will have more He won't have a swill he have a cat?	The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? ces about John's future. nouse, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: money. Lall room.
Read the text a This year, John do He has a small roo more money a small room a cat ?	n will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentencesn't have money, a job, a hom, a bicycle, old clothes, a He will have more He won't have a swill he have a cat?	The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? ces about John's future. nouse, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: money. Lall room.
Read the text a This year, John do He has a small roo more money a small room a cat?	n will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentencesn't have money, a job, a hom, a bicycle, old clothes, a He will have more He won't have a swill he have a cat?	The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? ces about John's future. nouse, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: money. Lall room.
Read the text a This year, John do He has a small roo more money a small room a cat 1 a job 1 2 a bicycle	n will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentencesn't have money, a job, a hom, a bicycle, old clothes, a He will have more He won't have a smill he have a cat?	The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? ces about John's future. nouse, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: money. Lall room.
STATEMENT #: John QUESTION #: Will Read the text a This year, John do He has a small roo more money a small room a cat ?	n will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentencesn't have money, a job, a hom, a bicycle, old clothes, a he will have more the won't have a swill he have a cat?	The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? ces about John's future. nouse, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: money. Lall room.
Read the text a This year, John do He has a small room a small room a cat a job a bicycle a house	n will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentencesn't have money, a job, a hom, a bicycle, old clothes, a He will have more He won't have a smill he have a cat?	The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? ces about John's future. nouse, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: money. Lall room.
QUESTION =: Will Read the text a This year, John do He has a small roo more money a small room a cat ?	n will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentencesn't have money, a job, a hom, a bicycle, old clothes, a He will have more He won't have a swill he have a cat?	The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? ces about John's future. nouse, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: money. Lall room.
STATEMENT +: John QUESTION -: Will Read the text a This year, John do He has a small roo more money a small room a cat? 1 a job + 2 a bicycle 3 a car + 4 a house? 5 a girlfriend? 6 old clothes -	n will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentencesn't have money, a job, a hom, a bicycle, old clothes, a He will have more He won't have a swill he have a cat?	The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? ces about John's future. nouse, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. guitar and a cat. But next year: money. Lall room.

8 a guitar ?



have: actions He's having a shower.

We use *have* in a lot of common expressions to talk about actions.

I usually have breakfast at seven o'clock. I'm going to have a shower.

Would you like to have something to eat? If Bill comes this weekend we'll have a party. 'Have a good flight.' Thanks.'

Teresa had a baby in June. Are you having a good time?

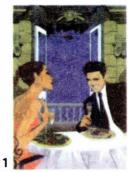
Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use have, has or had with words from the box.

a baby coffee dinner a game a party 🗸

- ▶ The people next door ...had a party...... last night and I couldn't sleep.
- 1 I with John yesterday evening.
- 2 My boss usually at 11 o'clock.
- 3 Nicole's going to in August.
- 4 Tusually before breakfast.
- 5 We always for breakfast.
- 6 Would you like to of tennis?



toast













We make simple present and past questions and negatives with do/does and did.

We don't have parties very often. Does Kurt have eggs for breakfast? Did you have a good journey? We didn't have a holiday.

- Make questions (2) and negatives (3).
 - (good time ?) 'We went to Paris at the weekend'. 'Did you have a good time?'
 - ▶ (breakfast =) I got up late this morning, so I. didn't have breakfast.

3 (shower ■) The hotel bathroom was very dirty, so !.....

- 4 (good flight ?) Welcome to England, Mr García.....
- 5 (good game ?) 'Mark and I played tennis this morning.'..... 6 (coffee) before I go to bed.

LEARN THESE COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITH HAVE (USE A DICTIONARY IF NECESSARY)

have breakfast, lunch, dinner, (a cup of) tea/coffee, a drink, something to eat/drink have eggs/toast for breakfast, have fish for lunch etc have a wash, a shower, a bath have a good time, a bad day, a nice evening, a party, a holiday, a game have a good flight/trip/journey etc have a conversation have a baby

have without do: have got Have you got a cat?

+	I/you/we/they have got	he/she/it has got		
?	have I/you etc got?	has he/she/it got?		
	I/you etc have not got	he/she/it has not got		
	Contractions: I've, he's etc.	; haven't, hasn't		
			I)	
14/0	often use ant with have es	nocially in englyon English	and aspecially	in the process
	often use <i>got</i> with <i>have</i> , esp	the same of the sa		to talk about possession etc.
	have got is the same as I ha	_	ike nave/nas	to talk about possession etc.
	lave you got? is the same as		se do/does wit	th have got)
	he hasn't got is the same as		se do, does wit	entre gott,
		dog? (NOT Does she have g	ot)	
		t a sister. You've got be		Have you got a cold?
1110	ven e got a car. Sire s go	tasister. You've got be	adinar cycs.	nave you got a cola.
OV	Write about John's posse	essions etc.		
	a bicycle: / John's go	ot a bicycle.		
	suits: 2 . He's got two	suits.		
	34113. 2	got a horse.		
	any children: Y He ha	sn't got any children.	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
1	•			
1				
	? a car: X			
3				
4	a dictionary: ✓			
5	long hair: \boldsymbol{x}		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
6	any sisters: X			
0	M.:'a - al a l-			- I - Albania
	Vrite three sentences ab	out your possessions e	tc, and three	e about the possessions
	of a friend or relation.			
1	I've got			
2			5	
3			6	
Tom	nake questions (?) with hav	e ant we nut have/has he	fore the subje	et -
	EMENT +: / have got a col			Amy and Juan have got tickets.
QUE	STION : Have you got a	cold? Has Harry got	t a fast car?	Have Amy and Juan got tickets?
B B	eth and Tom have got a	lot of money Ack augo	tions with h	ave ant
	11- 1	e they got a big house?		•
	,			
1				
2	•			
3	Tom / big car			
4	they / plane			

Past forms with got (I had got etc) are unusual. We don't use got in the future.

5 they / any horses

She had a fast car. (MORE NATURAL THAN She had got a fast car.) I will have. (NOT I will have got.)

be and have: more practice

Contractions. Rewrite these sentences with	h contractions.
▶ John is tired. John's tired.	5 She will not be late
1 They were not ready	6 You have got my keys
2 We are all here	7 I have not got much time
3 I am not a student	8 Franz does not live here.
4 Where is your house?	
▶ I wasn't ready was not ready.	5 She's got two sisters.
1 Tom's late	6 She's right
2 I won't have time.	7 Emma's got beautiful eyes
3 Anna's hungry	8 There's a letter for you.
4 He doesn't have a car	
•	
6 She was in the building. (in her office)	
7 They'll have something to drink. (coffee)	
8 They're rich. (happy)	
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
Have: questions and negatives. Complete t	the sentences with <i>do</i> or <i>doe</i> s.
Have: questions and negatives. Complete t ▶ 1do not have much free time.	the sentences with do or does. 4 you have my new address?
Have: questions and negatives. Complete t ■ 1do not have much free time. ■Does Carol have a boyfriend?	the sentences with do or does. 4 you have my new address? 5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to 1do	the sentences with do or does. 4 you have my new address? 5 My brother and I not have blue eyes. 6 Maria n't speak English.
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to 1do	the sentences with do or does. 4
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to 1do	the sentences with do or does. 4 you have my new address? 5 My brother and I not have blue eyes. 6 Maria n't speak English.
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to 1do	the sentences with do or does. 4
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to 1do	the sentences with do or does. 4
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to 1do	the sentences with do or does. 4
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to 1do	the sentences with do or does. 4
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to 1do	the sentences with do or does. 4
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to 1do	the sentences with do or does. 4
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to 1do	the sentences with do or does. 4
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to 1do	the sentences with do or does. 4
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to a do	the sentences with do or does. 4
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to a complete to	the sentences with do or does. 4
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to long and long	the sentences with do or does. 4
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to a complete to	the sentences with do or does. 4
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to a complete to	the sentences with do or does. 4
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to a complete to	the sentences with do or does. 4
Have: questions and negatives. Complete to a complete to	the sentences with do or does. 4
	 ▶ John is tired. John's tired. 1 They were not ready. 2 We are all here. 3 I am not a student. 4 Where is your house? Contractions. Rewrite these sentences wit. ▶ I wasn't ready. I was not ready. 1 Tom's late. 2 I won't have time. 3 Anna's hungry. 4 He doesn't have a car. Be. Make questions and negatives. Use new ▶ It's summer. (hot) Is it hot? No, it's not 1 He's Chinese. (from Beijing) 2 He was ill. (in bed) 3 We'll be late. (very late) 4 Her room's cheap. (very big) 5 They were students. (at university) 6 She was in the building. (in her office)

	J	difficulties and the text, and their write abo	out yoursen.			
	Н	is name's Noureddin. He's from Rabat, in Morocco. He's a s e isn't married. He's got four brothers and two sisters.		1.		
	Н	e's interested in music and politics. He isn't interested in sp	oort.		. , =	
	М	y name's		*		
				G.	藏	
	•••					
7	G	rammar in a text. Put in affirmative () or negative	e (=) forms	of be or ha	ve.	
		elen fourteen. She 1 at a				interested
		the lessons – there 3 only two teachers th				
	lo	ts of friends. (Two years ago she 5 at a diff	erent school;	the lessons	6	
		ery good, and she 7 many friends, so she 8		•		
		a long way from Helen's house, so she gets				•
		nd then she 11 breakfast – cereal and fruit j			_	•
		venings she 15school work; she 16	•		-	
		nishes quickly. Then she 17 supper. At ten o		-		
	19	a bath and goes to bed. On Saturdays and	Sundays she	gets up at 1	2.00, 20	
	a (quick lunch and goes straight to her computer games.				
	U	RAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: relations. Make sure you see a dictionary if necessary. Then look at the family see sentences.				gainst
		son daughter uncle aunt nephew niece		Eric	Sue	
		son daughter uncle aunt nephew niece cousin grandchild grandfather grandmother		60	3-21	
	_	117.52		(2) 2/	95	
		Eric and Sue have four grandchildren. Ruby is Bill's grandmother. False		* = '		
	1	Toby is Bill's son.	Paul A	lice	Bill	Rosemary
	2	Bill is Paul's uncle.				
	3	Rosemary is Toby's mother.	(a.s.)		35	19 5
	4	Lily is Bill's niece			3	
	5	Ben is Toby's nephew.	T			
	6 7	Ruby is Lily's cousin	Ben	Lily	Toby	Ruby
	8	Rosemary is Lily's uncle.		44	A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH	Marie San
	9	Toby is Ruby's nephew.	4			
1	0	Ruby is Paul's niece	6000			
9	In	ternet exercise. Can you find these on the internet	?			
	1	The name of a song with the words "there is a house"	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •			
	2	The name of a song with the words "once I had"				
	3	The name of a song with the words "have a party"				

be and have: revision test

1 C	ircle the correct form.		
	(s) / Are your brother at home?	11	Did you have / had a good journey?
1	Where / Who / How is the station?	12	Do / Does your father have a car?
2	I/We was in London yesterday.	13	Do / Have you got a cold?
-3	Are / Have you thirsty?	14	Will be you / Will you be at the party tonight?
4	Alice is / has three brothers.	15	I amn't / I'm not ready.
5	My sister is / has 25 today.	16	'Why / Who / How are you?' 'Fine, thanks.'
6	'I am / have cold.' 'Put on a sweater.'	17	Did you have / has a good holiday?
7	I want / won't be here next week.	18	It's my birthday next week. I will be / will have 18.
8	l am / are tired.	19	Does John have / has a brother?
9	Emma is / has very happy today.	20	How many people is / are there in your family?
10	There is / are a new secretary in the company.		
2 C	orrect (✓) or not (x)?		
	I don't had breakfast today	5	My friends was late
	I'm not l amn't		Is there any eggs in the fridge?
	he's not he isn't		I don't have many friends
2	Do you got a bicycle?		I do have two brothers
	Had you a good journey?	9	There won't be a lesson tomorrow
	Jane is having a shower		I not had breakfast today
	hange the sentences to questions or negatives.		
	It's Tuesday.		on It's not Tuesday.
1	There's a taxi outside. ?		
2	Chris has got a headache. ?		
	Joe has a car.		
	Ann had a meeting yesterday. ?		
5	I had coffee for breakfast.		
6	There will be an English lesson tomorrow. 2		
7	I'm hungry.		
8	Petra's got a new car.		
9	She had a nice time at the party. ?		
	The house has got a big garden. ?		
	ake present (PR), past (PA) or future (F) questio	ns.	
	Peter / Irish (PR) Is Peter Irish?		as beautafactula account and
	Jane / have breakfast this morning (PA) Did Jane		
1	Rosemary / from London (PR)		
2	we / early (F)		
3	Sarah / at home (PA)		
4	Karim / have a cold (PR)	· · · · ·	
5	your car / fast (PR)		
6	the manager / in America (F)		
7	Tim and Anna / students (PA)		
8	What time / you have lunch today (F)		
9	you / here tomorrow (F)		
10	those people / American (PA)		

SECTION 2 present tenses

grammar summary

SIMPLE PRESENT: I work, she works, he doesn't work etc

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: I am working, she is working, he isn't working etc

English has two 'present' tenses.

 We use the simple present mostly to talk about things that are always true, and things that happen repeatedly.

Dogs eat meat. My grandmother lives in Brighton. I work every Saturday.

• We use the present progressive (or 'present continuous') to talk about things that are happening just around the time when we speak.

Look! The dog's eating your shoe. I'm working hard these days.

We can also use the present progressive to talk about the future (see page 38). I'm seeing Lucy tomorrow.

Some old songs

برجع زبان ایرانیان

I like myself

I believe in love

She's leaving home

Am I asking too much?

Is she really going out with him?

Where are you going?

Smoke gets in your eyes

I love Paris in the springtime

She loves me

She loves you

I'm crying

I'm flying

Why do I love you?

Why do fools fall in love?

Why do lovers break each other's hearts?

I don't want to do it

simple present* affirmative I work; you work; she works

+	I work	you work	he/she/it works	we work	they work
	1 live	you live	he/she/it lives	we live	they live
	1 stop	you stop	he/she/it stops	we stop	they stop

I work in a bank. He works in a restaurant.

You **live** near my brother. She **lives** in Liverpool.
We **stop** the lessons at 5.00. The train **stops** at York.

HOW TO MAKE HE/SHE/IT FORMS

- most verbs: +-s work → works know → knows rain → rains
- -s, -sh, -ch, -x: +-es pass → passes wash → washes teach → teaches mix → mixes
- exceptions: $go \rightarrow goes do \rightarrow does have \rightarrow has$

Write the he/she/it forms.

cate			fix live m touch watch	niss push wish write	
+ -S:	comes	***************************************	***************************************		***************************************
	actalass				•••••
+ -ES:	catones	******	******	********	**************

VERBS ENDING IN -Y

- vowel + y -ay, -ey, -oy, -uy: +-s say → says
- consonant + y -dy, -ly, -py, -ry, etc: -y \rightarrow -ies fly \rightarrow flies

Write the he/she/it forms.

	buy 🗸	carry 🗸	сору	enjoy	fry	marry	play	stay	study	try
+	-S:	buy	5		·		****			
-Y	' → -IE.	s: cam		**********		*************				

Put the words in the correct order.

eats dog too your much
Your dog eats too much.

.....

......

·

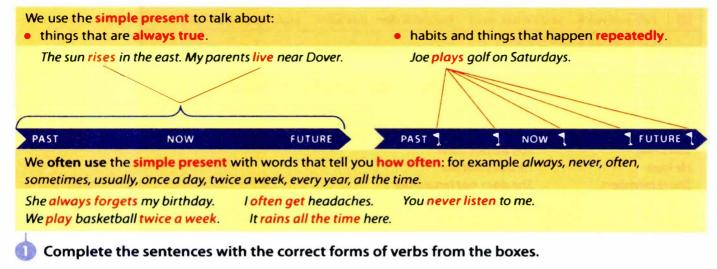
- 1 live I that house in
- 2 bank Kim in a works
- 3 badly violin plays the very Claire
- 4 Scotland those from children come
- 5 young very look you

4 Circle the correct answers.

- (We)/My friend always wear old clothes.
- You (John) always wears nice clothes.
- 1 We all / The boss thinks you're wonderful.
- 2 1/Catherine want a new job.
- 3 Bread/Books costs a lot.
- 4 Andy/Andy and Pete sings very well.
- 5 Sophy/Sophy and Ian like parties.
- 6 You/She drive too fast.
- 7 Our cat / Our cats never catches mice.
- 8 That child/Children makes a lot of noise.
- 9 That bus / All those buses go to the station.
- 10 My father / My mother and father teaches English.

^{*} Also called 'present simple'

simple present: use I work in a bank.



ask make speak get up 🗸 qo play Peter always .. gets up late on Sundays. 1 Ann and John sometimes tennis at weekends. 2 My mother often French at home. 3 Small children guestions all the time. 4 Sarah to Oxford to see her mother twice a week. 5 1 more mistakes in English when I'm tired. forget listen get 6 | l often people's names. 7 We usually to music in the car. 8 My brother in Vancouver. 9 1 a lot of films on TV. 10 My parents all their food from supermarkets.

Choose suitable verbs in the correct forms to complete the sentences.

1 That woman that she everything. (know, think, run, wash) 2 Our son karate. (read, study, write) 3 Alice to go skiing every year. (try, play, say) 4 You always very nice clothes. (look, start, wear) 5 Andy always his car on Saturdays. (buy, sell, wash) 6 Most people for other people. (talk, work, teach) 7 That child never 'Thank you'. (like, say, sing) 8 He in the same chair every evening. (know, like, sit, stand) 9 My father TV most evenings. (listen, think, watch) 10 We always what we can't have. (want, get, forget)

We do not use a present tense to talk about how long something has lasted (see page 65).

I have known her since 1990. (NOT I know her since 1990.)



simple present negatives I don't know. She doesn't ski.

	ao not work	you ao not work	ne/sne/it does not wo	ork we/they do not wor	rk
	Contractions: a	don't, doesn't			
We m	ke simple pre	sent negatives () with do/does not +	infinitive (without to).	
STATE	MENT +	NEGATIVE -			
knou		I do not know	v (NOT know not)		
You th	ink	You do not th	nink		
He like	s	He does not	like		
She re	members	She does not	remember		
It help		It does not he	•		
We wa		We do not we			
They u	nderstand	They do not u	ınderstand		
Ma	ke negative	sentences. Use	do not or does not.		
			play cards.		
	-				
		_	•		
			_		
	•				
	•	sentences. Use a			
		•			
				•••••	
		-			
		•			
7	The shops ope	n on Sunday morr	nings. (afternoons)		•••••
Co	mplete the n	enative sentenc	es, using words fro	om the hox	
	-	-	don't / doesn't, as y		
			101717 100531717 13)	, ou me.	
1	ish in Britai	in much petrol	✓ much tennis		
	on Sundays	Russian your p	hone number		
	A	Mu car doesn'	t use much petrol.		
	.,				
	•				
6	ve / play			• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 S GR	Itdoe I like for She live I'm sorr He wor Mary's to We Phil Gemma	otball, but es in Japan, y – Iks in New Y really tired, es's parents	very but she fork, but I but she but she a t	often in S you big flat – ju ery hard, b	ence negation of the results of the	o. (snow, sind a	like, reme panese. (; work) pes. (knov d. (help, w k, play, w oney. (wo their dau	sing, work, v, use, come ant, walk) ant) ork, stand, si	top)	nk)
	Ann plays tennis, but she doesn't play cards.									
	Ann	tennis	football	rugby	basketball		chess	cards	hockey	badminton
	Ann Pete	X	X /	X	×	×	X	X /	X	×
	loe	1	×	1	1	Х	X	/	1	/
9	Sarah	×	1	×	×	1	1	×	Х	×
NOTE:	What games do you play? And what games do you not play? TE: one negative word is enough (see page 115). Body understands me. (NOT Nobody doesn't understand me.)									

She never phones me. (NOT She doesn't never phone me.)



simple present questions Do you remember me?

? do I work? do you work? does he/she/it work? do we work? do they work?

We make simple present questions (2) with do/does + subject + infinitive (without to). STATEMENT + QUESTION ? Do I know? **I know** You think Do you think? (NOT Think you?) He likes Does he like? (NOT Does he likes?) **Does** she remember? She remembers It helps Does it help? We want Do we want? Do they understand? They understand

Put in do or does.

	you know my friend Andy?	3 you speak Chinese?
	this bus go to Cambridge?	4 Sarah go to school on Saturdays?
1	Ann want to come with us?	5 this shop sell stamps?
2	your parents live near here?	6 Bill and Harry play golf?

Make questions.

	They smoke. Do they smoke?
	Ashley teaches French. Does Ashley teach French?
1	The Oxford bus stops here.
2	The teachers know her.
3	You play the piano.
4	John works in a restaurant.
5	This train stops at York.
6	We need more eggs.
7	Fatima likes parties.
8	Peter speaks Spanish well.

Do you know all these question words?

what when where who why how how much how many what time

What do you think? (NOT What think you?) Where does Lucy live? (NOT Where lives Lucy?)

How much does this cost? (NOT How much this costs?)

What time does the train leave? (NOT What time the train leaves?)

Choose the correct subject.

	How much does the ticket	cost? (the ticket / the tickets)
1	Where do	. live? (your daughter / your children)
2	What time does	start? (the lesson / the lessons)
3	What do	want? (you / the girl)
4	When does	finish? (the holidays / the holiday)
5	Why do	talk so fast? (that woman / those women)
6	What do	think of the new boss? (you / she)

[→] For questions without do, like Who lives here?, see pages 108–109.

\mathbf{A}	Choose the correct question word and	nut in do or door
	Choose the correct question word and	put in ao oi aoes

	how how many how much 🗸 🔻	what when where why
•	How much does the ticket cost?	?
1	your children liv	
2	she want?	
3	the holidays sta	art?
4	the teacher talk	lk so fast?
5	languages	he speak?
6		
S N	Nake questions.	
	Where / she live? Where does she	e live?
1		***************************************
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		
7		
8		
J	vviio, you want to see:	
6 D	o you know all these simple preser	ent questions? Study them, and then put the correct
q	uestion into each conversation.	
4.4		
		do you spell that? What does this word mean?
		you know Anna? Where do you live/work? How do you do? (= 'I'm pleased to meet you.')
	t time does the train/bus/plane leave/arriv	
· · · · · · ·	time does the train, our plane leave, and	ve. What time does the him, concert, class start.
1	X	
2	'With one c and double s.'	
_	'With one c and double s.'	
3	'''l'm a taxi driver.'	
3	'I'm a taxi driver.'	
	'I'm a taxi driver.' 'I don't know. Look in the dictionary.'	
3	'I'm a taxi driver.' 'I don't know. Look in the dictionary.'	
4	'I'm a taxi driver.' 'I don't know. Look in the dictionary.' 'It gets into the station at 3.00 in the me	norning.'
	'I'm a taxi driver.' 'I don't know. Look in the dictionary.' 'I't gets into the station at 3.00 in the me	
4 5	'I'm a taxi driver.' 'I don't know. Look in the dictionary.' '' 'It gets into the station at 3.00 in the man'	morning.'
4	'I'm a taxi driver.' 'I don't know. Look in the dictionary.' 'It gets into the station at 3.00 in the many.' '€500.'	norning.'
4 5 6	'I'm a taxi driver.' 'I don't know. Look in the dictionary.' 'It gets into the station at 3.00 in the me.' '€500.' 'No, but I know her sister.'	norning.'
4 5 6	'I'm a taxi driver.' 'I don't know. Look in the dictionary.' 'It gets into the station at 3.00 in the me.' '€500.' 'No, but I know her sister.'	morning.'
4 5 6	'I'm a taxi driver.' 'I don't know. Look in the dictionary.' 'It gets into the station at 3.00 in the many.' '€500.' 'No, but I know her sister.' 'How do you do?'	norning.'

simple present: more practice

+ ?	l/you/we/they work do l/you/we/they work? l/you/we/they do not work	he/she/it works does he/she/it work? he/she/it does not work
	Contractions: don't, doesn't	Crysta spells With

Circle the correct answers.

- 1 Where do / does your sister live?
- 2 My cat / My cats don't like fish.
- 3 This car don't / doesn't go very fast.
- 4 This train stop / stops at every station.
- 5 Why do English people / English people do drink so much tea?

3 | want

- 6 The post office doesn't open / opens on Sundays.
- 7 When does your holiday start / start your holiday?
- 8 My parents both play / plays golf.
- 9 That café / Those cafés stays open all night.
- 10 Her letters don't say / to say very much.

	Make sentences.							
	Anu (live) in Birmingham + Anu lives in Birmingham.							
	you (speak) Chinese ? Do you speak Chinese?							
	you (speak) Chinese ? Do you speak Chinese? Sarah (like) classical music Sarah doesn't like classical music.							
1	(<i>like</i>) getting up early -							
2	you (want) something to drink ?							
3	B Dan (<i>play</i>) football on Saturdays 🛨							
4	you (<i>remember</i>) her phone number ?							
5	5 that clock (<i>work</i>) =							
	she often (fly) to Paris on business 🛨							
7	it (rain) much here in summer =							
8	B elephants (eat) meat ?							
9	9 he (<i>think</i>) he can sing ?							
10) we (<i>need</i>) a new car +							
٨	Make sentences like the ones in Exercise 2. Write about yourself.							
1	والمالية							

4	I don't want
	I need
6	I don't need
	l often
8	I never
9	l always



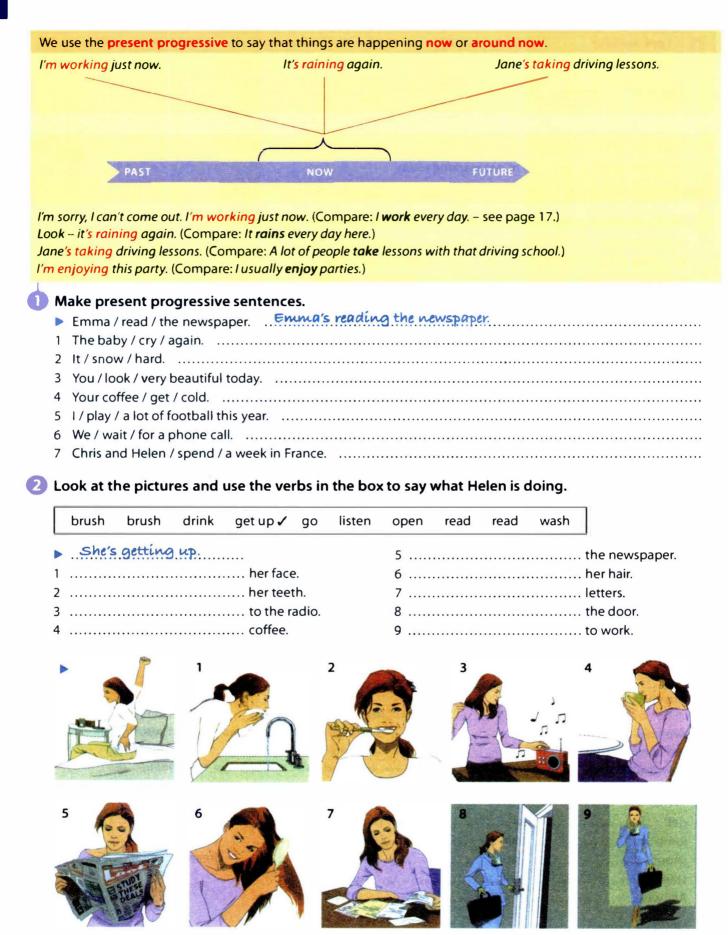
present progressive*: forms *I'm reading; I'm not working*.

+	lam working	you are wor	king	he/she/it is working	we/they are working			
	I am not worki	ng you are not	working	he/she/it is not working	etc			
	Contractions:			u aren't, he isn't etcing	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR			
		What's heing?, W	/here's she	ing?, When's iting? etc				
We make present progressive verbs with be (I am, you are etc – see page 2) +ing.								
Joh	n is studying Rus	sian. I' <mark>m not wo</mark>	rking today.					
We	use contraction	s (I'm, John's, isn't et	c) in convers	ation and informal writin	ig.			
_								
 Make present progressive affirmative (♣) and negative (♣) sentences. The lesson is starting now. (start ♣) 								
		working						
				_				
3				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				
			•					
								
			•					
				school this week. (go 🖃)				
10) We		a bit	of English. (<i>learn</i> 🚺)				
	N TO MAKE -ING F		Thurst Albeit An	ann artin in souns mu sh	o dire salmand and ab works dis			
	nost verbs: + -in	The state of the s	rk → worki		The state of the s			
	erbs ending in - e changes to y +		k e → maki	ng hope \longrightarrow hoping				
• -1	e changes to y	-ing lie	→ lying					
2 1	Write the <i>-ing</i> f	orms of these ver	bs.					
				die	enjoy			
				play				
		wash			5g			

DOL	JBLING (stopping,	ru nn ina etc)			The state of the state of the state of			
_	ne vowel + one							
	double cons		stop -	sto <mark>pp</mark> ing (NOT stoping)	run → running			
	wo vowels: don'		sleep →		aiting (NOT waitting)			
• tv	wo consonants:	don't double	•	wanting (NOT wantting)				
• 0	nly double in S1	TRESSED syllables	beGIN →	begi <mark>nn</mark> ing BUT HAPpen -	→ happening			
5.	A4 'a a1 : -							
	-	orms of these ver						
get feel put hit								
•					shop			
					dream			
				turn				
A	Nswer	OPen		VIsit	forGET			

* Also called 'present continuous'

present progressive: use I'm working just now.



present progressive negatives He's not listening to me.

he/she/it is not working

we/they are not working

	Contractions: Or:	I'm not, you're not; he's/she you/we/they aren't, he/she/		they're not	
We r	make present pre	ogressive negatives with an	n/are/is not +in	g.	
I'm r	not working this	week.			
4	haasa sha wal	na voulee and medice needs	tive (Naccont		
		nt verbs and make negarsk) you for a lot of money.			
1		od, start) to me			
2		et) today.			
3		peak) now			
4		k, wait) a coat.			
5		rs (wait, like, learn) very muc			
6		read) this film.			
7		eat) much these days			
8		expect) to pass the exam			
9	My computer	(pay, work, write)			
10	l (stop, play, giv	ve) much tennis these days.	*************		***************
2 v	Vrita nagativa	ends for the sentences.			
		snow) it's not snowing	v a		
	· ·	out (work just now)!'m			
1		otballer, but (play well to			
2		gland now, but (live in Los	-		
3		out (= run well)			
4		s this is a good book, but (/			
5		ut (the sun = shine)			
6		out (study at university)			
7		n she's happy, but (sing ju			
8	I don't have an	y problems, but (sleep w	ell these days)		
9	We're on holid	ay, but (🖪 have a good time	·)		
10	I'm crying, but	(cry because of you)			
6 C	omplete the so	entences, using the verb	os in the box.		
					G A T
L	not work no	ot listen not rain not r	nove not eat		
1	The train			The state of the s	
2				1 36 800	2
3	_		1000	2	The same of the sa
4				25 E	COURT IN
5			7 3 TO A	J. BOVE	
			A SIFE OF	TO THE	Y

NOTE: We do not use a present tense to say how long something has lasted (see page 65).

I've been waiting since 9.00. (NOT I'm waiting since 9.00.)

I am not working

you are not working



present progressive questions Is it raining?

am I working? are you working? is he/she/it working? are we/they working?

STATEMENT +:	It is raining.	You are working.	The children are making something.
QUESTION ?:	Is it raining?	Are you working?	What are the children making?
M-1			
Make ques	itions.	is eventhodu listeniu	ng to me?
•			
•			
•			
•			
10 301116000	iy / cook lullell ! .		
	the questions.		
▶ 'Those pe	eople aren't speakir	ng English: 'What language	are they speaking?
			······································
2 'The train	's stopping!' 'Why .		
3 'They're s	tudying now.' 'Wha	at	
4 'They're p	olaying a game.' 'W	hat game	'
5 'I'm going	g now. Goodbye.' 'V	Vait! Where	<u>'</u>
6 'Nadia's t	elephoning someb	ody.' 'Who	'
7 'The baby	's eating somethin	g.' 'What	'
8 'Sue's wo	rking as a secretary	.' 'Where	'
9 'I'm cooki	ng something goo	d.' 'What	'
10 'I'm not li	ving with my paren	ts.' 'Where	'
Put in ques	stion words and r	make present progressi	ve questions. (More than one answer may
be possible		р. сэс р. с 3. сэс.	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
		doing?	
-			
-			

present progressive: more practice

+ ?	l am working am l working? l am not working	you are working are you working? you are not working	he/she/it/is working is/he/she/it working? he/she/it/is not working etc	we/they are working are we/they working?		
	Contractions: I'm, you're, he's etc (not)ing; you aren't, he isn't etcing					

		I am not working you are not working he/she/it/is not working etc
		Contractions: I'm, you're, he's etc (not)ing; you aren't, he isn't etcing
D F	٥,	at the words in the correct order. Use contractions (e.g. it's) where possible.
•		me you talking are to? Are you talking to me?
1		getting are you up ?
2)	raining is again it
3		not you are listening
4		going where you are ?
5)	talking fast too I am?
6)	I film enjoying not this am
7	,	laughing those people at are me why?
8	3	am for you I cooking this not
9)	you what drinking are ?
10)	the baby eating the is newspaper
2		also avecant avecuesive contendes
4 N		ake present progressive sentences. 1/look for / the station !'m looking for the station.
		you/work/tonight? Are you working tonight?
		it/rain this not raining.
1		Peter / try / to save money +
2		why / those children / cry ?
3		your friends / play football / this afternoon ?
ر 4		she / look / very well today =
5		I think she / make / a big mistake 🚹
6		you / wear / your usual glasses 🗖
7		1 / start / to learn Spanish +
8		the 10.15 train / run / today ?
9		David / live with his parents / any more
10		what / you / do / in my room ?
3 (C	omplete the text with verbs from the boxes.
	_	1~5: come ✓ look not wear snow walk wear
Α	n	d Mrs Alexander down the steps of the plane now. It is very cold and it
		heavily, but she 2 very happy. She 3 a dark blue
		ess with a black coat and boots, but she 4 a hat. She really is a very beautiful woman.
Н	le	r husband 5 down the steps with her.
		6–11: kiss look return say stop try
N	lo	ow Mrs Alexander and her husband 6 at the crowd and smiling. The photographers
		to get nearer, but the police 8 them. What a day! At last, after
		enty years, this wonderful woman 9 to her own country. Now the President
		her hand. What 11 he to her, do you think?



the two present tenses: the difference

IMPLE PRESENT: I work etc	PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: I'm working etc
 things that are always true things that happen all the time, repeatedly, often, sometimes, never etc 	 things that are happening now things that are happening around now
The sun rises in the east. She often wears red. I play tennis.	The sun is not shining today. She's wearing a blue dress. I'm playing a lot of tennis these days.

every day 🗸 just now nearly always now 🗸 on Fridays these days

Put the expressions in the correct places.

this afternoon to	oday v	ery often	when I'm tired		
SIMPLE PRESENT: I work	k etc			PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: I'	m working etc
every day				now	
			*******	******************	*******************

Use the verbs in the box to complete the sentences.

chase ✓ chase driv	e eat fly play pla	ay rain sell speak	work write
Tatschase mice.	Cows grass.	Planes	It often
		2	3
But this cat is not chasing mice.	But this cow	But this	But now.
.uke hard.	Ann tennis.	John English.	Bill a bus
		17×47	A p
But	But	But	But
today.	now.	***************************************	***************************************
his shop	Carol	Simon	Dogs
ooks.	the piano.	poetry.	cats.
ACCKSHOP	9	10	11
But	But she	But	But this
************	*********		************************

Complete the sentences with the correct verb forms.

	Do you smoke?' No, never.' (you / smoke)	
	▶ 'What are you eating?' 'A cheese sandwich.' (you	/ eat)
	1 'Where these days?' 'In a garag	
2	2 ' here in summer?' 'Not very ofte	en.' (<i>it / rain</i>)
3	3 'Bonjour.' 'Sorry, I French.' (not s	peak)
4	4 'Your English better.' 'Oh, thank	you.' (<i>get</i>)
5	5 ' golf?' 'Yes, but not very well.' (y	ou / play)
6	6 'Who to?' 'My boyfriend.' (<i>you</i> /	write)
7	7 'Where's Suzanne?' ' now.' (she /	come)
8	8 Well, goodnight to bed. (/ / go)	
9	9 Water at 100°C. (<i>boil</i>)	
10	10 '?' 'Not yet.' (that water / boil)	
11	11 '?' 'I can't see it.' (the bus / come)	
12	12 'That man all the time.'	
	'Yes, and he'(talk; never listen)	
13	13 'What's Peter's job?' ' film scripts	ː (he / write)
	14 'Summer's coming.' 'Yes, warme	=
	15 'How often?' 'Every weekend.'()	
	16 'Where's your brother?' ' from So	
	17 ' fast?' 'Yes, always. Too fast.' (<i>Joh</i>	
	18 'Come and have a drink' 'Not now. I	
	19 'What at?' 'A very strange bird.'	
20	20 'What kind of music' 'All kinds.'	(you / like)
м	Make true sentences about vourself	

	I often Play tennis	, but! am not playing tennis	now. (<i>play</i>)
1	l often	, but I	. now. (<i>play</i>)
2	I sometimes	, but I	now. (<i>wear</i>)
3	l often	, but I	. now. (speak)
4	l often	, but I	. now. (listen)
5	I sometimes	, but I	now. (<i>read</i>)
6	l often	but!	. now. (watci.)
7	I sometimes	, but I	now. (<i>buy</i>)
8	l often	but I	. now. (<i>eat</i>)
9	l often	but I	. now. (drink)
10	I never	, and I	now. (<i>?</i>)

I never vote for anybody. I always vote against. (WCFields)

I never travel without my diary. One should always have something sensational to read in the train.

(Oscar Wilde)

I never think of the future. It comes soon enough.

(Albert Einstein)

When a dog bites a man, that is not news, because it happens so often. But if a man bites a dog, that is news.

(John B Bogart, American newspaper editor)

When a woman isn't beautiful, people always say, You have lovely eyes, you have lovely hair'.

(Anton Chekhov)

non-progressive verbs I don't understand.

Some verbs are most often used in simple tenses, not progressive, even if we mean 'just now'. I like this weather. (NOT I'm liking this weather.) What does he want? (NOT What is he wanting?) THE MOST IMPORTANT NON-PROGRESSIVE VERBS believe, hate, hope, know, like, love, mean, need, prefer, remember, seem, think (= 'have an opinion'), understand, want I hate this music. 'We're late.' 'I know.' I love that colour. Do you understand? What does this mean? I need some help. 'Tea?' 'I prefer juice.' Ayesha seems unhappy. Note also the expressions It doesn't matter (= 'It's not important') and I see (= 'I understand'). 'I'm sorry I'm late.' 'It doesn't matter.' 'There's a problem.' 'I see.' Make sentences. Ayesha / seem / unhappy today + Ayesha seems unhappy today. > you/need/help? Do you need help? ▶ 1/know/her name ■ 1 don't know her name. 1 what / this word / mean ? 2 Rob / want / to see the doctor 3 she / love / me! + 4 Peter / seem / tired + 5 we / need / a new car = 6 you / know / that man ?

7 | / hate / this cold weather + 8 you / like / this music ? 9 1/remember / her address = 10 you / understand / this letter ?

Complete the sentences with verbs from the boxes.

	hope	like	need	not matter	not und	erstand	prefer	not remember	want 🗸
•	What .	does	. Paul	want. for h	is birthday?				
1	'Przepraszam!' 'Sorry, I'								
2	'Would you like some coffee?' 'No, thank you. I tea, if that's OK.'								
3	'What c	do you t	hink of	this music?' 'l			• • • • • • • • • • • • •	. it.'	
4	I'm goir	ng to th	e shops		we	anyt	:hing?		
5	'I've bro	oken a c	up.' 'It .						
6	1			it do	esn't rain to	morrow			
7	Sorry, I your name.								
Г	Leathern	1		Towns Inc.			Alice I		
L	believe	hate	not	know love	e mean	see	think		
8		you	J	what sh	ne told you?				
9	1			her ı	name or add	dress.			
10	you it's going to rain?								
11	'We've got a problem.' 'I								
12	'You're crazy!' 'What you?'								
13	If you me, why can't we get married?								
14	My fath	er likes	most m	iusic, but he .				rock.	

SOME USEFUL EXPRESSIONS WITH NON-PROGRESSIVE VERBS:

I hope so. I hope not. I think so. I don't think so. It depends. I don't mind. (='It doesn't matter to me.')

'Will you pass your exam?' 'I hope so.' 'Is it going to rain?' 'I hope not.'

'Is that Maria over there?' 'Yes, I think so.' 'Are you free on Sunday?' 'I don't think so.'

'Can you help me?' 'It depends. What do you want me to do?'

'What would you like to drink?' 'I don't mind.'

Choose the best expressions to complete the conversations.

- Is Ingrid enjoying her holiday?' (1 hope so.') /'I don't mind.'
- 1 'Agresti, min ruggide flochsch?' 'I don't think so.' / 'I don't understand.'
- 2 'We're not happy with your work.' 'I hope so.' / 'I see.'
- 3 'Is Jeremy coming to dinner?' 'I see.' / 'I hope not.'
- 4 'Do you like this music?' 'I think so.' / 'I don't remember.'
- 5 'Is that Olivia getting into the taxi?' 'I know.' / 'I don't think so.'
- 6 'Who wrote 'War and Peace'?' 'It depends.' / 'I don't know.'
- 7 'It's Tuesday'. 'I think so.' / 'I know.'
- 8 'Can you lend me some money?' 'It depends.' / 'It doesn't matter.'
- 9 'We're too early.' 'I don't know.' / 'It doesn't matter.'
- 10 'What's Phil's address?' 'I don't remember.' / 'It depends.'
- 11 'Sorry, this coffee isn't very good.' 'I don't mind.' / 'I hope so.'
- 12 'Will you pass your exam?' 'I hope so.' / 'I don't remember.'
- 13 'Is Pete in his office?' 'I don't think so.' / 'I see.'
- 14 'Is it going to rain?' 'It depends.' / 'I hope not.'
- 15 'Can you help me?' 'I think so.' / 'I don't remember.'

Write personal answers.

	Will everybody in the world speak English one day? I think so. / I don't think so. / I hope so. /
	Thope not. / I don't mind. / I don't know.
1	Is your English getting better?
2	Will you be rich and famous one day?
3	What were you doing at 8.00 in the morning on February 16th last year?

- 5 Will it rain tomorrow?
- 6 Have you got a good government?
- 7 Will you live to be 100 years old?
- 8 Are there people on other planets?
- 9 Are you a nice person?
- 10 Will you fall in love next week?

WHAT YOU SAY	WHAT THEY SAY	WHAT THEY MEAN
'Do you mind if I sit here?'	'No, please do.'	'Go away.'
'I'm sorry I spilt coffee on you.'	'It doesn't matter at all.'	'You clumsy fool.'
'Can you do something for me?'	'It depends.What is it?'	'Certainly not.'
'What shall I sing?'	'I don't mind. Anything.'	'Don't sing.'
'Do you see what I mean?'	'Yes.'	'No.'
'Shall I wear the blue dress or the green one? Which do you prefer?'	'I don't mind. They're both beautiful.'	'A dress is a dress. What's the difference?'
'You don't seem to like the food'	'Oh, I do. It's delicious.'	'I hate it.'
'I need to be alone.'	'I see.'	'I don't see.'

present tenses: more practice

1 Question words. Choose words from the box to complete the questions.

								1
how	how many	how much	what	what time	when	where	why]
1	do you w	ant for Christr	mas?	5		. do you	usually g	get up?
2	does the	holiday start?		6		. rice do	you wan	it?
3	does you	r sister live?		7		. do you	need to	learn English
	tickets do			8		. do you	make sc	rambled egg:
Simple p	oresent. Choo	ose the corre	ct verbs	to make si	nple pres			
▶ I/han	nburgers (+) (ike, drink, play) I CLIP	oec Henry	cheals Ex			
Henry	/ French (?) (/	nake, speak, w	ork)	The hus	ec don't	1/14 014		
	uses / on Sunda							
	anguage / Braz							
	fast cars (+) (s	_						
	marie / newspa							
	o brothers bot							
_	vegetables (
	/ the piano (
7 Peter/	/ at weekends (🛂) (work, wea	r, break)					
	1 17	11.4		`				
8 my hu	isband / very w							
8 my hu 9 Roger	/ to work with	animals (+) (ı	want, play	, read)				
8 my hu 9 Roger		animals (+) (ı	want, play	, read)				
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu	/ to work with us / to Belfast (animals (+) ((?) (work, spea	want, play lk, go)	, read)				
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu	/ to work with us / to Belfast (progressive.	animals (+) ((?)) (work, spea	want, play k, go) entences	to say wha	at is (not)			
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu Present 1/ wor	/ to work with us / to Belfast (animals (+) ((?) (work, spea Write true se	want, play	to say wha	at is (not)	happen	ing now	
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu Present 1/ wor	/ to work with us / to Belfast (progressive. rk!'m work ar red socks!'	animals (+) ((?) (work, spea Write true se	want, play ik, go) entences	to say wha	at is (not)	happen	ing now	
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu Present 1 / wor 1 / wea 2 it / rain	/ to work with us / to Belfast (progressive. rk!'m work ar red socks!'	animals (+) ((?) (work, spea Write true se	want, play ik, go) entences	to say wha	at is (not)	happen	ing now	
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu Present 1 I/wor 1 I/wea 2 it/rain 3 I/liste	/ to work with us / to Belfast (progressive. the l'm work ar red socks l'	animals (+) ((?) (work, spea Write true seeing.	want, play	s to say wha	at is (not)	happen	ing now	
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu Present 1 / wor 1 / wea 2 it / raii 3 / / liste 4 / sit o	/ to work with us / to Belfast (progressive. rk'm work ar red socks I'm	animals (+) ((?) (work, spea Write true se	want, play	to say wha	at is (not)	happen	ing now	
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu Present 1 / wea 2 it / rain 3 / / liste 4 / / sit o 5 / / sing	/ to work with us / to Belfast (progressive. rk	animals (+) ((?) (work, spea Write true sering.	want, play	to say wha	at is (not)	happen	ing now	······································
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu Present 1 / wor 1 / wea 2 it / raid 3 / liste 4 / sit o 5 / sing 6 / thin	/ to work with us / to Belfast (progressive. rk'm work ar red socks I'm	animals (+) ((?) (work, spea Write true se eing. m	want, play	to say wha	at is (not)	happen	ing now	······································
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu Present 1 / wes 2 it / rain 3 1 / liste 4 1 / sit o 5 1 / sing 6 1 / thin 7 1 / wait	/ to work with us / to Belfast (progressive. rk	animals (+) ((2) (work, spea) Write true secting. m	want, play	to say wha	at is (not)	happen	ing now	······································
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu Present 1 / wor 1 / wea 2 it / rain 3 / / liste 4 / sit o 5 / sin o 6 / / thin 7 / wain 8 the su	/ to work with us / to Belfast (progressive. 'm work 'm work	animals (+) ((?) (work, spea Write true se eing. m	want, play	to say wha	at is (not)	happen	ing now	
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu Present 1 / wea 2 it / rain 3 / liste 4 / sit o 5 / sing 6 / thin 7 / wai 8 the su 9 the go	/ to work with us / to Belfast (progressive. / work ar red socks / work ar red socks / work ar red socks / work ar to music work about somet to for a phone can / shine work about / matter a povernment / matte	animals (+) ((*) ((*) (work, spea) Write true secting. m	want, play	to say wha	at is (not)	happen	ing now	
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu Present 1 / wea 2 it / rain 3 / liste 4 / sit o 5 / sing 6 / thin 7 / wai 8 the su 9 the go	/ to work with us / to Belfast (progressive. 'm work 'm work	animals (+) ((*) ((*) (work, spea) Write true secting. m	want, play	to say wha	at is (not)	happen	ing now	
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu Present 1 / wor 1 / wer 2 it / rain 3 / / liste 4 / sit o 5 / sin o 6 / / thin 7 / wain 8 the su 9 the go 10 my En Progress	/ to work with us / to Belfast (progressive. 'm work	animals (+) ((*) (work, spea) Write true sering. m	want, play	to say wha	at is (not)	happen	ing now	
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu Present 1 / wor 1 / wer 2 it / rain 3 / / liste 4 / sit o 5 / sin o 6 / / thin 7 / wain 8 the su 9 the go 10 my En Progress	/ to work with us / to Belfast (progressive. 'm work 'm work	animals (+) ((*) (work, spea) Write true sering. m	want, play	orrect (🗸) c	at is (not)	happen	ing now	ν.
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu Present 1 / wor 1 / wea 2 it / rain 3 / liste 4 / sit o 5 / sing 6 / thin 7 / wain 8 the su 9 the go 10 my En Progress Are yo	/ to work with us / to Belfast (progressive. 'm work	animals (+) ((2) (work, spea) Write true serving. m	want, play	orrect (✓) c	or not (x)?	happen	ing now	ν.
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu Present 1 / wor 1 / wer 2 it / rain 3 / liste 4 / sit o 5 / sin o 6 / thin 7 / wain 8 the su 9 the go 10 my En Progress Are yo 1'm wo	to work with us / to Belfast (progressive. / m work / m work	animals (+) ((*) (work, spea) Write true sering. m	want, play	orrect (/) c	or not (x)?	happen	wrong	v.
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu Present 1 / wor 1 / wea 2 it / rain 3 / liste 4 / sit o 5 / sing 6 / thin 7 / wain 8 the su 9 the go 10 my En Progress Are yo 1 You're	progressive. progressive. k!'m work ar red socks I' n en to music on the beach k about somet t for a phone ca n / shine overnment / ma glish / get bett sive and non- ou liking this we orking today	animals (+) ((*) (work, spea*) Write true sering. m	want, play	orrect (/) c	or not (x)? I'm thinkir That man	happen	wrong.	v.
8 my hu 9 Roger 10 this bu Present 1 / wor 1 / wed 2 it / rain 3 / liste 4 / sit o 5 / sing 6 / thin 7 / wain 8 the su 9 the go 10 my En Progress Are yo 1 You're 2 What i	progressive. I'm work ar red socks I'm en to music the about somet t for a phone can overnment / ma glish / get bett sive and non- ou liking this we orking today driving too fas	write true seeing. white true seeing. hing beautiful all eke everybody er progressive eather?	want, play which, go) entences happy happy verbs. C	orrect (/) c	or not (x)? I'm thinkir That man	happen	wrong g like you	ur brother

get up	go	have	like like	live	look after	not like	not want	work v	work 🗸
with the a	at inimals. S t she 7 50	5.00, she he s	3 her bo	br . her life ve oss. She als	eakfast in h ery much, a so has prob	er tent and nd she 6	then she 4er boyfriend,	the other p	to work eople in t
cry	do lov	e not	know n	ot want	not work	read s	it you thii	nk want	
and she 1 Scotland to ob.' Anna	4to be with	n me. l 16	In the lette	er, James sa to m o. She 18	ove to Engl	and to be w	t. She 13 you to leave ith you, beca out she 19	the circus a ause I'm doi	and come ng well in
GRAMMA	R AND V	OCABULA	RY: cloth	es. Use th	e words in	the box t	o say what	the people	e are (no
wearing.	Use a d	ictionar	y if neces	sary.				S	
belt cardiga glasses raincoa skirt sweate	hat at shoe socks	jacket es shir suit							
				John	Ca	thy	Sandra	Da	vid
	cks and	blacks	hoes. He	is not we	aring gla	sses.	rey trouse		
Tathy is w									
Tathy is w									
Eathy is w									
Cathy is w									
Sandra									
Sandra									
Sandra	exercise	. Use the	e internet	to get in	formation	about a v	vell-known	person. W	rite som
Sandra	exercise	. Use the	e internet le presen	to get in	formation	about a v		person. W	rite som

present tenses: revision test

1 W	/rite the simple present he/she/it forms.		
g	o cost do		enjoy fly
_	ave hope know live		
	lay stand teach thir		
•	ear wish work		,
	Irite the -ing forms.		
Ca	all calling begin cry	die .	enjoy fly
fo	orget get happen h	old .	hope learn
	ok make open pla		
	eep stop take		
3 P	ut the words in order to make simple present s	ente	ences.
	Phil / dogs / like (+) Phil likes dogs.		
•	know/you/Anna(?) Do you know Anna?		
•	open on Sundays / the post office (=) The post of	offic	ce doesn't open on Sundays.
1			
2	pop music/ like / I ()		
3			
4	coffee / some / want / you (?)		
5	rain / here / it / a lot (+)		
_	I/my/every week/wash/car (+)		
7	Spanish / Luke / speak ()		
8	friends / football / play / all your (?		
9	a suit / wear / to the office / I ()		
_			
10	make / spagnetti carbonata / now / you (
4 P	ut the words in order to make present progress	sive	sentences.
1	sister / my / in Spain / travel (+)		
2	happy / Alice / look / very ()		
3	the baby / why / cry (?)		
_	for the bus / wait / you (?)		
5	much tennis / I / these days / play ()		
6	nice / Tim/ wear / a / very / raincoat (+)		
7	me / talk / you / about / (2)		
8	, ,		
9	-		
10	this / I / enjoy / concert ()		
5 C	orrect (✓) or not (x)?		
1	'Where's Melissa?' 'She's coming now.'	0	I'm socing the destor this marning
	'Are you smoking?' 'No, never.'		I'm seeing the doctor this morning
2			'I can't pay you today.' 'I see.'
3	John cooks dinner just now	11	, 3
4	I work late most Tuesdays		What do you think about?
5	Why is she looking at me?		I think you're wrong
6	I'm going skiing every winter		That man is looking like your brother
	You're driving too fast	15	'Your English gets better.' 'Oh, thank you.'
8	What is this word meaning?		

SECTION 3 talking about the future

grammar summary

There are three common ways to talk about the future in English:

- with the *going to* structure. I'm really going to stop smoking.
- with the present progressive. I'm seeing John this evening.
- · with will.

Anna will be in the office from 10,00 till 2,00.

We use *qoing to* or the present progressive especially when the future has some present reality: for example to talk about plans that we have already made.

We can sometimes use the simple present to talk about the future.

Her train arrives at 15.37. I'll phone you when I get home.

I'll see you tomorrow if I have time.

Your horoscope for next week



AQUARIUS
(Jan 21 - Feb 18)

Wednesday will bring money, but the money will bring problems.



(Feb 19 - March 20)

It will be a difficult week. Don't travel by train.



ARIES(Mar 21 – Apr 20)

Some very strange things will happen on Tuesday. Try to laugh about them.



TAURUS

(Apr 21 – May 21)

The week will be full of danger. Stay away from children and animals.



(May 22 - June 21)

Your family will cause problems on Monday. And on Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, ...



CANCER

(June 22 - July 22)

The week will bring love, excitement and adventure. But not to you.



LEO

(July 23 – Aug 23)

Stay in bed on Thursday. Don't open the door. Don't answer the phone.



(Aug 24 - Sept 23)

You will meet an exciting stranger. Don't believe anything that he says.



LIBRA

(Sept 24 - Oct 23)

You will spend most of the week in hospital. Good luck.



CINC SCORPIO

(Oct 24 - Nov 22)

The week will be bad in many ways. But not as bad as the following week.



SAGITTARIUS

(Nov 23 - Dec 21)

You will make an unexpected journey. It will end badly.



CAPRICORN (Dec 22 – Jan 20)

Trouble will come from a horse and a washing machine.

going to Look – it's going to rain.

+ ?	I am going to drive am I going to drive? I am not going to drive	you are going to drive are you going to drive? you are not going to drive	etc	he/she is going to drive etc is he/she going to drive? etc	
	For contractions (I'm, aren't	etc), see pages 2 and 315.		an arginia color as	(In the e

We often use going to when we can see the future in the present - when a future situation is starting, or clearly on the way.



Look - it's aoing to rain.



Rebecca's going to have a baby next month.

Look at the pictures. What is going to happen? Use the words in	n the box.
► She is going to post a letter.	break the window
1 The woman	crash
2 He	drink coffee
3 She	have breakfast
4 The cars	play the piano
5 He	post a letter 🗸
6 The ball	read a letter
2	3
5	

We often use going to to talk about intentions - things that people have decided (not) to do. What are you going to wear this evening? I'm not going to take a holiday this year.

2	Make questions	with going to.
		A KR LIGHT

	you / cook supper Are you going to cook supper?
	when / your brothers / be here When are your brothers going to be here?
1	Jane / change her school
2	where / you / put that picture
3	what / you / buy for Felix's birthday
4	Ethan / play football / tomorrow
5	when / you / stop smoking
6	Alice / go to university
7	you / phone the police
8	your mother / come and stay with us
9	she / buy that coat
0	what / you / tell the boss

Sentences. Sentences.

do any work drive to Italy 🗸 fly 🗸 learn so stay in a nice hotel swim a lot take photos	
No. I'm not going to fly. I'm going to drive to Italy.	4
1	6
2	7
3	8



4 Make sentences with *going to*.

Andy / start school / next week Andy is going to start school next week.

you / see the dentist ? Are you going to see the dentist?

I/work this evening I'm not going to work this evening.

how / you / get to London ?

when / Monica / come and see us ?

it / snow I / cook fish / for lunch I / when / you / see the doctor ?

Angela / marry / her secretary I / John / call / this evening ?

I/ stop / playing poker I / everybody / watch the football match I / Sally / get the job I / John / call / this evening ? Sally / get the job I / Sally / get the job I

S Write some sentences about your intentions. Use I'm (not) going to ...

I'm this evening.	1
tomorrow.	2
next year.	3
when I'm old.	4
one day.	5

NOTE: In informal speech (and songs), we often say gonna for going to.



present progressive What are you doing this evening?

E.	l am working	you are working	he/she/it is working	we/they are working		
?	am I working?	are you working?	is he/she/it working?	are we/they working?		
	I am not working	you are not working	he/she/it is not working			
	For contractions (I'm, aren't etc), see pages 2 and 315.					

	For contractions (I'm, aren't etc), see pages 2 and 315.					
Wed	can use the present progressive with a future meanin	g , especially when w	e talk about plans for			
a fix	ed time and/or place.					
		re <mark>are</mark> you <mark>going</mark> on he				
Joe's	s coming to the theatre with us tomorrow. I'm starting	n <mark>g</mark> a new job next wee	k.			
4	Make sentences with the present progressive.					
	when/you/come back? When are you com	ing back?				
	1/go / there again I'm not going there aga	iin.				
1	1/ play / baseball tomorrow					
2	2 I / go / to Canada next year =					
	we / stay / with Paul and Lucy next week +					
	you / work / this evening =					
5						
6	my company / move / to Scotland next year 🛨					
7	how/your mother/travel to France 🔋					
8	3 1/ see / the dentist on Thursday 🛨					
9	I/go/to a concert tonight +					
10	Gary / marry Cathy / after all 📮					
0						
	ook at Harry's diary and correct the sentences.		Sunday			
	 He's staying in Berlin on Friday night. No, he's coming back to England on Friday 	20	John Parker morning			
á		J. 1989 M.C.	Monday			
1	He's seeing John Parker on Sunday afternoon.		to Birmingham (1.15 train)			
7	Le's going to the Pirmingham office by say		Tuesday			
2	Proceeds: He's going to the Birmingham office by car.		lunch Stewart 1.00			
2	He's having dinner with Stewart on Tuesday.		Wednesday			
ر	The s having diffile with Stewart on Tuesday.		theatre with Ann and Joe			
4	He's going to the theatre on Thursday evening.		Thursday			
	The significant the the the the significant of the		new secretary starting			
5	His new secretary is starting on Friday.		Friday			
			to Berlin U+014 8.00; back U+135 16.40			
6	Phil and Monica are going to his wedding on Saturda	av.	•			
			Saturday Phil and Monica's wedding			
			9			
	A friend of yours is going on holiday soon. Write	questions.				
	when / leave When are you leaving?	5 stay / with friend	ds			
•	take / your sister Are you taking your sister?	6 how/travel				
1		7 take / the dog				
2	why / go there		ou			
3	how long / stay	9 when / come ba	ck			



4 stay / in one place

will: predicting I think it will rain tomorrow.

+ ?	I/you/he/she/it/we/they will work will I/you/he etc work? I/you/he etc will not work
	Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; won't (= will not)

We use will + infinitive to predict - to say things that we think, guess or know about the future.

I think it will snow tomorrow. Be quick, or you'll miss your train. Bella won't be here this evening. When will you know your exam results?

-		
	Put the words in the correct order to make affirmative (
	Viit the words in the correct order to make affirmative (PTI CANTANCAC
4	i at the words in the contect order to make annimative (EE/ JUILLINGS.

•	at the words in the contect order to make animative (all) sentences.
	here George be will George will be here tomorrow.
	speak everybody English perhaps will Perhaps everybody will speak English in the year 2100.
1	begin class will the at 9.30.
2	be they'll homesoon.
3	examination will the difficult be
4	walk we'll party the to
5	she not speak will me to
6	your John answer questions will
7	Sunday ten years old will Emily be on
٨	Make questions with <i>will</i> .
1	what time / tomorrow evening's concert / start ?
2	when / you and the family / get back / from Paris ?
3	you / be / here tomorrow ?

4 you and your mother / be / here tomorrow? 5 where / you / be / this evening ? 6 the children / have enough money / for the journey ?

7 how soon / you know / the answer ?

M	ake negatives with <i>won't</i> and questions.
	1 won't finish this work today! 'When will you finish it?' (finish)
	John won't be here tomorrow: 'Will he be here on Tuesday?' (be)
1	'Annie here at ten.' 'When here?' (be)
2	'I time for lunch.' ' time for a sandwich?' (have)
3	'You one?' (find)
4	'The children' (go)
5	'Dylan much money if he sells that car.' 'How much' (get)
6	'Your car ready today.' 'When ready?' (<i>be</i>)
7	'I it?' (know)

NOTE: After I and we, some people say shall instead of will. The meaning is the same; will is more common in modern English.

will: deciding, refusing, promising I'll answer it.

	e can use will when we decide or agree to do things, and when we talk about refusing (saying 'no') and promising. We don't use the simple present in these cases.
OF	K, I really will stop smoking. She won't speak to me. I'll phone you. (NOT I phone you.)
Th	ings can 'refuse'.
Th	ne car won't start. This pen won't write.
We	e often use will at the moment when we decide something.
TI	here's someone at the door.' 'I'll go.' (NOT I go.) 'That's the phone.' 'I'll answer it.'
U	Put in words from the box with 'll or won't.
	do go shopping go to bed 🗸 help open start stop tell 🗸 tell wash
	 I'm tired. I think I. 'Il go to bed. I don't know what he wants. Hewow't tell us. I l
2	It's time to change your life. Look at the ideas in the box and write six promises with will or won't – the most important first.
	always think before I speak be nice to everybody drive too fast fall in love every week go for a walk every day go to bed early learn another language / a musical instrument read more relax smile at everybody smoke study English every day talk more slowly talk to strangers think about myself too much work harder (your own promise)
	I'll talk more slowly. I won't drive too fast.
3	Look at the expressions in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then circle the best answers.
	I'll think about it. I'll see. (= 'I'll think about it.') (I'll) see you tomorrow/later. (I'll) see you. I'll give you a ring/call. (= 'I'll phone you.') I'll tell you tomorrow/later.
	 'Mum, can I have an ice cream?' A 'I'll see.' B 'I'll see you.' 'When do you want to play tennis?' A 'I'll see you tomorrow.' B 'I'll tell you tomorrow.' 'I've got to go now.' A 'I'll see you.' B 'I'll think about it.' 'Would you like to come dancing with me?' A 'I'll see you.' B 'I'll give you a ring.' 'Can we talk about it some more?' A 'I'll see.' 'Goodbye now.' A 'See you tomorrow.' B 'I'll see.' 'What do you want for your birthday?' A 'See you.' B 'I'll tell you later.' 'Would you like to go to Scotland with me?' A 'I'll see you.' B 'I'll see.'

simple present for future Our train leaves at 8.10.

We c	an use the simple present to talk about timetables, cinema/theatre programmes and dates.	
Our t	rain leaves at 8.10. What time does your flight arrive? The film starts at 7.30.	
D P	ut the words in order to make sentences.	
U	leave / the flight / at 9.30 + The flight leaves at 9.30.	
	the film / what time / start? What time does the film start?	
	at Mill Road / this bus / stop This bus doesn't stop at Mill Road.	
1	start / the next lesson / at 2.00 +	
2	this term / on March 12th / end +	
3	when / finish / the concert ?	
	we / a lesson / next Thursday / have	
5	this bus / at the post office / stop ?	
6	at 8.00 / start / the play +	
7		
8	the banks / at 3.00 tomorrow / close +	
9	at every station / stop / the next train +	
10	when / start / the school holidays ? ?	
We u	se the simple present with a future meaning after before, after, while, until, when, as soon as and if.	
	see you before we go . (NOT before we will go .) We'll have a drink after I finish work.	
	an use my bike while I'm away. He'll phone you when he arrives. (NOT when he will arrive.)	
	wait until Justin gets here. I'll tell you if I need money. I'll write as soon as I get home.	
	ut in the correct verb forms: simple present or will-future.	
	If it rains , we 'll have the party inside. (rain; have)	
	l my exam. (be; pass)	
	If you now, you the train. (<i>leave</i> ; <i>catch</i>)	
	John says he as a taxi-driver if he money. (work; need)	
_	free tomorrow evening, but I	1
5	Mary Chinese next year after she work. (study; stop)	
	I	
	When he	
8	you smoking if the doctor you	
0	that you must? (stop; tell)	
9	If we	
10		
10	l you after l back from work. (phone; get)	
For	more practice on this point, see pages 236 and 245.	



future: more practice

1 Going to. Look at the pictures. What is going to happen? Use going to with the verbs in the box.

	a glass of water play the violin	get on a bus sing start	go skiing running v	_	_	nave dinner	
2 She's	o make coffee.		7 8 9				
	1	2	3		4	5	のできる
6	7	RT CAN 8	MIT THE THE	END.		10	33/

2 Present progressive. A problem. (Use a dictionary if necessary.) Jane is seeing five people next week, one each day: her bank manager, her solicitor, her accountant, her dentist and her doctor. Who is she seeing when? Read the text in the box, fill in the table and complete the sentences.

She's seeing her bank manager before her doctor. She's seeing her doctor on Tuesday. She's seeing her dentist two days after her bank manager. She's seeing her accountant two days after her doctor.

1	She's seeing on Monday.
2	on Tuesday.
3	on Wednesday.
4	on Thursday.
5	on Friday.

Monday	
Tuesday	doctor
Wednesday	
Thursday	
Friday	

(3) Will. These are sentences from real conversations. Put in forms of will with expressions from the box. (C: the speaker used a contraction: 'Il or won't.)

with going to (G), the present progressive (PP), will (W) or the simple present (SP).	nces (🖪)
► (G) start work / Robert / tomorrow - Robert is going to start work tomorrow.	
▶ (PP) again/invite/her/I ■ I'm not inviting her again.	
▶ (W) be / in the office tomorrow / Anna 2 Will Anna be in the office tomorrow?	
► (SP) leave / our train / at midday + Our train leaves at midday.	
1 (G) stop / I / smoking +	
2 (PP) I / Andrew / tonight / see 🛨	
3 (G) rain / it 📮	
4 (G) marry / Peter / his boss +	
5 (W) exams / his / pass / Oliver 🗖	
6 (W) like/ this / you / film +	
7 (SP) arrive / the bus from London / what time ?	
8 (PP) I/tomorrow/the car/use 🗖	
9 (G) steak / I / cook / this evening 🛨	
10 (G) how / travel / to Ireland / you 🚹	
11 (W, SP) I/phone you/when/get home/I 🛨	
12 (PP) you / on Saturday / work ?	
13 (W) need / you / for the night / room / a ?	
14 (G) write / you / to your father ?	
15 (W) we / enough / for a good holiday / money / have 🖃	
16 (W) key/find/the/I/where ?	
17 (W, SP) you / to university / after / leave school / you / go 🛂	
18 (PP) stay with us / next week / John and Sylvia 🛨	
19 (G) you / when / have a haircut ?	
20 (G) get up / soon / you ?	
GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: giving directions with will. Complete the letter. Put 'll wi	
onniminal and vocaborant, giving directions with vin. Complete the letter, i dt ii w	vith the
	vith the
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.	vith the
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.	vith the
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.	vith the
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. apple trees bridge door house key old house the road ✓ great time Dear Pamela and Simon	
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. apple trees bridge door house key old house the road ✓ great time Dear Pamela and Simon To find the house: when you get to Llanbrig, drive through the town and take ▶the road	. for
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. apple trees bridge door house key old house the road ✓ great time Dear Pamela and Simon To find the house: when you get to Llanbrig, drive through the town and take ▶the road Caernarvon. After about 6 km, you (pass) ▶	. for mediately after
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. apple trees bridge door house key old house the road ✓ great time Dear Pamela and Simon To find the house: when you get to Llanbrig, drive through the town and take ▶the road Caernarvon. After about 6 km, you (pass) ▶Ll. pass an 1	for mediately after on you (<i>come</i>
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. apple trees bridge door house key old house the road ✓ great time Dear Pamela and Simon To find the house: when you get to Llanbrig, drive through the town and take ▶the road Caernarvon. After about 6 km, you (pass) ▶L. pass	. for mediately after on you (<i>come</i>
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. apple trees bridge door house key old house the road ✓ great time Dear Pamela and Simon To find the house: when you get to Llanbrig, drive through the town and take ▶the road Caernarvon. After about 6 km, you (pass) ▶tl pass an 1	for mediately after on you (<i>come</i>
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. apple trees bridge door house key old house the road ✓ great time Dear Pamela and Simon To find the house: when you get to Llanbrig, drive through the town and take ▶the road Caernarvon. After about 6 km, you (pass) ▶L. pass	for mediately after on you (<i>come</i>
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. apple trees bridge door house key old house the road ✓ great time Dear Pamela and Simon To find the house: when you get to Llanbrig, drive through the town and take ▶the road Caernarvon. After about 6 km, you (pass) ▶tl pass an 1	for mediately after on you (<i>come</i>
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. apple trees bridge door house key old house the road ✓ great time Dear Pamela and Simon To find the house: when you get to Llanbrig, drive through the town and take ▶the road Caernarvon. After about 6 km, you (pass) ▶L. pass an 1	for mediately after on you (<i>come</i>
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. apple trees bridge door house key old house the road ✓ great time Dear Pamela and Simon To find the house: when you get to Llanbrig, drive through the town and take ▶ the road Caernarvon. After about 6 km, you (pass) ▶ Ll pass an 1 on the left. Imm that, you (come to) 2 a bridge. Turn left after the 3 and very soor to) 4 a crossroads. Go left again, and you (see) 5 our 6 on the right in about 300m. You (recognise) 7 it because it's got a green 8 four 9 You (find) 10 the 11 under a mat outside the Enjoy your holiday. I'm sure you (have) 12 a 13	for mediately after on you (<i>come</i>
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. apple trees bridge door house key old house the road ✓ great time Dear Pamela and Simon To find the house: when you get to Llanbrig, drive through the town and take ▶the road Caernarvon. After about 6 km, you (pass) ▶the pass an 1	for mediately after on you (<i>come</i> and the back door.
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. apple trees bridge door house key old house the road ✓ great time Dear Pamela and Simon To find the house: when you get to Llanbrig, drive through the town and take ▶the road Caernarvon. After about 6 km, you (pass) ▶L. Pass. an 1	for mediately after on you (<i>come</i> and the back door.
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. apple trees bridge door house key old house the road	for mediately after on you (<i>come</i> and the back door.
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. apple trees bridge door house key old house the road great time	for mediately after on you (<i>come</i> and the back door.
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. apple trees bridge door house key old house the road	for mediately after on you (come and the back door.
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. apple trees bridge door house key old house the road great time	for mediately after on you (come and the back door.
verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. apple trees bridge door house key old house the road	for mediately after on you (come

future: revision test

1 w	rite the contracted forms.		
•	I am going to	5	They will
	Twill	6	They will not
2	She will	7	She is not going to
3	It will not		OR
4	They are going to	8	I am not going to
	orrect (✓) or not (✗)?		
	You eat with us this evening?		The car won't start
	I'm taking a Spanish exam on Thursday		I'm working in London next week
1	'There's somebody at the door.' 'I go.'		The concert starts at 8.00 this evening
2	Will Anna and John be here tomorrow?	8	Emma's going to have a baby
	I promise I write again soon	9	Do you play tennis with Peter this weekend?
4	I'll telling you everything soon	10	Where will be the party?
Co	orrect the mistakes.		
		n are y	ou
1	The concert will tonight.		
2			
3			
4			
5			
6	, , , , ,		
7			
8			
9			
	ake questions and negative sentences.		
	Tim will play the trumpet on Tuesday. Fred / flu Will Fred play the flute on Friday?		
1	Susan's seeing Simon on Sunday. Melanie / Mai	rtin / Mo	onday ? Tessa / Tom / Tuesday 🗖

2	AA C		
2	Mr Smith is going to study Spanish in Seville. M	1r Andre	ws / Arabic / Algiers ?
	Mrs Roberts / Russian / Rome 🖃		
3	Charles will cook chicken for Charlotte. Derek /	duck / [Dorothy 2 Sally / spaghetti / Sam
3			solution state of the state of
	***************************************		.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
4	William is going to work in West Africa. Harry /	take a h	oliday / Hungary 🏿 Steve / study / Siberia 🗖

5	Angela is travelling to Amsterdam in August. O	liver / O	slo / October ? Monica / Madagascar / May 🗖

SECTION 4 past tenses



grammar summary

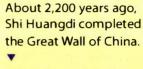
SIMPLE PAST: I worked, she worked, he didn't work etc PAST PROGRESSIVE (OR 'PAST CONTINUOUS'): I was working, she was working, he wasn't working etc

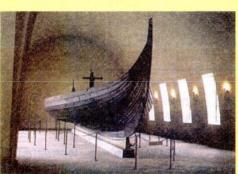
English has two 'past' tenses.

- We use the simple past for complete finished actions. We often use it in stories. A man walked into a police station and asked ... I wrote ten letters yesterday.
- We use the past progressive to talk about actions which were unfinished at a past time. 'What were you doing at 10.00 last night?' 'I was writing letters.'



◆ About 6,000 years ago, somebody painted this picture on a cave wall in Namibia, south-west Africa.







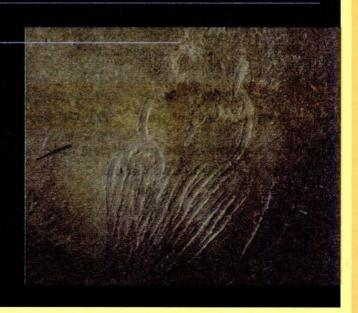
Stonehenge, in southern England, is about 4,800 years old. Who built it? Nobody knows.

About 1,200 years ago, Vikings from Scandinavia made this beautiful ship.



THE CAVE OF CHAUVET-PONT-D'ARC

bout 33,000 years ago, in the Stone Age, a man or a woman drew this owl on the wall of a cave in southern France. We don't know anything about the artist, and we never will. We only know that somebody saw an owl, saw that it was beautiful, and recorded its beauty. (When Picasso first saw prehistoric cave art, he said 'We have learnt nothing.') Before the Bronze Age or the Iron Age, before the glaciers covered Europe and went away again, before all of recorded history, an unknown person left a message for us: 'I saw this creature, and I thought it was beautiful'. Thank you, Stone Age artist.



simple past: forms I worked. I went.

	REGULAR VERBS	IRREGULAR VERBS		
+	l/you/he/she/it/we/they worked	l/you/he/she/it/we/they went		
?	did I/you/he/she/it/we/they work?	did I/you/he/she/it/we/they go?		
	//you/he/she/it/we/they did not work	l/you/he/she/it/we/they did not go		
	Contraction: didn't			

 HOW TO MAKE REGULAR SIMPLE PAST FORMS most verbs: +-ed work → worked help → helped rain → rained after -e: +-d hope → hoped like → liked
Write the simple past. walk walked arrive change cook watch
VERBS ENDING IN -Y
• vowel $(a, e, o) + y \longrightarrow -yed$ play \longrightarrow played enjoy \longrightarrow enjoyed • consonant $(d, l, retc) + y \longrightarrow -ied$ try \longrightarrow tried reply \longrightarrow replied
Write the simple past. stay study cry annoy carry hurry pray pray
DOUBLING (stopped, planned etc)
 one vowel + one consonant → double consonant + -ed stop → stopped (NOT stoped) two vowels: don't double seem -→ seemed wait → waited (NOT waitted) two consonants: don't double want → wanted (NOT wantted) only double in STRESSED syllables prefER → preferred BUT WONder → wondered
3 Write the simple past.
shop rain start rob slim jump shout slip fit turn Vlsit reGRET deVElop GALlop OPen ANswer reFER
With irregular verbs, you have to learn the simple past forms one by one (see page 299).
go went see saw buy bought pay paid
Write as many of the simple past forms as you can. Check them on page 299, and learn

the ones that you don't know.

become	. begin	break	bring	catch	
come	drink	eat	fall	feel	forget
get	give	hear	hold	keep	know
learn	leave	let	make	pay	put
read	say	shut	sit	speak	stand
take	tell	think	write		

simple past: use | left school in 1990.

We often use t	he <mark>simple past</mark> to	talk about when	things ha	appened.	
l left sch	ool in 1990.	I didn't see Ar	nn yester	day.	What time did you arrive?
PAST	1990	y de la company	ESTERDA	Y	9? 10? 11?
		SECURITY SEC			finished-time expressions.
Isaw that film	last week. (NOT I h	ave seen that film	last week	.)	
Did you pay W	illiam on Sunday?	(NOT Have you pa	id Willian	on Sunda	ay?)
Put the be	eginnings and e	ends together, u	sing the	verbs in	the box.
die ✓	forget learn	like read sp	oeak s	top	
0 Shake	espeare died		А	birthday	on Monday
	my girlfri	end's	В	in 1616.	
I .	s a really good bo		C		my lessons last week
	n we were childrei n't my		E		it last year ys French at home
	e did you	•	F		Spanish so well?
I started this jo How long Write the My last 1 Last Tue	ago was your la answer, and con birthday was sday was	ast birthday? Te mplete the othe	n days a er senter 	i go? Five nces. 3 Last 4 My t	ed a long time ago. weeks ago? Eight months ago? January
					nother, for example in stories.
He parked his	car, went into the s	station and bought	t a ticket.	inen he h	ad a cup of coffee and
3 Grammar	in a text. Put si	mple past verbs	into the	e story.	
1-6: 7-10: 11-15:	J	open say r not read take it speak turn	not see write	stand	
house. She she 6 it to her. Sh	3, 'Oh, he e 9 1 13	the door and 4 ello, Harold.' He 7 it in one hand, b	out 10	out. a pa cause –' S	her footsteps inside the At first she 5

simple past: negatives I did not work. I did not go.

I did not work you did not work	he/she/it did not work	we did not work	they did not work
Contraction: didn't	- applications and	Court Nick	Just person les 1990.
We make simple past negatives () with	did not /didn't + infini	tive (without to).	
STATEMENT - NEGATIVE			
	t clean the car. (NOT He		· car .)
,	t start early. (NOT He-did	•	
	t <mark>see</mark> you. (NOT She didn o <mark>'t go</mark> to Rome.	t saw you :)	
L Sommerous	· go to nome.		
Circle the correct form.			
I break / broke a cup yesterday.			to see us at the weekend.
Ann did not play/ played tennis thi		I didn't see / saw Bi	
 Harry work / worked last Sunday. I didn't know / knew where I was. 			wrote to me for a long time. rrive / arrives on time.
3 I didn't <i>feel / felt</i> well last night.			kes / liked her teacher.
3 Talan treer, reit well last night.	O	Julita didi i like / II	kes / liked fier teacher.
Make simple past negative senter			
I played hockey last weekend. (foot	ball) ! didn't play	y football.	
1 We spoke Spanish together. (Arabic			
2 My uncle taught mathematics. (scie			
3 Bill cooked the potatoes. (the fish)			
4 I took my mother to the mountains 5 We told our parents everything. (th			
6 wrote to my sister. (my brother)			
7 Hiked the party. (the music)			
8 We knew her address. (phone numb			
Complete the sentences with affir	rmativa (T) ar naga	ativo (=) vorbe	
I didn't break this window, but (the		ke the other one.	
I worked last week, but (the week be	Other One 11,	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	fore.
1 He didn't change his trousers, but (
2 She answered the first question, bu			
3 He phoned her, but (go to her house	₽ 🚍)		
4 I didn't bring any flowers, but (some	e chocolates 🛨)		
5 She didn't buy a coat, but (a very ni			
6 late the vegetables, but (the meat			
7 We kept the photos, but (the letters			
8 They didn't speak English, but (<i>Geri</i>			
9 My grandfather shaved on weekda	ys, but (at weekenas =	J	
Write five things that you didn't d	lo yesterday.		
1 I didn't			
2			
3			
4			
5	*******		

simple past questions Did you pay? What did she say?

?	did I work? did you work?	did he/she/it work?	did we work?	did they work?
Wer	make simple past questions (?) with did + subject	t + infinitive (w	vithout to).
	EMENT +	QUESTION ?		
He c	leaned the car.	Did he clean the car	?(NOT Did he c	leaned the car?)
	class went to Rome.	Į .	,	e did the class went?)
٨.				
	Circle the correct form.			
	I take /(took) my father to Sp	oain last week.	•	d you leave / left your job?
	Did you(hear) heard me?			ed speak / spoke to you about Andy?
1	Did Theo bring / brought hi			did that woman keep / kept all her money?
2				arn / learnt English when he was young.
3			•	I forget / forgot to buy milk.
4		•		u come / came by train or by bus?
5	How did Oliver break / brok	e his leg?	12 What c	lid you say / said?
2 N	Nake simple past question	ns.		
	James enjoyed the food, bu		id he enjoy t	he music?
1				
7	You didn't pay Ryan, but (th			
3				
4		-		
5	•			
6				
7	, , , , ,			
8	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	•		
9				
10				
11				
12	He forgot the name of his h	otel, but (the address	as well ?)	
3 N	Nake simple past question	s with what who	and where	
,	Pete saw somebody	ho díd he see?		
1				
2				
3				
_	· ·			
4				
5				
6				
7				
8				
9				
10				
11	Helen forgot something			
17	tauahaaa aa halidaaaaa	a.v.b.a.r.a		

12 Sarah went on holiday somewhere.

[→] For questions without did, like Who said that? or What happened?, see pages 108–109.

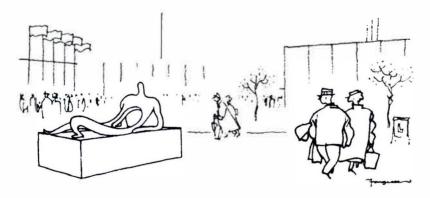


simple past: more practice

	REGULAR VERBS	IRREGULAR VERBS
?	I/you/he/she/it/we/they worked / liked did I/you/he etc work / like? I/you/he/ etc did not work / like	I/you/he etc went / saw did I/you/he etc go / see? I/you/he etc did not go / see
	Contraction: didn't	

	Contraction: alan t
D C	omplete the sentences with affirmative () verbs, questions () or negatives ().
•	She didn't feel well last night, but (OK this morning +) she felt OK this morning.
	1 bought a new coat yesterday! ('shoes too ?') Did you buy shoes too?
	We saw the Eiffel Tower, but (see Notre Dame) we didn't see Notre Dame.
1	I didn't learn much French at school, but (a lot of Latin +)
2	I remembered to buy the bread, but (the milk 🖃)
3	I spoke to Alexia's father, but (her mother 🖃)
4	'Peter didn't phone yesterday.' ('this morning ?')
5	I didn't take the bus to London; (the train 🛨)
6	I know you went to Singapore, but (<i>Malaysia</i> ?)
7	The train stopped at Edinburgh, but (Glasgow 🖃)
8	'Did the children see a film?' ('two films 🛨')
9	'I ate your cake.' ('my chocolates too ?')
10	I studied for the exam, but (<i>enough</i> =)
.	
4 N	lake simple past questions.
	Sarah and her baby came out of hospital. (When)
1	Ann and her brother went on holiday. (Where)
2	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
3	The small woman said something. (What)
4	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
5	
6	7 - FF
7	Oliver beat somebody at tennis. (Who)
8	J
9	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
10	Bruno lived in India. (<i>When</i>)

3 Look at the picture, and complete the sentence correctly.



- A did you remember
- B did you remembered
- C do you remembered
- D did you to remember

'That reminds me, dear – the sandwiches?'

past progressive* What were you doing at 8.00?

?	I was working was I working? I was not working	you were working were you working? you were not working	he/she/it was working was he/she/it working? he/she/it was not working etc	we/they were working were we/they working?
	Contractions: wasn'	t, weren't		

We make the past progressive with was/were + ...ing. (For spelling rules, see page 23.)

At 8 o'clock I was waiting for a train. What were you doing?

We use the past progressive to say what was (not) happening around (before, at and perhaps after) a past time.

'What were you doing at 8.00? Were you watching TV?' (NOT What did you do ...)

'At 8.00? No, I wasn't watching TV. I was playing cards.' (NOT+played ...)

NOW

What were the people doing yesterday evening? Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with words from the box. Use past progressive verbs.

cook supper dance drive home not watch TV play cards <

- At 9.15 Sarah . was playing cards.
- 1 At 10.30 Fred and Alice 2 At 8.20 Keith 3 At 7.50 Mary
- 4 At 11.00 Oliver









We make past progressive questions with was/were + subject + ...ing.

All the children were singing. STATEMENT : It was raining. You were working.

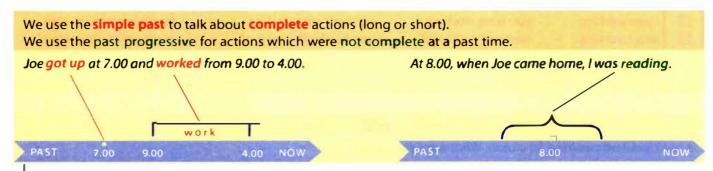
QUESTION ?: Was it raining? Were you working? What were all the children singing?

2 Write guestions.

- At 10.00 I was reading: (a newspaper) ... Were you reading a newspaper?
- ▶ 'When I saw Peter he was eating.' (what) What was he eating?
- 1 'When I went into Alesha's office, she was writing.' (letters)
- 2 'At lunchtime Richard was shopping.' (where)
- 3 'At 8.30 Anna was cooking.' (*what*)
- 4 'When I arrived, all the children were crying.' (why)
- 5 'At midnight, Liz and Jack were driving.' (to Scotland)
- What were you doing at 10 o'clock last night?

^{*} Also called 'past continuous'

simple past or past progressive? I walked / I was walking



Simple past or past progressive?

- ▶ I (ived) was living in France for eight years.
- Sue lived (was living) in France when her uncle died.
- 1 At 6.15, when you phoned, I had / was having a shower.
- 2 We watched / were watching TV all evening.
- 3 Matt watched/was watching TV when Anita came in.
- 4 My father worked / was working hard all his life.
- 5 They got married while they studied / were studying at London University.
- 6 Yesterday we drove / were driving from Oxford to Edinburgh and back.
- 7 It was a nice evening, so she walked / was walking home from work.

10 I had to drive to London because the trains (run) when I left home

- 8 I met Sylvie while I worked / was working in Japan.
- 9 At university I studied / was studying physics.
- 10 When I last saw him he talked / was talking to a policeman.

۷		omplete the sentences with past progressive verbs.
		When I got home (the children watch TV +) When I got home the children were watching TV.
		(you cycle ?) when you broke your leg Were you cycling when you broke your leg?
		When I saw Joan (she look) happy When I saw Joan she wasn't looking happy.
	1	At seven o'clock on Friday (we play cards 🛨)
	2	When I saw him he was holding the phone but (talk)
	3	When Mary got up (it snow ♣)
	4	When I saw Alice, (she walk —) very fast
	5	What (you do ☑) at ten o'clock yesterday evening
	6	When you heard them, (they talk about me ?)
	7	How fast (you drive ₹) when you had the accident
	8	The doorbell rang when I (expect) anybody
	9	I don't know what I (do +) at 10.00 on January 13th, 2005

Note the difference when we use the past progressive and the simple past together. Past progressive: longer action or situation. Simple past: complete shorter action that happened while the longer action was happening. While I was having a bath, While I was talking to my brother, the phone rang. Bill came in. Put simple past and past progressive verbs in the right places. ▶ While I was walking down the road, I saw Bill. (walk; see) 1 While I on to the table. (read; jump) 2 Alan Helen while he in Morocco. (meet: travel) 3 Sally her leg while she (*break*; *ski*) 4 While I , somebody my car. (shop; steal) 5 Ruth me eight times yesterday while I (phone; work) 6 The police me while ! home. (stop; drive) 7 | an interesting report on the radio while | breakfast. 8 Dad to sleep again while he TV. (*qo*; *watch*) 9 While I a glass. (wash up; break) 11 When I the house I took my coat because it (leave: snow) 12 When I about me. (open; talk) 13 The telephone while I lunch. (ring; cook) 14 When I last in Portugal. (hear; work) Correct (✓) or not (✗)? 1 This morning I listened to the news before I was going out...... 2 I walked up to the policeman and asked him the way to the station. 3 When Ann arrived I was writing letters. 4 The cat was bringing in a mouse while I was having breakfast. 5 I didn't go out because when I looked out of the window it rained. 6 When I went to sleep the teacher was talking about grammar. 7 The teacher was still talking about grammar when I woke up. 8 Jenny and Takashi got married while she worked in Tokyo. Put in words from the box, in the simple past or past progressive. drive pull open pass run shine < sing start turn turn wait people 2...... in front of the palace. At 10.00, the guards 3..... the Palace gates, and the President's car 4..... out and 5..... left into Democracy Street. The crowds 6...... to sing the National Anthem. The President's car 7...... right into Constitution Square. Then suddenly, just as it 8...... the Ritz Hotel, a man 9...... out in front of it and 10...... a gun from his pocket.

past tenses: more practice

🚺 Si	mple past. Make sentences.
	the train / stop / at every station The train stopped at every station.
	when / my letter / arrive? When did my letter arrive?
	the doctor / remember / my name The doctor didn't remember my name.
1	what / all those people / want ?
-	all your brothers / send you / birthday cards ?
2	un your brothers / seria you / birthauy caras
3	the baby / eat / some toothpaste this morning +
,	the baby / cat / some toothpaste this morning
1	the teacher / answer / my question 🗖
5	I / lose / my keys again yesterday +
5	anybody / phone / while I was out ?
7	• • •
,	The Prime Minister / tell / us that things were getting better 🛨
0	At Condend 1 / believe / at a Direct Michael
8	My friends and I / believe / the Prime Minister 🖃
0	0:1-1/
9	Richard / give / me a birthday present
10	What time / you / get up / today ?
9 p:	ast progressive. Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.
	When I walked in (the children fight +) the children were fighting.
	What (you do ?) in my office when I came in Were you doing
	When I had the accident (I drive) fast wasn't driving
1	
1	At 9.00 on Sunday (we watch TV +)
	When I saw him he was holding a paper, but (read)
3	When you heard them, (they speak English ?)
	When you got home, what (the children do 2)
5	Anna arrived when I (expect) her
6	I don't know what I (do 🛨) at 6.00 on February 18th
7	When I looked out of the window it (snow +) again
8	I had to drive to work because the trains (run 🖃)
9	How fast (you drive ?) when the police caught you
10	When I saw Peter, he (stand ♣) and looking up at my window
	e
3 Si	male past and past progressive. Dut in the sourcet your forms
	mple past and past progressive. Put in the correct verb forms. They .told the police that theywere playing cards at 10.00. (tell; play)
	When I out of the house I took my umbrella because it(go; rain)
	This morning I the newspaper before I went out. (read)
	you the football match last night? (watch)
	When I into the room they about clothes. (walk; talk)
	At 8 o'clock yesterday morning I in the sea. (swim)
6	I walked up to the classroom window and in. The teacher but
	nobody (look; talk; listen)
7	The telephone as usual, while I a bath. (ring; have)
8	This time last Friday I on the beach. (<i>lie</i>)
9	Why you home early yesterday? (go)
10	When I first John he round the world. (meet; travel)

4	Gr	rammar in a text. Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.
	Ye	sterday (get up) out of the
		indow it 2 (rain), exactly like every other day this week.
		s (wash), 4 (get dressed)
		give) the cat his breakfast, and 6 (make) coffee.
	_	(not eat) anything, because I'm never hungry in the morning. Then I
		go) to the bus stop and 9 (wait) for the bus. It
	_	(not arrive) to the office.
		hile 1 12 (walk) I decided once again that it was time to find another job – one
		th a car. When I 13 (arrive) – nobody 14 (work) –
		everybody (talk) about the weather. The boss
		(come in) everybody to start working, but
		is 18 (not make) much difference. I 19 (sit down) at my
		esk and 20 (start) thinking about football.
	ue	sk and 20 (start) thirking about rootball.
5	GR	RAMMAR AND VOCABULARY. Make sure you know all the words in the box. Use a dictionary if
		ecessary. Then try to correct the mistakes. Find the answers on the internet if necessary.
		teessary. Then ary to correct the mistakes. That the answers on the internet in necessary.
	Г	build climb compose discover make invent paint write
	<u></u>	
		Galileo wrote 'Hamlet'. Galileo discovered the moons of Jupiter.
		Shakespeare discovered the moons of Jupiter. Shakespeare wrote 'Hamlet'.
	1	Mozart built the Eiffel Tower.
	2	Leonardo da Vinci directed 'Ivan the Terrible'.
	3	Shah Jehan invented dynamite.
		Alfred Nobel wrote the song 'Help'.
	5	Sergei Eisenstein built the Taj Mahal.
	6	Gustave Eiffel wrote 'Pride and Prejudice'.
	7	Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay composed 'The Marriage of Figaro'
		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
	8	Marie Curie first climbed Mount Everest.
	9	John Lennon and Paul McCartney discovered radium.
	10	The novelist Jane Austen painted the 'Mona Lisa'.
		The Hovelist state Austern painted the Mona Lisa.
6	Int	ternet exercise. What did these people do? Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find out the
		nswers, if necessary.
		Alexander Fleming
		Giuseppe Verdi
		Rembrandt van Rijn
	4	Edmund Whymper
		Mary Shelley
	_	•
	6	Stephanie Kwolek
		Christopher Wren
	×	AVIF2 KUFOC2W2

past tenses: revision test

	W	rite the simple past forms.
	arı	rive arrived become begin break break bring brin
	bu	y change cry develop feel
	go	o hope leave like pay start
	sta	ay stop watch write work
2		rcle the correct forms.
		Why didn't you phone / phones / phoned?
	1	In the afternoon the rain stoped / stopped.
	2	You never visited / visitted me in hospital.
	3	When I arrived she was makeing / making coffee.
	4	My mother didn't feel / felt well yesterday.
	5	We usually speak / spoke French in my family when I was a child.
	6	Henry didn't told / tell the police anything.
	7	Did you like / liked the film?
	8	I didn't saw/seen/see the accident.
	9	John phoned / was phoning just when I went / was going out.
1	10	I played I was playing football a lot when I was at school.
	ο.	. din cimula nact au mast muanuscius vauks
		it in simple past or past progressive verbs.
		He his wife that hewas Playing chess at midnight. (tell; play)
		1 as a translator for two years. (work)
		Jenny
		Liz
		We John all evening. (listen to)
		While I my car, Ellie to talk to me. (clean; stop)
		1 my hand while I (burn; cook)
		Rick
	8	My mother in Dublin all her life. (<i>live</i>)
		While she in Chicago she ill. (study; get)
	10	The police him while he out of the bank. (catch; run)
1	Ea	ich sentence has one or two mistakes. Correct them.
		Hooked out of the window, and I was seeing that it rained. Saw was raining
	1	Yesterday we were driving from London to Bristol and back.
	2	At university I was studied engineering.
	3	Why you were crying when I came in?
	4	I was begining to get tired, so I was going home.
	5	We payed the bill and leaved the restaurant.
	6	While I was shoping, somebody was stealing my bicycle.
	7	The doorbell ringed while I was cleaning the flat.
	8	It was a warm day, so we opening all the windows.
		What time you was got up this morning?

10 I did lost my keys somewhere when I walked home this evening.

SECTION 5 perfect tenses



grammar summary

(SIMPLE) PRESENT PERFECT: I have worked, she has worked, he hasn't worked etc PRESENT PERFECT PRÓGRESSIVE: I have been working, he has been working etc

PAST PERFECT: I had worked, she had worked etc.

We use the present perfect to talk about past actions with some importance now. I've written to John, so he knows what's happening.

We use the present perfect progressive mostly to say how long things have been going on up to now. I have been writing letters since breakfast time.

When we are already talking about the past, we use the past perfect to talk about an earlier time. Yesterday I found some old letters that Kate had written to me from Germany.

NN CARSTAIRS was born in 1976. She is an explorer who has travelled extensively in Asia and Africa. She has also participated in expeditions to the North and South Poles and she has climbed in the Andes and Himalayas. For the last five years, Ann has been working for the National Institute for Polar Research. She has written four books about her experiences.





ISABELLA LUCY BIRD (1831-1904) was a famous explorer. At a time when it was difficult for women to be independent, she travelled in the United States, Persia, Tibet, Kurdistan, China, Japan, Korea and Morocco. She wrote many books about her experiences, illustrated with her own remarkable photographs.

He's not here. He's gone to Paris.

Look what I've found!

Who's taken my coat?

I've made a cake. Would you like some? Have you ever been to Canada?

I've just had a brilliant idea.

I've already read it.

She's been here since Monday.

The Prime Minister has met workers' representatives. They discussed a number of questions.

I've been studying English for three years.

Nobody was there. They had all gone home.

I knew I'd seen her somewhere before.



present perfect: forms I have paid. Has she forgotten?

REGULAR VERBS			AN IRREGULAR VERB
I have worked have I worked? I have not worked	you have worked have you worked? you have not worked	he/she/it has worked etc has he/she/it worked? etc d etc	
For contractions (I've, he's, haven't), see page 301.		and all balance and the	

To make the present perfect, put have/has with the past participle (worked, seen etc). Regular past participles end in -ed, like simple past tenses (for spelling rules, see page 46).					
work worke	hope hope	stop → stopp	ed try	→ tried	
With irregular verbs, the past participle is often different from the simple past tense. You have to learn the forms one by one (see page 299).					
see → seen	speak → spoken	go → gone	buy → bo	ught	

1	Write as many of the irregular past participles as you can. Check them on page 299,
	and learn the ones that you don't know.

become become	beginbeg	un break .	bring	buy
come	drink	. eat	fall	forget
give	hear	hold	. keep	know
learn	leave	let	make	pay
put	read	say	shut	sit
stand	take	tell	think	write

2	Write affirmative (♣)	or negative () present p	erfect sentences.

	(speak +) to the boss (nuve spoken to the boss)
	they (eat) anything They have not eaten anything.
1	she (forget +) my address
	I (<i>make</i> ♣) a mistake
3	you (shut =)the door
4	Alan (work +) very hard
	I (hear 🖃) from Mary
6	John (learn ■) anything
7	I (<i>break</i> ♣) a cup
8	we (buy +) a new car
9	the rain (stop +)
	L(see 1) a newspaper today



'Somewhere with no irregular verbs.'

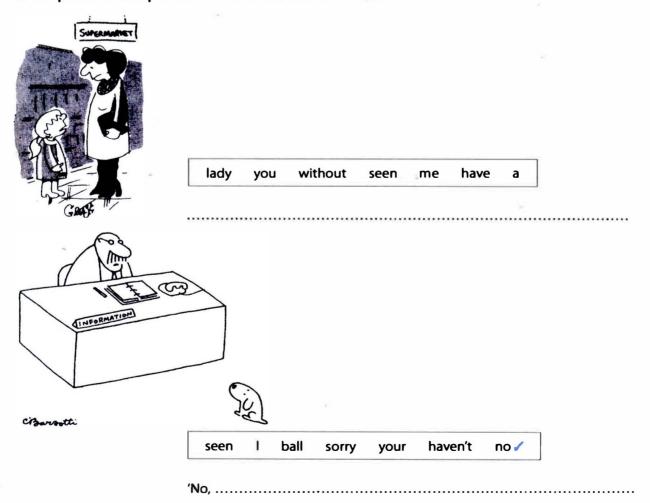
We make present perfect questions with have/has + subject + past participle.

STATEMENT #: You have paid. The rain has stopped. The children have gone to Dublin. Have you paid? Has the rain stopped? Where have the children gone? QUESTION ?:

_				
3	Make	present	perfect (questions.

 and present periods questions:
John/leave? Has John Left?
why/Fiona/go home? Why has Fiona gone home?
where / you / put the keys? Where have you put the keys?
we / pay ?
Tim / phone ?
you / hear the news ?
the dogs / come back ?
what / Barbara tell the police ?
why / Andy and Sarah / bring the children?
what / you / say to Mike ?
why / everybody / stop talking ?
you / see / Martin anywhere ?
who / take / my coat ?
what / happen?
where / my brother / go ?
why / Peter / close the window ?
Judith / pass / her exam ?
the postman / come ?

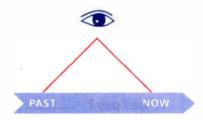
4 Look at the pictures and put the words in the correct order.



finished actions: present perfect or simple past?

PRESENT PERFECT: WE THINK ABOUT THE PAST AND THE PRESENT TOGETHER When we think about the past and present together, we normally use the present perfect.

I've written to John, so he knows what's happening now. I've made a cake. Would you like some? Look - I've bought a new dress.



FINISHED ACTION	PRESENT PERFECT	PRESENT
letter (yesterday)	I've written to John. ←	John knows now.
cake (this morning)	I've made a cake. Would you like some?	I'm offering you some now.
new dress (last Tuesday) ——>	Look - l've bought a new dress. ◀	I'm showing you now.

SIMPLE PAST: WE THINK ONLY ABOUT THE PAST, NOT THE PRESENT When we think only about the past, we most often use the simple past.

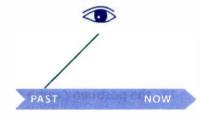
My grandfather wrote me a lot of letters.

(He's dead now; I'm not thinking about the present.)

I made a cake for the children, but they didn't like it.

(I'm not talking about the present.)

I bought a new dress last Tuesday, for the party. (I'm thinking only about last Tuesday.)



Read the sentences and the questions, and circle the correct answers.

- ▶ Ann has bought a new coat. Has she got the coat now? (YES) / PERHAPS
- ► Grandma came to stay with us. Is Grandma with us now? YES (PROBABLY NOT)
- 1 I made a cup of tea. Is there tea now? YES / PROBABLY NOT
- 2 Eric has made a cake. Is there a cake now? YES / PROBABLY NOT
- 3 Jane went to France. Is she there now? YES / DON'T KNOW
- 4 Marlon has gone to Scotland. Is he there now? YES / DON'T KNOW
- 5 Pat and Al started a business. Is the business still running? YES / DON'T KNOW
- 6 Sue has started guitar lessons. Is she taking lessons now? YES / DON'T KNOW
- 7 The cat has run away. Is the cat at home now? NO / DON'T KNOW
- 8 The doctor sent Bill into hospital. Is he there now? YES / DON'T KNOW
- 9 Pete lost his glasses. Has he got his glasses now? NO / DON'T KNOW
- 10 Joanna has cut all her hair off. Has she got any hair now? NO / DON'T KNOW

Circle the correct verb forms.

- 1 Shakespeare never travelled / has never travelled in Africa.
- 2 When I was at school I studied / have studied Latin.
- 3 Rob lost / has lost his job, and he can't find another one.
- 4 We met / have met some very interesting people on our last holiday.
- 5 Look I bought / 've bought some new shoes.
- 6 My grandmother left / has left school at 14.
- 7 'Does your father know you're back in England?' 'Yes, I told / 've told him.
- 8 I made / 've made mushroom soup. Would you like some?
- 9 'What's Rosie's phone number?' 'Sorry, I forgot / 've forgotten'.'
- 10 Who built / has built Edinburgh Castle?

3 What are the people saying? Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with verbs from the box. Use the present perfect.

break ✓ break buy cut eat find give pass sell send stop

- Somebody ...has broken the window.
- 1 'John us a postcard.'
- 2 '1 a hat.'
- 3 '1 my finger.'
- 4 'The rain
- 5 'Look what Peter me.'
- 6 '1 my car.'
- 7 '1 too much.'
- 8 'I an earring'
- 9 '1 my exam!'
- 10 'I my arm.'



4 Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in the present perfect verbs.

break ✓ change close find forget go leave lend lose see

- O Joe has broken his leg,
- 1 Molly can't get into her house
- 2 'He's looking unhappy.'
- 3 'Who's that?'
- 4 'That's a good film. Shall we go?'
- 5 'Where's Louise?'
- 6 'Can I borrow your bicycle?'
- 7 Anton a new job.
- 8 'Shall we have lunch at the Cantina?'
- 9 'Denise looks different.'

- A 'Sorry. I know him, but I his name.'
- B 'Yes, his girlfriend him.'
- C because she her keys.
- D 'No,1 it.'
- E so he can't go skiing. \dots .
- F 'Yes, she her hair-style.'
- G 'We can't. lt'
- H 'I think she to Ireland.'
- I 'Sorry, I it to Maria.'
- J He's working in a bank now.

Note the difference between gone (to) and been (to) in present perfect sentences.

Where's John?' 'He's gone to Paris.' (He's there now.) Mary's gone swimming. She'll be back at 6.00. I've been to Italy lots of times (and come back), but I've never been to Spain.

S Put in been or gone.

- 1 'Where's Zoe?' 'She's shopping.'
- 2 Gary's shopping. The fridge is full.
- 3 Have you ever to the United States?
- 4 They're not here. They've all out.
- 5 I haven't to the cinema for weeks.
- 6 Katie's to live in Greece.

We don't normally use the present perfect with finished-time expressions.

I've seen Ann. OR I saw Ann yesterday. BUT NOT Eve seen Ann yesterday.

We use the simple past, not the present perfect, in stories (see page 47).

A man walked into a police station and said ... (NOT A man has walked ...)

time words: present perfect or simple past?

We don't normally use the present perfect with finished-time expressions.

We've found oil in the garden. BUT NOT We've found oil in the garden yesterday. A plane has crashed at Heathrow Airport. BUT NOT A plane has crashed at 3.15 this afternoon.

Circle the words for a finished time.

a few days ago always this week last week never now then today when in 1990 yesterday

2 Correct (✓) or not (✗)?

- My father has changed his job.
- Andy has gone to Scotland last week.
- 1 Look what Peter has given me yesterday!
- 2 I've seen a great programme last night.
- 3 I think everybody has arrived now.
- 4 When have you talked to Ann?
- 5 We've bought a new car in April.
- 6 I've met my wife when we were students.
- 7 Look what Peter has given me!

- 8 Mary has written to me three weeks ago.
- 9 Sorry I've forgotten your name.
- 10 I've forgotten Mike's birthday last Tuesday.
- 11 Everybody has gone home at 10 o'clock.
- 12 There's nobody here! What has happened?
- 13 Sally has left school in 2006.
- 14 When have you arrived in London?
- 15 I think Mary has missed the train.
- 16 What have you done then?

We can use the present perfect to ask if things have happened up to now, or to say that they haven't happened up to now. This often happens with words for an unfinished time (for example today, ever, never). Has the boss phoned today? Have you ever broken your leg? We haven't been to Scotland this year. Mary hasn't written to me this week. Have you ever seen a ghost? l've never seen one. PAST ?EVER EVER NEVER Steven Daid for his Lescons?

3	Make	present	perfect	sentences.
---	------	---------	---------	------------

	Steven / pay / for his lessons ?
1	you / ever / write / a poem ?
2	I / never / climb / a mountain
3	Charles / speak / to you / today ?
4	Clara / not / tell / me / her new address
5	you / ever / lose / your memory ?
6	We / not / play / football / this year
7	Alex / never / write to me
8	you / see Henry / this week ?
9	my father / never / drive a car
10	the cat / have / anything to eat / today ?
11	you / finish / those letters ?
12	I / not / pay / for the lessons / this month
13	Sally / have a baby
14	Lucy / not phone / today
	Corinne / come back / from India ?
16	lt / stop / raining
17	the postman / come / this morning ?
18	We / eat / everything in the house

We can use the present perfect to say how often things have happened up to now.

That's a wonderful film. I've seen it three times. Sally has only been to Ireland once. We've often wanted to come and see you.

4) M	lake present perfect sentences.	
•	I/break/my arm/three times I've broken my.	g arm three times.
1	Joe / change / his job / twice this year	
2	how often / she / ask / you for money ?	
2	1/2622/401/422420000000000000000000000000000	
3	I / often / try / to stop smoking	
4	Tom / phone / me / six times this week	
5	My father / meet / the Prime Minister / twice	

6	The police / question / Annie / more than once	
		,,
7	I / only / play / rugby / once in my life	
8	My brother / often / help / me / in my work	
	•	.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
9	Nobody / ever / understand / her	
10	I / never / want / to go to the moon	
. •	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
	_	
S Pi	resent perfect or simple past? Circle the correct	et answers.
1	Did you ever go / Have you ever been to Wales?	6 I haven't bought any clothes this year / last year.
2	I never read / have never read any of his books.	7 Julia stayed / has stayed with us last week.
3	Our team won / has won two matches this year.	8 I worked very hard today / yesterday.
4	Our team won / has won two matches last year.	9 never saw / have never seen a ghost.
	· ·	_
5	Shakespeare never went / has never been to Athens.	10 When did John phone. / has John phoned?
6 W	/rite five things that you didn't do yesterday, an	nd five things that you have never done.
1		yesterday.
י		yesterday.
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		
7		
8		
9		
10		
→ Fo	or the present perfect with just, yet and already, see page 64.	

already, yet and just

We often use the present perfect with already (='earlier than somebody expected').

'Newspaper?' 'No, thanks. I've already read it.' You're late. We've alread	y started.
Complete the sentences with <i>already</i> and verbs from the box	k (present perfect).
cook finish get up go√ leave pay	
1 'Shall I pay?' 'No, I	wake Helen?' 'She chicker re fish.' 'I chicker the film?' 'It
We also often use the present perfect with yet (= 'up to now') in question	ns and negatives.
Note the word order: <i>yet</i> usually comes at the end of a sentence. 'Have you spoken to John yet?' 'No. He hasn't come in yet.'	
2 Make questions (2) and negatives (5) with <i>yet</i> .	
1 my sister / phone ?	
2 the postman / come =	
3 Bill / find a job =	
5 1/ start work	
6 you / have supper ?	
o your nave supper	
And we often use the present perfect with just (= 'a short time ago'). Jus	t comes after have
I've just come back from Spain. The rain has just stopped.	Comes area nave.
The fair has jos stopped.	
3 Do these things, and then write sentences to say what you h	ave just done.
(touch your ear) !! have just touched my ear.	
1 (look at the floor)	
2 (think about your home)	
2 (think about your home)	
2 (think about your home)	
2 (think about your home) 3 (move your feet) 4 (put your hand on your head)	
 2 (think about your home) 3 (move your feet) 4 (put your hand on your head) 4 It is eight o'clock in the morning. Look at the table and say w 	
2 (think about your home) 3 (move your feet) 4 (put your hand on your head) 1 It is eight o'clock in the morning. Look at the table and say w Use present perfect verbs with already, yet and just.	hat Angela has (not) done.
2 (think about your home) 3 (move your feet) 4 (put your hand on your head) 1 It is eight o'clock in the morning. Look at the table and say w Use present perfect verbs with already, yet and just. She has just had a cup of coffee.	hat Angela has (not) done. have a cup of coffee 7.55
2 (think about your home) 3 (move your feet) 4 (put your hand on your head) 1 It is eight o'clock in the morning. Look at the table and say w Use present perfect verbs with already, yet and just. She has just had a cup of coffee. She hasn't got dressed yet.	hat Angela has (not) done. have a cup of coffee 7.55 get dressed
 2 (think about your home) 3 (move your feet) 4 (put your hand on your head) 4 It is eight o'clock in the morning. Look at the table and say w Use present perfect verbs with already, yet and just. She has just had a cup of coffee. She hasn't got dressed yet. She has already done a lot of work. 	hat Angela has (not) done. have a cup of coffee 7.55 get dressed do a lot of work
 2 (think about your home) 3 (move your feet) 4 (put your hand on your head) 4 It is eight o'clock in the morning. Look at the table and say w Use present perfect verbs with already, yet and just. She has just had a cup of coffee. She hasn't got dressed yet. She has already done a lot of work. 	hat Angela has (not) done. have a cup of coffee 7.55 get dressed do a lot of work write letters three
2 (think about your home) 3 (move your feet) 4 (put your hand on your head) 1 It is eight o'clock in the morning. Look at the table and say w Use present perfect verbs with already, yet and just. She has just had a cup of coffee. She hasn't got dressed yet. She has already done a lot of work. 1 She letters. 2 She mother.	hat Angela has (not) done. have a cup of coffee 7.55 get dressed
2 (think about your home) 3 (move your feet) 4 (put your hand on your head) 1 It is eight o'clock in the morning. Look at the table and say w Use present perfect verbs with already, yet and just. She has just had a cup of coffee. She hasn't got dressed yet. She has already done a lot of work. 1 She letters. 2 She mother. 3 She kitchen.	hat Angela has (not) done. have a cup of coffee 7.55 get dressed 4 do a lot of work write letters three telephone mother 7.57 clean kitchen 4
2 (think about your home) 3 (move your feet) 4 (put your hand on your head) 1 It is eight o'clock in the morning. Look at the table and say w Use present perfect verbs with already, yet and just. She has just had a cup of coffee. She hasn't got dressed yet. She has already done a lot of work. 1 She letters. 2 She mother.	hat Angela has (not) done. have a cup of coffee 7.55 get dressed
2 (think about your home) 3 (move your feet) 4 (put your hand on your head) 1 It is eight o'clock in the morning. Look at the table and say w Use present perfect verbs with already, yet and just. She has just had a cup of coffee. She hasn't got dressed yet. She has already done a lot of work. 1 She letters. 2 She mother. 3 She kitchen. 4 She newspaper	hat Angela has (not) done. have a cup of coffee 7.55 get dressed 4 do a lot of work write letters three telephone mother 7.57 clean kitchen 4

since and for since Tuesday; for ten years

TUESDAY		I've been here since Tuesda	зу	NOW
We use the present perfect , no			mething has	s continued up to now.
I've been here since Tuesday. (N				
I've known John for ten years. (I		onn for ten years.)		
We can say how long with since We use since when we give the		of the time (for evam	nlo cinco Tur	nedau)
We use for when we give the le			•	•
I've been here since Tuesday.		here for three days. (NC		
I've known Mary since 2005.		Mary for a very long t		
I've had this car since April.		car for six months.		
Dut in aire as au fau				
1 Put in since or for.	_			i.i.
1 six weeks		yesterday breakfast tim) July) last week
2 Sunday 3 1996		breakrast tim		ast week
4 ten years		five minutes		this morning
4tell years	0	live illilidies	12	g
How long have you know				
I've known my End	glish teach	ier since September	:	
1 I've known		for		
2 l've	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •			
3				
4		•••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
5				
3 How long have you had	things? W	rite sentences		
3				
4				
5				
0				
4 Make present perfect qu			المحادث المالية	h.m. 12
				ntry?
•				
•				
	-			
J David and Litzabetii / De	, together	•••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
Re know and have are non-nr	ogressive v	erhs (see nages 30-31) With most	other verbs, we use the present

How long have you been waiting?

perfect progressive (see next page) to say how long things have continued up to now.



present perfect progressive* It's been raining since Sunday.

+	I have been working have I been working? I have not been working	you have been working have you been working? you have not been working etc	he/she/it has been working etc has he/she/it been working? etc
	For contractions (I've, he's, h	naven't etc), see page 301.	

We make the present perfect progressive with have/has been + ...ing.

We have been living here since April. John's been working in the bank for three months.

We use the present perfect progressive (with most verbs) to say how long things have been continuing up to now. (For be, have and know, see page 65.)

It's been raining all day. I've been learning English for four years. Have you been waiting long?

We've been travelling for six hours.

NOW

1	lake present perfect progressive sentences. Use for or since (see page 65).	
	John started learning Chinese in February. Now it's July. (for) John has been learning Chinese for five months.	
	It started raining on Sunday. It's still raining. (since) It's been raining since Sunday.	
1	Mary started painting the house on Monday. Now it's Friday. (for)	
2	We started driving at six o'clock. Now it's ten o'clock. (for)	
3	Anna started working at Smiths in January. (since)	
4	Joseph started building boats when he was 20. Now he's 40. (for)	
5	We started waiting for the bus at 8.30. (since)	•••
6	Prices started going up last year. (since)	
7	We started camping on July 20th. (since)	
8	My father started teaching 40 years ago. (for)	
ç	It started snowing at midnight. Now it's midday. (for)	
10	The team started training together in June. Now it's September. (for)	

REMEMBER: we don't use present tenses to say how long things have been going on.

They've been living here since 1998. (NOT They are living here since 1998.) I've been learning English for three years. (NOT I'm learning English for 3 years.)

^{*} Also called 'present perfect continuous'

2 How long have you been learning English?

- Correct (✓) or not (✗)?
 - I'm waiting for her since this morning.
 - I've been waiting for her for four hours.
 - 1 I have been sitting in this office since 9.00.
 - 2 She's working here since 1998.
 - 3 We have been driving for about six hours.
 - 4 How long are Ann and Peter working here?
- 5 Sue has been talking on the phone all day.
- 6 How long are you learning English?
- 7 My brother's living in Glasgow since March.
- 8 That man has been standing outside all day.
- 9 I'm only playing the piano since Christmas.
- 10 Have you been waiting long?
- 4 Look at the pictures and say what the people have been doing. Use the verbs in the box (present perfect progressive).

	play	play	swim	teach	travel 🗸	write
•	She	has be	en trav	elling.		•
						•
					•••••	
			•••••			. letters.















past perfect It had already begun when we arrived.

+ ?	I had seen	you had seen	he/she/it had seen etc
	had I seen?	had you seen?	had he/she/it seen? etc
	I had not seen	you had not seen	he/she/it had not seen etc
	Contractions: I'd,	you'd etc; hadn't	

To make the past perfect, put had with the past participle (worked, seen, lost etc). She didn't phone Alan because she'd lost his number. It was a film that I hadn't seen before.

Make past perfect sentences.

- ► Anna wasn't at home. Where had she gove. (go 🖺)
- 1 The woman told me that she in China a few years before. (work 🛨)
- 2 Everything in the garden was brown because it(rain)
- 3 The bathroom was full of water. What(happen 2)
- 4 | knew | that man somewhere before, (see +)
- 6 After three days the dogs came back home. Where(be 2)
- 7 They gave me some money back because I too much. (pay +)
- 8 There was nothing in the fridge. I could see that Peter the shopping. (do 🖃)

We use the past perfect when we are already talking about the past, and want to talk about an earlier past time.

Our train was late, and we ran to the cinema. But the film had already begun.

EARLIER PAST

I got out of the car and went into the school. It was empty. Everybody had gone home. I was glad that I had caught the early bus. Anna wondered if anyone had told Jim. We couldn't understand why Sue hadn't locked the door.

Circle the correct answers.

- Ididn't recognise / hadn't recognised Helen, because she cut /(had cut) her hair very short.
- 1 No one understood / had understood how the cat got / had got into the car.
- 2 Joe didn't play / hadn't played in the game on Saturday because he hurt / had hurt his arm.
- 3 When I looked / had looked in all my pockets for my keys, I started / had started to get very worried.
- 4 Liz never travelled / had never travelled by train before she went / had gone to Europe.
- 5 | 1 arrived / had arrived at the shop at 5.30, but it already closed / had already closed.
- 6 | didn't have / hadn't had much money after | paid / had paid all my bills last week.

3 F	Put in the simple past or the past perfect.	
		had got into the house. (not tell; get)
	Fmma Went to France last we	eek. Before that, she
	been outside Ireland. (go; be)	
4		me, the children all the sweets.
	(get; eat)	ne, the children dir the sweets.
-	•	at school with my grandmother.
4		at school with my grandmother.
_	(meet; be)	Aliak I assistantasis
-	•	that I my window.
	(start; remember; not close)	(6.1
	l a letter on my desk the	·
5		ne theatre, but he the tickets.
	(already tell; buy)	
We	use the past perfect after when to show that son	nething was completely finished .
Who	<mark>en I had watered</mark> all the flowers, I sat down and had	d a cool drink.
Who	<mark>en Susan had done her shopping, she</mark> went to visit l	her sister.
4	Make sentences using the past perfect afte	
	Jan finished her dinner. Then she sat down to	
	When Jan had finished her dinner, she	e sat down to watch TV
	 David phoned his girlfriend. Before that he did 	his piano practice.
	David phoned his girlfriend when he h	nad done his piano practice
7	George ate all the chocolate biscuits. Then he	started eating the lemon ones.
2	I turned off the lights in the office. Then I locke	ed the door and left.
3	I borrowed Karen's newspaper. Before that she	read it.
4	Mark had a long hot shower. Before that he did	d his exercises.
	_	
9	Barry phoned his mother with the good news.	
	, F	
	Nothing	had changed
	100	m . n . t . 1
	When I went back to my old school	Travellers had camped in the dining-room, and left their names on the walls.
	nothing had changed.	and left their names on the walls.
	Well, OK,	Wind blew
	the place had closed down.	through the rooms where I had sat for so long
	the place had closed down.	and learnt so little.
	Doors stood wide,	Rubbish piled up in the corners.
	windows had lost their glass,	
	ceilings had fallen.	But nothing important had changed.

[→] For the past perfect in indirect speech, see page 265.

perfect tenses: more practice

	erb forms. Make questions or negative sentences.
•	She has finished the book. She hasn't finished the book.
	The rain has stopped. Has the rain stopped?
1	All those people have gone home.
2	Peter has told us everything.
3	The postman has been. ?
4	Pat has spoken to Robert. ?
5	Tim and Angela have bought a house. 🖃
6	Emma's boyfriend has forgotten her birthday. 🔃
7	Monica has been working in London all this week.
8	I've phoned Joseph. 🗖
9	Robert and Sally have moved to Ireland. 🛽
10	We've been working all day.
2 D	verent moutest ou simula most? Compleady has just said these souteness
	resent perfect or simple past? Somebody has just said these sentences. hoose the best answers.
	'Harry has found a new girlfriend.' Has he still got this girlfriend? YES / PERHAPS
	'Then a cat came into the house.' Is the cat in the house now? YES PROBABLY NOT
1	'I've made coffee.' Is there coffee now? YES / PROBABLY NOT
2	'So Ross made soup.' Is there soup now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
3	'And Tom has started Japanese lessons.' Is he taking lessons now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
4	'Jill and Bob opened a driving school.' Is the school running now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
5	' because Pete lost his glasses.' Has he got his glasses now? NO / WE DON'T KNOW
6	'Alan has gone to America.' Is he there now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
7	'We had a good time in Bulgaria.' Are they there now? YES / NO
8	'July has been a good month for business.' Is it still July? YES / NO
9	'Tony and Maria went to China.' Are they there now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
10	'Polly has just bought a new coat.' Has she got the coat now? YES / PERHAPS
3 Q	uestion formation. Make questions (simple past, present perfect or present perfect progressive).
•	The letter arrived. (when) When did the letter arrive?
•	Somebody has told her. (who) Who has told her?
1	Everybody has already gone home. (why)
2	Anna's been learning Chinese. (how long)
3	George closed the door. (why)
4	Sue and Jeanne have gone on holiday. (where)

5	The President visited Russia. (when)
6	Jan's father has been travelling in Wales. (how long)
7	Something has happened. (what)
8	Joe has been working in Spain. (how long)
9	Mary studied medicine. (where)
10	Somebody has taken my bicycle. (who)

4	Simple past or past perfect? Complete the sentences.
	1 When I him, I that I him before. (see; know; meet)
	2 He enough money for food because he so many clothes. (not have; buy)
	3 The meeting when I (already start; arrive)
	4 The car down because I to put oil in. (break; forget)
	5 I Mary for the first time thirty years ago. (meet)
	6 After our conversation I everything that she (forget; say)
	7 The house was empty. Everybody out. (go)
	8 When he work he out for a walk. (finish; go)
	9 When I looked in the fridge, I some cheese that I six weeks before. (find; buy
1	0 He the door, and then realised that he his keys in the house. (close; leave)
5	Grammar in a text. Put in the correct forms of the verbs.
	not be / hannen have lose not note smooth
	not be ✓ happen have lose not pass spend
	Last year ▶was wot a good year for Pete and Sonia. Pete 1 a car
	accident and 2 a month in hospital, Sonia 3 her job, the
	children 4 their school exams, and a lot of other bad things 5
	be buy change open pass
	This year 6 much better. Pete 7 his job, and is making
	much more money. They 8 a new house. Sonia 9 a small
	restaurant, and it's going very well. And the children 10 all their exams this time.
6	GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: housework. Put simple past verbs into the story.
	Use a dictionary if necessary.
	ose a dictionary if necessary.
	Once upon a time there was a beautiful girl called Cinderella. Her two sisters made her do all the
	housework. Every day she (▶ get) up early, she (1 sweep) the floors,
	she (2 make) the beds, she (3 polish) the furniture, she
	(4 wash) and (s iron) the clothes, she (6 wash up) all the
	dishes and (7 put) them away. She (8 tidy)
	all the rooms, and she (9 do) hundreds of other jobs.
	Now put present perfect verbs into the conversation.
	SISTERS: Well, Cinderella, have you done everything?
	10 the floors? 11 the beds?
	12 the furniture? 13 the
	clothes? And 14 them? 15
	the dishes? And 16 them away?
	17all the rooms?
	CINDERELLA: No, I 18 anything. I'm going to
	marry the Prince. Goodbye!
VA)	Internet exercise. Read the two texts on page 57. Then use the internet to find out
	information about two other people (one living, one dead), and write a few sentences about
	their lives. Be careful to use the simple past or the present perfect correctly.

perfect tenses: revision test

•						
	Put in the past	•	No.		ما سنساء	
	_	break	bring		drink	
	forget	-	leave		stand	stay
	stop	take	tnink	try		
0	Complete the s	entences with si	mple past verbs	or past participle	≥s.	
	▶ 1wrote to	o my brother yester	day. (write)	5 Who has	my coffee	?? (drink)
	► I haven't .Writ	ten. to my sister fo	r a long time. (write	e) 6 We	too much last r	night. (eat)
	1 The lessons	last week	. (begin)	7 John	off his bicycle	yesterday. (fal
	2 You've	three cups tod	ay. (break)	8 I'm sorry, I'v	e your	name. (forget)
	3 Why have you	home	early? (come)	9 I've	my address to	the police. (give
	4 We	. what they wanted	l. (know)	10 Somebody	has my	umbrella. (take
6	Circle the corre	ct forms				
0		nas slept very badly	last night			
		ve known / We've be		nd Andy for / since	Vears	
		rking / I've been woi	_	•	years.	
		as gone to London.				
	•	eam already has lost			It lost / has lost all	its games
	last year too.	tani uneddy nas iose	/ Has alleday lost te	en games tills year.	it lost / rius lost all	its gaines
	•	rive / Have you ever	driven a bus?			
		eaks good English,		nd / never had less	ne	
	•	lave you seen Paul y		ia / nevernaa lesso	113.	
	•	started this job for		weeks ann I ann eid	aht weeks	
		in this school for / s	_	weeks ago / ago eig	in weeks.	
1		ou know/have you	•			
'	o now long doy	ou know / nave you	KIIOWII NEDECCA:			
0		entences with th				
	have boug	ht ti	ckets for the match	. Do you want to c	ome with me? (buy	·)
	My grandfathe	erent	to school in Irela	nd. (<i>go</i>)		
	► How long"	ve you	been standing	there:	! (stand)	
	1 When	Mike	h	is new watch? (los	ie)	
	2 That child		chocolate a	ıll day. (eat)		
	3 Andrew isn't h	ere today - he		an acciden	t. (just have)	
	4 lt	r	on-stop since Sund	day. (snow)		
	5 1	m	athematics from 19	996 to 1998. (study)	
	6 'You're looking	happy.' 'Yes, I		my exam.' (just pass)	
	7 How long		you	Emma	i? (know)	
	8	you ever	a po	em? (<i>write</i>)		
	9 The company		a lot of	money last year. (<i>l</i> o	ose)	
1	0 'Do you like th	e book I gave you?	' 1	it ye	t.' (not start)	

SECTION 6 modal verbs

grammar summary

shall, should will, would ought to MODAL VERBS: can, could may, might must PAST AND FUTURE OF MODALS: be able to have to

The modal verbs are a special group of auxiliary verbs. We use them before other verbs to express certain meanings – for example permission, ability, possibility, certainty.

Modals have different grammar from other verbs. For example, they have no -s on the third person singular: we say he can, NOT he cans.

Have to, be able to and used to are similar to modals in some ways, and they are included in this section. For will, see pages 39-40.



(Adapted from advertisement for Centre for Alternative Technology. Machynlleth, Wales.)

Letters to a magazine

Should I give up smoking? Should I marry Bob? Should I move to Woking? Should I change my job? Should I dye my hair green? Should I tell his wife? Should I ask a magazine How to live my life?

(Lewis Mancha)

Hove mankind, it's people I can't stand.

(Charles M Schulz)

If you can't live without me, why aren't you dead yet?

(Unknown)

There are three kinds of people: those who can count, and those who can't.

(George Carlin)

Money can't buy you love.

(Traditional)



modal verbs: introduction can, must, should etc

will, would can, could may, might shall, should must ought to

The modal verbs are a special group of auxiliary verbs. They are different from most other verbs in four ways.

+ INFINITIVES WITHOUT TO

After modals (except ought), we use infinitives without to. (After other verbs, infinitives have to.)

Can I use your phone? (NOT Can I to use ...) Joe can't swim. I may be out tonight. BUT I want to use her phone. I'd like to go home. Joe seems to have a cold.

- Circle the correct answers.
 - Can you play / to play the guitar?
 - I don't want play / to play football today.
 - 1 Ann seems be / to be very tired.
 - 2 Peter hasn't phoned. He must be to be away.
- 3 Could you pass / to pass the orange juice?
- 4 We hope get / to get a bigger flat soon.
- 5 Chris may be / to be here at the weekend.
- 6 I forgot speak / to speak to Janet.

NO -5

Modal verbs have no -s on the third person singular (he/she/it form). (Other verbs have -s.)

John can speak Korean. (NOT John cans ...) Barbara may be late. This must be your coat. **BUT Josh knows my father.** Ann seems to be ill. The cat wants to go out.

- Add -s or nothing (-).
 - ▶ Amy play. 5... tennis. ▶ Tim can.... swim. 1 Our cat like..... fish. 2 It may..... rain.
 - 3 She must..... pay now. 4 Harry work..... in London. 5 Kim should..... phone her mother.
 - 6 The train seem to be late. 7 Nick might come and see us. 8 Tom want to go home.

NO DO

We make modal questions (2) and negatives (-) without do. (Other verbs have do.)

Can you help me? (NOT Do you can help me?) You must not tell Philip. (NOT You don't must ...) BUT Do you know my friend Jeremy? Sally doesn't cook very well.

Make questions (2) or negatives (2).

(Negatives in this exercise: cannot/can't; must not/mustn't; may not)

- ► Claire can't speak Russian. (Chinese ?) Can she speak Chinese?
- ▶ Katy must wash her clothes. (do it now) She mustn't do it now.
- 1 Mike can't swim. (ski ?)
- 2 John can play football. (poker 2)
- 3 Maria must play the piano. (sing -)
- 4 Robert may go to Italy. (go this week -)
- 5 Emma can visit us on Saturday. (Sunday -)

NO INFINITIVES OR PARTICIPLES

Modal verbs have no infinitives or participles: to can, maying, musted.

Instead, we use other verbs: $can \rightarrow be$ able to (see page 81); must $\rightarrow bave$ to (see page 78).

must You must be home by eleven. Must you go?

I must go you must go he/she/it must go etc (NOT I must to go, NOT he/she/it musts go) ? must | qo? must he/she/it go? etc must you go? (NOT Do I must go?)

In affirmative (+) sentences, we use must when we mean This is necessary. I must get up early tomorrow. You must fill in this form. (NOT You must to fill ...) You must visit us while we're in Paris. Pat and Jan are so nice – we must see them again.

Complete the sentences with *must* and verbs from the boxes.

	be 🗸	go	hurry	pay	speak	stop	study	write	
•	FATHE	R: You	must	be	home	by elev	en. 4	TAX OFFIC	E: You the tax now.
1	TEACH	ER: Yo	u		in in	ık.	5	TEACHER:	Your daughter harder.
2	FRIEND): We .			– we're	e late.	6	BOSS: You	politely on the phone
3	DOCTO	R: You	ı		smo	king.	7	MOTHER: 1	hat child to bed now.

Put the beginnings and ends together. Add must and verbs from the box.

read 🗸 get up give have phone see go go

Γ				
	0	Smith's latest book is her best, I think.		l her tonight
	1	I haven't heard from Annie for ages.	В	Youst read it. Shall I lend it to you?
	2	I've left my handbag in the restaurant.	C	My mother made it; you a piece
	3	This cake is delicious.	D	You it. It's a cinema classic
	4	'Velocity' is a wonderful film.	Ε	We for a walk this weekend
	5	I've got a lot of work to do tomorrow.	F	You me your phone number
	6	I'd like to see you again.	G	I back and get it
	7	The woods are full of flowers.	Н	must early
1				

In questions (2), we use must when we mean: 'Is this really necessary?' To make questions with must, we put must before the subject.

Must we tell the police when we change addresses? Must you talk so loud? Must you qo?

A new student is asking some questions about next week's exam. Complete the questions. Use Must I ...? and verbs from the box.

	answer	bring 🗸	come	pay	sit	stay	wor	rk	write
>	Must	bring		. writin	ıg pap	er?	4		
2			.,	. to thi	s roon	n?	6		
3				. in ink	?		7 .		

Have to (see pages 76-77) means the same as must. Must has no past (musted) or infinitive (to must). Instead, we use had to and (to) have to (see page 77).

have to Do you have to teach small children?

+	I/you/we/they have to go do I/you/we/they have to go? II/you/we/they do not have to go	he/she/it has to go does he/she/it have to go? he/she/it does not have to go
	Contractions: don't; doesn't	

Have to is not a modal verb, but we use it very like must.

We use have to when we want to say 'This is necessary' / 'Is this necessary?' (like must).

You have to drive on the left in Britain.

I have to go to New York for a meeting every month.

My sister has to work on Saturdays.

Do your children have to take lunches to school?

• Complete the sentences with have to or has to and expressions from the box.

L	be 🗸	be	carry 🗸	do	have	have	know	- 1	know	like	practise	read	wear	
			anthas					5	A poli	tician		go	ood at sp	eaking.
•	Builde	rs	ave to ca	rry		heavy th	ings.	6	Footb	allers			a lot of tr	aining.
1	A sold	ier				a unit	form.	7	A secr	etary		a	good m	emory.
2	Stude	nts				a lot of b	ooks.	8	A gard	dener			. about f	lowers.
3	A scho	ooltea	cher			chile	dren.	9	Docto	rs			about	drugs.
4	Cooks				very	clean h	ands.	10	A mus	ician				a lot.

2 Put the beginnings and ends together. Add Do/Does ... have to.

0	'Mary's a swimming teacher.'	Α	' finish it today?'
1	'Here is some work for you and lan.'	В	' speak Spanish?'
2	'I want you to go to your aunt's party.'	C	' tell you now?'
3	'Jo and Alec work for a Mexican firm.'		' stay until the end?'
4	'When would you like your holiday?'	E	· Does she have to teach small children?'
5	'Dad and I are going out tonight.'	F	' pay it all now?'
6	'That will be 250 Euros.'	G	' travel a lot?'
7	'Peter works in marketing.'	Н	'So babysit?'

Write five things that you have to do every day, or most days.

I have to take the train to work.

1	
2	
3	
4	
W	rite five things that you never have to do.
	I never have to speak Chinese.
1	

3	
4	
5	
	4 5 W 1 2

[→] For negatives (do not / don't have to) see page 77.

mustn't and don't have to We mustn't wake the baby.

I must not go he/she/it must not go etc you must not go I do not have to go you do not have to go he/she/it does not have to go etc Contractions: mustn't, don't have to

Must has two negatives (-): we use mustn't or must not when we mean 'Don't do this'. we use don't / do not have to when we mean 'This isn't necessary'.

We mustn't wake the baby. You mustn't smoke here. You mustn't take pictures here. You don't have to pay now; you can pay when the work is finished.

We don't have to hurry - we're early.

light

let

Complete the sentences with *mustn't* and the verbs in the box.

play

play



At a campsite	e:	3	animals run around
> You mi	estn't light fires.	4	in the toilets.
1	dishes in the showers.	5	football.
2	loud music.	6	noise after 10 pm.

wash

Put the beginnings and ends together. Add don't have to and verbs from the box.

smoke

	drive	give	make	make	post	speak	wake	/	
C	You	don	t have to	wake	me up;			Α	I can walk
1	You				breakfas	st for me;		В	I'll buy The Times at the station
2	You		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		lunch fo	r me;		C	Cathy's going to the post office
3	You				me to th	ne station;		D	I'll just have coffee
4	You				me your	newspap	oer;	Ε	I've got an alarm clock. \dots
5	You				those le	tters;		F	everybody here understands English
6	You				French;			G	I'll have lunch in the canteen

Mustn't or don't have to?

	Youtn't pay John – he hasn't done any work
	Youdon't have to pay John – I've already paid him.
	You stay up late tonight – you've got school tomorrow morning.
2	You stay up late to wash the dishes – I'll wash them in the morning.
3	Weleave the door open – the rain will come in.
4	Weleave the door open – Peter has got a key.
5	You write to Deepak about this – I've already written to him.
6	You write to Deepak about this – if you do, he'll tell everybody.
7	You drive so fast – the police will stop you.
8	You drive so fast – we've got a lot of time.
9	Ilook in the cupboard again – I've looked in there twice.
10	Ilook in the cupboard – Holly has put my birthday present in there.
11	You phone Maxine now – she's probably asleep.
12	You phone Maxine now – tomorrow will be fine.

had to, will have to I didn't have to pay.

	PAST: HAD TO	FUTURE: WILL HAVE TO
+	l/you/he etc had to go	I/you/he etc will have to go
?	did I/you/he etc have to go?	will I/you/he etc have to go?
-	//you/he etc did not have to go	l/you/he etc will not have to go
	Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; didn't; won't	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR

		Contractions: 1 II, you if etc; alant; won t
		has no past or future: musted; will must.
		se <i>had to</i> for the past and <i>will have to</i> for the future of both <i>must</i> and <i>have to</i> .
		num had to leave school at sixteen. Did you have to tell Jo? I didn't have to pay.
Al	ice	will have to start school next September. Aled won't have to come.
4	w	rite about the things that John had to do (王), and didn't have to do (こ), at school.
V		(learn French +) He had to Learn French.
		(play tennis -) He didn't have to play tennis.
	1	(learn Russian -)
	2	
	3	(learn music =)
	4	(play football +)
	5	(write poems -)
		(write stories +)
	Ū	(white steller)
2		ake questions with Did have to?
		you/learn French at schoolDid you have to learn French at school?
		Annie / work last Saturday Did Annie have to work last Saturday?
	1	Adam / pay for his lessons
	2	Tina / take an exam last year
	3	Joe and Sue / wait a long time for a train
	4	you / show your passport at the airport
	5	the children / walk home
	6	Peter / cook supper
3	c	amplete the contenees. Use 'Il have to will have to 2 or won't have to with
9		omplete the sentences. Use 'll have to, will have to? or won't have to with se verbs in the box.
	tn	le verbs in the box.
		ask get get go learn play study√ tell work
	L	ask get get go learn play stady v ten work
	•	Cara wants to be a doctor. She 'll have to study hard.
	1	Lucy needs a new passport. She a form from the post office.
	2	Edward's got a new car, so he to work by bus.
	3	'I've got a job with a Swiss company.' ' you French?'
	4	'Jack wants to be a pianist.' 'He for hours every day.'
	5	'Can I go home early?' 'I don't know. You the boss.'
	6	I'm working next Sunday, but I on Saturday.
	7	'Liz wants to go to the US.' ' she a visa?'
	8	I don't know the answer now. I you tomorrow.

should What should I tell John?

+ ?	I should go should I go? I should not go	you should go should you go? you should not go	he/she/it should go etc should he/she/it go? etc he/she/it should not go etc	(NOT I should to go) (NOT do I should go?)
	Contractions: sho	uldn't		

Should is like must, but not so strong. We use should for suggestions, opinions and advice. Ought to is like should, but less common.

You should / ought to be more careful.

People **shouldn't** drive fast in the rain.

Should I wear a tie?

0	Choose the best v	erbs, and com	plete the sentences with should and shouldn't.
	le a big city you	should be	careful with your manay the make sta

- 1 In an airport, you your baggage with you. (keep, run, stop) 2 I think everybody a foreign language. (work, learn, teach)
- 3 You everything in the newspapers. (write, play, believe)
- 4 You some fruit or vegetables every day. (drink, eat, self)
- 5 Doctors say you (work, smoke, get up)
- 6 Advertisements the truth. (tell, sell, break)
- 7 Small children with knives. (think, play, write)
- 8 Parents their children's letters. (read, cook, lie)
- 9 People fast in towns. (drive, run, walk)
- 10 You always what you think. (say, pay, play)

Make questions with should I, the question words and verbs from the box.

QUESTION WOR	DS: Wh	at 🗸 Wh	at	What tim	ne Wh	at time	Where	Where	Who
VERBS: arrive	put	phone	sit	tell 🗸	wake	wear			

	What should I tell John?' 'Tell him I left early.'
2	
4	
5	'this box?' 'On the shelf.'
	'vou up?' 'Not too early, please.'

We use must to talk about what's necessary, and we use should to talk about what's good.

I must get a new passport: I'm travelling next month. I should eat more fruit, but I don't like fruit.

Put in should or must.

- ▶ 'Do I look OK?' 'You ...should get a haircut.'
- 1 I can't go; I finish this work.
- 2 | take more exercise.
- 3 Youn't smoke near babies.
- 4 The sign says wen't smoke.
- 5 What I do to get a visa?
- 6 You be over 16 to buy cigarettes.
- 7 'What music | play?' 'Mozart.'

can He can play the piano.

+ ?	l can go	you can go	he/she/it can go etc	(NOT can to go , NOT he cans go)
	can l go?	can you go?	can he/she/it go? etc	(NOT do can go?)
	l cannot go	you cannot go	he/she/it cannot go etc	(NOT can not go)
	Contraction:	can't		

I can speak Italian. I can read Spanish, but I can't speak it. Can you sing?

Write sentences with but about what David can and can't do.





Richard







•	(speak)	He can speak German, but he can't speak Hindi
	•	baseball.
2	(play)	the violin.
3	(rememb	er)
4	(eat)	



To make questions () with can, we put can before the subject.

Can Bill swim? Can Alice speak Chinese? When can I pay?

Make questions with can.

'Little Lilya is ten months old now.' (walk)
John is starting the violin.' (what / play) What can he play?
'My brother wants to work in a restaurant.' (cook)
'My daughter's going to Spain.' (speak Spanish)
'Bill and Lisa want to buy a house.' (how much / pay)
'Can I help in any way?' (drive a bus)
'Some colours look bad on me.' (wear red)
'Jessica and I have got a lovely hotel room.' (see the sea)
'I want to learn the piano.' (<i>read music</i>)
'My brother is looking for a job.' (what / do)
'I can't eat cheese.' (eat butter)
'My sister is one year old today' (talk)

Write three things that you can do, and three things that you can't do.

•	
2	l can
3	l can
4	l can't
5	l can't
	I com/a

could; be able to She couldn't write. I'll be able to drive soon

+	I could go	you could go	he/she/it could go etc	(NOT lid could go?)
?	could I go?	could you go?	could he/she/it go? etc	
-	I could not go	you could not go	he/she/it could not go etc	
	Contraction: co	uldn't		

	FUTURE	
+ ? -	I/you etc will be able to go will I/you etc be able to go? I/you etc will not be able to go	
	Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; won't	

To talk about the past, we use coul	could.
-------------------------------------	--------

I **could** talk when I was thirteen months old. I **couldn't** understand the teacher yesterday.

I could walk when I was ten months old.

How could you say that to me?

- 1	
0	Choose the best verbs, and use them with could to complete the story.
	My brother's baby was unusual. At three months old she (▶ say / speak)could say 15 words. At a
	year old she (1 name / count) all the colours, and she (2 speak / count) to
	100. At three she (3 read / learn) easy books. She (4 not think / not write) but
	she (5 play / tell) wonderful stories, and she (6 remember / believe) every
	story that she heard. She (7 not walk / not cry) until she was nearly two, though.

What could you do at six years old? Look at the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then make some sentences with *I could* or *I couldn't*.

climb trees	dance	ngnt	play chess	play the plano	read	run fast	sing	write	

Can does not have an infinitive (to can). Instead, we use (to) be able to.

I want to be able to speak German. (NOT ... to can speak German.) I'll be able to drive soon.

(3)	Make	sentences	with	will	be d	able	to.

- ▶ I/swim/soon !'ll be able to swim soon.
- 1 Little Tim / talk / soon
- 2 I/pay you / next week
- 3 I hope that / go to America / one day
- 4 The doctor / see you / tomorrow
- Write about yourself, using be able to.

1	I'll soon
2	' next year
3	I'll one day

5 We / buy a car / next year

4 I'll always

5 I'll never



may and might It may snow. I might have a cold.

I may go you may go he/she/it may go l may not go you may not go he/she/it may go he/s	
No contractions: mayn't	
We use <i>may</i> to say that things are possible – perhaps	thou are (not) true, or perhaps thou will (not) happen
'What's that animal?' 'I'm not sure. It may be a rabbit.' We may not be here tomorrow.	i may go to wales at the weekena.
We do not use may in this way in questions.	
It may snow. BUT NOT May it snow?	
Rewrite the sentences with may.	
Perhaps Sarah's ill. Sarah may be ill.	
Perhaps we won't go out. We may not go	out.
To Temaps Twomt be here tomorrow.	
2 Put the beginnings and ends together; put in	n may with words from the box.
not be decide give go ✓ go not ha	eve snow stay
0 'What are your plans for next year?'	A 'I'm not sure. I
1 'Are you going to buy that coat?'	
2 'Where are your parents going on holiday?'	,
3 'Shall we phone Pete now?'	C 'No. I to study physics.' D 'Yes. I think it
4 'It's getting very cold.'	
5 'What are you doing this evening?'	E 'Perhaps; I enough money.' F 'I don't know. I him a sweater.'
	G 'It's early; he out of bed yet.'
7 'What are you giving Oliver for his birthday?'	H 'We round to Sophie's place.'

We may live without poetry, music and art; We may live without conscience, and live without heart; We may live without friends, we may live without books; But civilised man cannot live without cooks.

(Owen Meredith)

Science fiction is the literature of might be. (CJ Cherryh)

Note the difference between may not and can't.

She may not be at home - I'll phone and find out. (= 'Perhaps she's not at home ...')

She can't be at home: she went to Spain this morning. (='She's certainly not at home ...')

We can use can't to express great surprise or disbelief.

'Karen's going to marry Des.' 'It can't be true. She hates him!'

3 Put in may not or can't.

- 1 We can try that restaurant, but they have a table free.
- 2 There are no lights in the house, and they're not answering the doorbell. They be at home.
- 3 He says he's got lots of money, but it be true.
- 4 'You've won 1 million Euros in the lottery.' 'No, it be true!'
- 5 She says her dog talks to her, but dogs talk.
- 6 I'll ask that policeman, but he speak English.
- 7 'Can you come tomorrow?' 'I'll see. I have time.'
- 8 | pass the exam, but I'm hoping for the best.
- 9 'They've found elephants in Antarctica.' 'That be right.'
- 10 I'm going to see my old primary school teacher tomorrow, but sheremember me.'

+	I might go	you might go	he/she/it might go etc
?	might go?	might you go?	might he/she/it go? etc
-	I might not go	you might not go	he/she/it might not go etc
	Contraction: mig	ghtn't	Company of the compan

We can use *might* in the same way as *may* – especially if we are **not so sure** about things.

'Are you ill?' 'Not sure. I might have a cold. Or perhaps not.' I might not be here tomorrow.

Might is unusual in questions.

4) John has no money. He is thinking about things that might happen. Put in verbs from the box with might.

buy	fall	find	make	send	win 🗸

might win a lot of money in the lottery. Or l 1 some money in the street. Or Uncle Max 2 me \$1,000. Or a rich woman 3 in love with me.

Or the bank 4...... a mistake. Or somebody 5..... my old car.

S Might or might not? Circle the correct answers.

- Kate had a big lunch, so she might want / might not want to eat this evening.
- 1 It's getting late. I might finish / might not finish this work on time.
- 2 If the traffic gets very bad we might miss / might not miss the train.
- 3 If he's had a good day, your dad might give / might not give you money for the cinema.
- 4 Andrew's story is so good that his teacher might believe / might not believe he wrote it.
- 5 Helen's not feeling well today I'm afraid she might pass / might not pass her exam.
- 6 Alan wasn't at the last meeting. He might know / might not know the new members.
- 7 'Where's Tom?' 'He might be / might not be in the kitchen.'
- 8 I've got toothache. I might have to / might not have to go to the dentist tomorrow.
- 9 I'll do my best, but I might have / might not have time to help you.
- 10 I hope we can take the car, but it might / might not start.



can, could and may: permission Can I use the phone?

We use can I ...? or can we ...? to ask if it is OK to do things: to ask permission.

Can I use the phone, please? Mum,	can I leave the table now? Can we wait here?
We often use Can I have? and Can v	ve have? to ask for things.
Can I have your address, please? Can	nn we have some water?
Make questions with Can I?	
DON'T SAY THIS!	SAY THIS (to your sister, a friend, a waiter, your secretary)
Lend me your pen.	(borrow) . Can i borrow your pen (, please)?
1 I want a glass of water.	(have)
2 I'm going to use your pencil.	(use)
3 I want some more coffee.	(have)
4 I'll put my coat here.	(put)
5 Give me some bread.	(have)
6 Show me those photos.	(look at)
Could 2 is more formal and polite t	nan can?, so we use it, for example, with strangers, older people,
teachers and bosses. Could I possibly	
Could we leave our luggage here until to	
1	
Make polite questions with Co.	uld I?
DON'T SAY THIS!	SAY THIS (to a stranger, a teacher, a boss, an older person)
Lend me your pen.	(borrow) Could I borrow your pen, please?
1 I need to use your calculator.	(use)
2 I'm leaving early today.	(leave)
3 I want to take your photo.	(take)
4 Lend me your newspaper.	(borrow)
5 I'm going to turn on the TV.	(turn on)
6 I want to open a window.	(open)
(You can't is like you mustn't - see page	n't, to say that it is or isn't OK to do things.
You can leave your books here if you wa	
You can't use the gym between 1.00 and	
1	.2.00.
Put the beginnings and ends to	ogether. Add <i>can</i> and verbs from the box.
borrow√ eat park play	turn on watch
borrow v eat park play	tulli on watch
0 If you don't have a torch,	A in this car park
1 The children 2 Tell the boys that	B they the cake in the kitchen C you can borrow mine
2 Tell the boys that 3 If you're cold,	D you the heating
4 If you're bored,	E in the garden
5 Only teachers	F you television
- 5, teethers	. ,

\boldsymbol{A}	What do the signs tell	VOUZ LISA YOU can't	here with words and ex	pressions from the hov
	will do the signs ten	you: ose rou can c	liele willi wolus allu ex	יאור באווון וווכן וווכ מואו נווכ באווי נווכ

cycle park 🗸 smoke take photos use mobile phones u can't park here.

We use Can I/we ...? to offer help.

Can I help you? Can we book the tickets for you? Can I carry those for you?

- Use Can I ...? to offer help in these situations.
 - Your friend has just come home from hospital. Offer to do some shopping for her. Can I do some shopping for you?
 - 1 You're going to make a cup of tea for yourself. Offer to make one for your sister.
 - 2 You work in a shop. A customer walks in. Offer to help her.
 - 3 Offer to drive your brother to the station.
 -
 - 4 Your friend has got a headache. Offer to get some aspirins for her.

In formal situations, and when we need to be very polite, we often use May I ...? to ask if something is OK, or You may (not) to say that something is/isn't OK.

May I have your name, please, sir? May I use the toilet please, Mrs Roberts?

You may ask questions after the Prince has finished speaking. You may open your books now.

This is a tourist visa: you may not take a paid job. You may not leave until the bell rings.

A teacher is telling her class what to do. Complete the text with may and verbs from the box.

do	leave	TIOU leave	lake	laik V	TIOL Laik	use	use			
Please w	ork in g	roups. You 🕨	may	talk		in your	group, b	ut please	talk quietly.	
You 1			to an	other gr	oup, and y	ou 2			the roo	m.
You 3			your	dictiona	ries. If you	want to	use oth	er books,	you	
4		th	nem froi	m the sh	elf; but onl	y one p	erson 5			the
group at	a time.	Each group &	·		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	the cor	nputer f	or twenty	minutes; I wi	ll tell
•	•	our turn. If you work quietly		before th	ne time is u	p, you	7		oth	er



can/could you?: requests Can you lend me a stamp?

We can ask people to do things (make requests) with can you ...? This is informal; we often use it when we are talking to friends; and also, for example, in shops and restaurants.

Joe, can you lend me a stamp? Can you bring me some more butter?

Could you ...? is more formal and polite; we often use it, for example, when we are talking to strangers, older people, teachers or bosses. Could you possibly ...? is very polite.

Excuse me, Mr Andrews, could you lend me a stamp?

I'm sorry to trouble you, but could you possibly watch my luggage while I get a coffee?

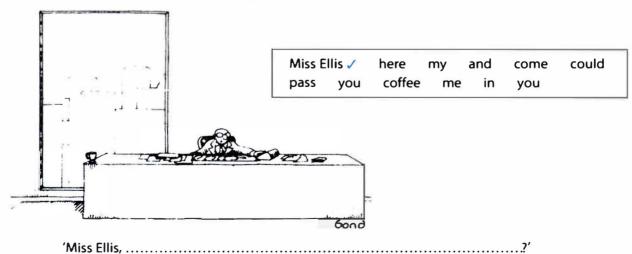
Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

	babysit	clean	drive	give 🗸	hold	lend	pass	put	speak	tell ✓	tell	wait
	Can you						5 Can y	ou		this b	ag?	
Could youtell me your name?							6 Could you possibly tonight?					
1	Could you	u		me the ri	ce?	,	7 Could	7 Could you possibly me a pen?				
2	Can you my suit?						B Can y	ou		these	paper	s away?
3	Can you me the time?						9 Could you more slowly?					vly?
4	Could you me to the station?						Coulc	you		her	e for a	few minu

Find better ways of asking people to do these things. (I = informal, P = polite, PP = very polite).

- ▶ Open the window. (1) Can you open the window?
- ▶ Lend me a pen. (P) Could you lend me a pen?
- ▶ Help me. (PP) Could you possibly help me?
- 1 Open the door. (I)
- 2 Give me an envelope. (P)
- 3 Pass me the sugar. (I)
- 4 Watch my children for a minute. (P)
- 5 Tell me the time. (P)
- 6 Change some dollars for me. (PP)
- 7 Wait outside. (I)
- 8 Translate this letter for me. (PP)
- 9 Come back tomorrow. (I)
- 10 Say it in English. (P)

Put the words of the caption in the right order.



shall in questions What shall we do?

we o	ften use shall I! or s	shall we? when we are a	asking or sug	gesting what to do.
Shall	I put the lights on?	Where shall we meet tome	orrow? S	i <mark>hall we</mark> go and see Bill?
M M	ake sentences with	shall 1 2		
			the ment i	in the fridae?
	put / the meat / in th	e fridge ?	the police?	n the fridge?
	•			
_	•			
3				
		•		
8		•		
_				
10	get/yourcoat:	•••••		•••••
2 M	ake sentences with	shall we?		
•	what time / leave ?	What time shall we l	leave?	
	watch / a film tonigh	t? Shall we watch a	film tonic	ght?
1	go out / this evening	?		
2	have / a game of care	ds ?		
3	how / travel to Londo	on ?		
4	what / do at the wee	kend ?		
5	where / go on holida	ıy?		
6	look for / a hotel? .			
7				
8		-		
10	when / have the nex	t meeting?		
We ca	an use Shall I? to of	fer politely to do things fo	or people.	
Shall	I take your coat?	hall I make you some coffe	e?	
_				
	ake sentences offe		- la = - 2	
		_		
1				
2	·			
3	•			
4				
5	•			
6	•	•		
7				
8		·		
10	bring somebody an a	aspirin		



would Would you like a drink? I'd like to be taller.

We often use would in the expression I'd like (='I would like'), to ask for things. It is more polite than I want.
I'd like a return ticket, please. I'd like a seat by the window.
We can offer things with would you like?
Would you like a drink? How many eggs would you like?
Make sentences with I'd like, please or Would you like? two tickets ! .!'d like two tickets, please. coffee ?
We can use would like to talk about things that people want to do.
I'd like to learn Chinese. What would you like to do on Sunday? Would you like to have lots of brothers and sisters? I wouldn't like to be an astronaut.
Which of these things would you like to be or do? Write sentences beginning I'd like to or I wouldn't like to be shorter I'd like to be shorter OR I wouldn't like to be shorter
1 be taller
2 be younger
3 be older
4 go to the moon
5 live in a different country
6 have a lot of dogs
7 write a book
8 (your sentence)
We often use Would you like to? in invitations.
Would you like to come to Scotland with us?
Don't confuse would like (= 'want') and like (= 'enjoy'). Compare:
l'd like some coffee, please. (NOT l-like some coffee, please.) I like coffee but I don't like tea.
Circle the correct forms.
1 Do / Would you like to come to dinner? 2 'Would you like coffee?' 'Yes, I do.' / 'Yes, please.' 3 like / would like mountains. 6 Do you like dancing? Yes, I do. / Yes, please. 7 like / would like to get up late tomorrow. 8 don't / wouldn't like old music.

9 I don't / wouldn't like to be an animal.

10 'An apple?' 'Yes, I like / 'd like one.'

4 Do / Would you like to go out tonight?

5 I like / 'd like to go home now.

used to I used to play the piano.

		I used to play	you used to play	he/she/it used to p	lay etc
?		did I use to play?	did you use to play?	did he/she/it use to	play? etc
		I did not use to play	you did not use to play	he/she/it did not us	se to play etc
		I used to play th	he piano. I don't play now		WE USED TO BE A TREE.
3	PA	ST & & & &	&	₩ NOW	
VAZ		0 0 0	or finished habits and si	701	vere true, but are not now.
			: we make questions and	and the second s	vere true, but are not now.
			stopped. Pat used to		
			ore you came here?		ut now I do.
D			t people hundreds of		lost) people used to
	OI		use to or A lot of pe		
			eople used to be farm		
			idn't use to have cars		
	1	travel on foot or on ho	orses		
	2	go to school			•••••
	3	learn to read			
	4	cook on wood fires			
	5	live very long			
	6	work very long hours			
	6	work very long hours			
То					
	tal		and situations, we use the		
1p	tal lay	lk about present habits or a lot of tennis. (NOT+us	and situations, we use tl e to play a lot of tennis:)	ne simple present, NO	
	tal lay	lk about present habits valot of tennis. (NOT+us	and situations, we use the top of	ne simple present, NO	T use to .
1p	tal lay	k about present habits of a lot of tennis. (NOT+use) ake sentences about John / rugby / tennis	and situations, we use the toplay a lot of tennis:) t past and present hale John used to play r	ne simple present, NO Dits and situations. ugby. Now he play	T use to . S tennís
1p	tal lay M	Ik about present habits y a lot of tennis. (NOT+us) ake sentences about John / rugby / tennis Emily / study German	and situations, we use the toplay a lot of tennis.) t past and present hale John used to play referench	ne simple present, NO pits and situations. ugby. Now he play	T use to . s tennis
1p	tal lay M	Ik about present habits of a lot of tennis. (NOT+us) ake sentences about John / rugby / tennis Emily / study German Paul / live London / Gla	and situations, we use the to play a lot of tennis:) t past and present hale John used to play referench as soon	ne simple present, NO pits and situations. ugby. Now he play	T use to . s tennís.
1p	tal lay M	k about present habits a lot of tennis. (NOT+us) ake sentences about John / rugby / tennis Emily / study German Paul / live London / Gla Grace / read a lot / TV	and situations, we use the toplay a lot of tennis:) t past and present hale John used to play row / French asgow	ne simple present, NO pits and situations. ugby. Now he play	T use to . s tennís
1p	tal lay M	k about present habits a lot of tennis. (NOT+us) ake sentences about John / rugby / tennis Emily / study German Paul / live London / Gla Grace / read a lot / TV	and situations, we use the toplay a lot of tennis:) t past and present hale John used to play row / French asgow	ne simple present, NO pits and situations. ugby. Now he play	T use to . s tennís.
1p	tal lay M	Ik about present habits of a lot of tennis. (NOT+us) lake sentences about John / rugby / tennis Emily / study German Paul / live London / Gla Grace / read a lot / TV Dan / driver / hairdress	and situations, we use the to play a lot of tennis:) t past and present hal John used to play a / French asgow	ne simple present, NO pits and situations. ugby. Now he play	T use to . s tennís
1p	tal lay M 1 2 3 4 5	k about present habits a lot of tennis. (NOT + use ake sentences about John / rugby / tennis Emily / study German Paul / live London / Gla Grace / read a lot / TV Dan / driver / hairdress Alice / coffee / tea	and situations, we use the to play a lot of tennis:) t past and present hale from used to play a lot of tennis: / French cases	ne simple present, NO pits and situations. ugby. Now he play	T use to . s tennis
1p	M 1 2 3 4 5 6	Ik about present habits of a lot of tennis. (NOT+us) lake sentences about John / rugby / tennis Emily / study German Paul / live London / Gla Grace / read a lot / TV Dan / driver / hairdress Alice / coffee / tea Peter / lots of girlfrience	and situations, we use the to play a lot of tennis.) t past and present hal John used to play a / French asgow ser ds / married	ne simple present, NO Dits and situations. ugby. Now he play	T use to . s tennís
1p	tal lay M 1 2 3 4 5 6	k about present habits a lot of tennis. (NOT+us) ake sentences about John / rugby / tennis Emily / study German Paul / live London / Gla Grace / read a lot / TV Dan / driver / hairdress Alice / coffee / tea Peter / lots of girlfriend ake questions about	and situations, we use the to play a lot of tennis.) t past and present hal John used to play a lot of tennis. / French asgow	ne simple present, NO Dits and situations. Mgby. Now he play	T use to.
1p	tal lay M 1 2 3 4 5 6	k about present habits a lot of tennis. (NOT + use ake sentences about John / rugby / tennis Emily / study German Paul / live London / Gla Grace / read a lot / TV Dan / driver / hairdress Alice / coffee / tea Peter / lots of girlfrience ake questions about where / go to school	and situations, we use the to play a lot of tennis:) It past and present hal John used to play referench asgow Ser It a very old person's purple where did you use	ne simple present, NO pits and situations. ugby. Now he play ast. to go to school?	T use to . s tennis
1p	M 1 2 3 4 5 6 M	lk about present habits of a lot of tennis. (NOT + use lake sentences about John / rugby / tennis Emily / study German Paul / live London / Gla Grace / read a lot / TV Dan / driver / hairdress Alice / coffee / tea Peter / lots of girlfrience lake questions about where / go to school have dark hair Did	and situations, we use the to play a lot of tennis.) t past and present hal John used to play a lot of tennis. / French asgow ser ds / married t a very old person's p Where did you use	ne simple present, NO Dits and situations. ugby. Now he play ast. to go to school?	T use to . s tennis
1p	1 2 3 4 5 6 M	lk about present habits y a lot of tennis. (NOT + use lake sentences about John / rugby / tennis Emily / study German Paul / live London / Gla Grace / read a lot / TV Dan / driver / hairdress Alice / coffee / tea Peter / lots of girlfrience lake questions about where / go to school have dark hair Did play football	and situations, we use the to play a lot of tennis:) t past and present hal John used to play referench asgow ser ds / married t a very old person's per where did you use	ne simple present, NO pits and situations. ugby. Now he play ast. to go to school?	T use to . s tennis
1p	tal lay M 1 2 3 4 5 6 M 1 2 3	lk about present habits / a lot of tennis. (NOT+us) ake sentences about John / rugby / tennis Emily / study German Paul / live London / Gla Grace / read a lot / TV Dan / driver / hairdress Alice / coffee / tea Peter / lots of girlfrience ake questions about where / go to school have dark hair Did play football where / work	and situations, we use the to play a lot of tennis.) t past and present hal John used to play a lot of tennis. / French asgow ser ds / married t a very old person's p where did you use	ne simple present, NO Dits and situations. ugby. Now he play ast. to go to school?	T use to. S tennis
1p	tal lay M 1 2 3 4 5 6 M 1 2 3 4	lk about present habits y a lot of tennis. (NOT + use lake sentences about John / rugby / tennis Emily / study German Paul / live London / Gla Grace / read a lot / TV Dan / driver / hairdress Alice / coffee / tea Peter / lots of girlfrience lake questions about where / go to school have dark hair Did play football where / work enjoy your work	and situations, we use the to play a lot of tennis:) t past and present hal John used to play a lot of tennis as your married as a very old person's purple where did you use	ne simple present, NO pits and situations. ugby. Now he play ast. to go to school?	T use to. S tennis.
1p	tal lay M 1 2 3 4 5 6 M 1 2 3 4	lk about present habits y a lot of tennis. (NOT + use lake sentences about John / rugby / tennis Emily / study German Paul / live London / Gla Grace / read a lot / TV Dan / driver / hairdress Alice / coffee / tea Peter / lots of girlfrience lake questions about where / go to school have dark hair Did play football where / work enjoy your work	and situations, we use the to play a lot of tennis:) t past and present hal John used to play a lot of tennis as your married as a very old person's purple where did you use	ne simple present, NO pits and situations. ugby. Now he play ast. to go to school?	T use to. S tennis
1p	1 2 3 4 5 6 M 1 2 3 4 5	lk about present habits y a lot of tennis. (NOT + use lake sentences about John / rugby / tennis Emily / study German Paul / live London / Gla Grace / read a lot / TV Dan / driver / hairdress Alice / coffee / tea Peter / lots of girlfrience lake questions about where / go to school have dark hair Did play football where / work enjoy your work	and situations, we use the to play a lot of tennis:) It past and present hal John used to play referench asgow Ser It a very old person's powhere did you use	ne simple present, NO pits and situations. ugby. Now he play ast. to go to school?	T use to. S tennis.

modal verbs: more practice

1 Fe	orms of modal verbs. Make questions o		
•			speak Spanish?
•	Emma may phone you. (do it today 🗐)	she ma	y not do it today.
1			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
2	Lucy must go to the police. (go immediately	?)	
3	Tom may go to Washington, (but go this	week)
4			y evening 🖃)
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			he children 🖃
10			
2 P	ast and future. Change the times of the	se sent	ences.
•	Helen can ski. Helen could ski		. when she was three years old.
1	I can speak French now.		on holiday next year.
2	Everybody must fill in a big form		last year.
3	Everybody must fill in a big form		next year.
4	Can you play the guitar?		at the next school concert?
5	Must you wear a tie to work?		in your last job?
6	John can't read very well		when he was younger.
7	We can't buy a car		before next year.
8	I must see the doctor.		last week.
9	Everybody can say what they think		in the year 3000.
10	You can't sing now. You		last year.
	And you	next	year, either.
B A	dvice with should. Put the beginnings a	ind end	s together.
	1. Aunt Manufe thiretu		You should give her a sauger of milk
	1 Aunt Mary's thirsty.	I A	You should give her a saucer of milk
	2 I'm getting fat.	B	You should buy some new clothes
	3 My girlfriend's angry with me.	C	You should buy a new one
	4 The cat needs a drink.	D	You should make her a cup of tea
	5 My hair's falling out.	E	You shouldn't buy so many electronic gadgets
	6 I'm tired.	F	You should take more exercise
	7 I don't like Anna's new hairstyle.	G	You should practise your service
	8 I never have any money.	I H	You should study grammar
	9 I don't play tennis very well.	1	You shouldn't go to bed so late
	10 The car won't go.) J	You shouldn't tell her
	11 My clothes are all out of fashion.	K	You should change your shampoo
	12 My English teacher says I make too	I L	You should tell her you love her

many mistakes.

P	Permission and requests. Make these sentences more polite. (Different ar	
•	Give me some water. Can/Could/May I have some water?	
1	I want a cup of coffee.	
2		
3	Close the door, John.	
4		
5		
6	Will you clean my bicycle, please?	
7		
8		
9		
10	Wash all my clothes before tomorrow.	•••••
G G	RAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: eight useful things. Complete the sentences	with <i>vou can</i> and
	xpressions from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.	
C .	Apressions from the box. Ose a dictionary if necessary.	
	cook food ✓ keep food cool keep food very cold make copies	
	make phone calls take photos wash clothes wash plates, cups etc	
L	make phone cans take photos wash clothes wash plates, cups etc	a cooker a scanner
•	With a cooker . Hou can cook food	
1	With a scanner	
2	With a freezer	
3	With a washing machine	a freezer a washing
4		machine
5		
_	With a dishwasher	COOK OA
6		
7	With a camera	a fridge a mobile
		phone
		a dishwasher a camera
🕝 G	RAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: jobs. Complete the sentences with might be	
a	nd words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.	
-		
	a businessman a chef a farmer ✓ a gardener a lawyer	
	an opera singer a pilot a politician a vet 🗸	
_		
	Little Henry likes animals. When he grows up he might be a farmer or a ve	t,
1	Little Angela loves aeroplanes. She might	
2	Little George is interested in money.	
3	Little Amrita likes singing and she has a very loud voice.	
4	Little Peter likes talking.	
5	Little Alice likes arguing.	
6	Little John likes cooking.	
7		
	-,	
🕖 Ir	nternet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find three short sin	nple sentences with
	will be able to" and three with "will have to".	
1		
2		
_		
3		

0	Correct (/) or not (x)?					
	John cans swim	5 It may rain tomorrow				
	▶ I must go now	6 Can you singing?				
	1 I don't must see Andrew today	7 Must you go?				
	2 Anna can't to speak English	8 I may not be here this evening				
	3 Last year I must sell my car	9 Do you use to smoke?				
	4 Would you like to have some coffee?	10 Alex musts work harder				
2	Circle the correct verbs.					
	Can/ Might / Mustn't help you?					
	1 If you travel to Morania you can / should / mus	st have a visa.				
	2 You shouldn't / don't have to / couldn't laugh at old people.					
	3 Passengers must / must not / should not smoke in the toilets.					
	4 I think you should / must / may eat less and ta	ke more exercise.				
	5 You mustn't / may not / don't have to tell me if	you don't want to.				
	6 You may / have to drive on the left in Britain.					

Choose the correct verbs to rewrite the sentences with the same meaning.

9 She isn't answering the phone. She shouldn't /can't be at home just now.

7 We don't have to / mustn't pay now, but we can if we want to.

8 I may not / could not be here this evening.

10 People should / have to smile more often.

	I know how to swim. (can/may)
1	It is necessary for you to phone Martin. (must/might)
2	It is possible that Ann will be here this evening. (can/might)
3	It is not necessary for you to wait. (mustn't/don't have to)
4	It's not good for people to watch TV all the time. (mustn't/shouldn't)
5	Do you want me to open a window? (shall/will)
6	It is important for people to cooperate. (may/should)
7	John smoked when he was younger. (used to/would)
8	It is possible that it will rain. (can/may)
9	Alan knows how to speak Spanish. (can/could)
0	I would like you to help me. (Can/Should)

4 Grammar in a text. Choose the best modal verbs to complete the quotations.

- 1 Those who can / can't / shall, do. Those who can / can't / shall, teach. (Traditional)
- 2 We may / can / must love one another or die. (W H Auden)
- 3 It is not enough to succeed. Others can / may / must fail. (Gore Vidal)
- 4 You shall / could / may fool all the people some of the time; you must / can / shall even fool some of the people all the time; but you can't / couldn't / wouldn't fool all of the people all the time. (Abraham Lincoln)

SECTION 7 passives

grammar summary

When A does something to B, there are often two ways to talk about it: 'active' and 'passive'.

We use active verbs if we want A to be the subject.

Mrs Harris cooks our meals. Andrew broke the window.

• We use passive verbs if we want B to be the subject.

Our meals are cooked by Mrs Harris.

The window was broken by Andrew.

We make passive verbs with be (am, are, is etc) + past participle (cooked, broken etc). Passive verbs have the same tenses (simple present, present progressive, present perfect etc) as active verbs. For a list of active and passive tenses, see page 300.

'I'm afraid. Mr Klesmerod, that your blood type has been discontinued.



Do you know? (Answers at the bottom of the page)

1 Which of these is used to boil water?

A a fridge

B a sink

C a kettle

D a hot water bottle

Which US President was killed in a theatre?

A Lincoln

B Kennedy

C Eisenhower

D Nixon

3 Which game is played with a racket?

A golf

B cricket

C football

D tennis

4 If you are being served, where are you?

A in a shop

B in a church

C in the sea

D in hospital

5 The Olympic Games have never been held in:

A Melbourne B Tokyo

C London

D Chicago

6 Which of these metals was discovered by Marie Curie?

A uranium

B radium

C gold

D platinum

7 Which of these was not written by Shakespeare?

A Hamlet

B The Sound of Music C Othello D Julius Caesar

8 Which country was governed by the Pharaohs?

A Sweden

B China

C Egypt

D Japan



passives: introduction English is spoken in Australia.

When A does something to B, there are often two ways to talk about it: 'active' and 'passive'.

We use active verbs if we want A to be the subject.

We use passive verbs if we want B to be the subject.

We make passive verbs with be (am, are, is etc) + past participle (cooked, seen etc).

ACTIVE			PASSIVE				
A		В		В		(by A)	
Mrs Harris	cooks	our meals.		Our meals	are cooked	by Mrs Harris.	
Andrew	broke	the window.		The window	was broken	by Andrew.	
Somebody	saw	her	in Belfast.	She	was seen		in Belfast.
The government	will close	the hospital	next year.	The hospital	will be closed		next year.

Passive verbs have the **same tenses** (simple present, present progressive, present perfect etc) as active verbs. For a list of active and passive tenses, see page 300.

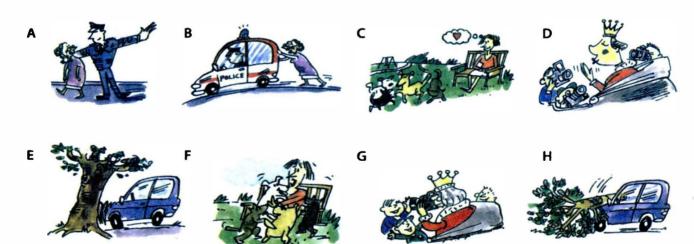
Note the use of by in passives, to say who or what does the action.

Our meals are cooked by Mrs Harris. (NOT ... from Mrs Harris.)

Which picture goes with which sentence?

- ► The policeman helped the old lady.
- 1 The policeman was helped by the old lady.
- 2 The car hit a tree.
- 3 The car was hit by a tree.

- 4 Annie loves all dogs.
- 5 Annie is loved by all dogs.
- 6 The Queen photographed the tourists.
- 7 The Queen was photographed by the tourists.



2 Circle the correct answer.

- 1 English speaks / spoken / is spoken in Australia.
- 2 | I studied / was studied French for three years at school.
- 3 We spent / was spent too much money on holiday.
- 4 This window broke / was broken by your little boy.
- 5 Her clothes made / are made in Paris.
- 6 This book written / was written by my brother.
- 7 The new university will open / will opened / will be opened by the Prime Minister.
- 8 Ann was driving / was driven much too fast, and she stopped / was stopped by the police.
- 9 This house built / was built in 1800.
- 10 Everybody had / was had / was have a good time at the party.

simple present passive We are woken by the birds.

+ ?	I am woken you are woken am I woken? are you woken? I am not woken you are not woken	he/she/it is woken etc is he/she/it woken? etc he/she/it is not woken etc					
	For contractions (I'm, isn't etc), see pages 2, 301.						

We use the simple present passive like the simple present active, for things that are always true, and things that happen all the time, repeatedly, often, sometimes, never etc (see page 17).

I am paid every two weeks. Is Jeremy liked by the other children? Stamps aren't sold here.

For spelling rules for adding -ed to verbs, see page 46; for irregular past participles, see page 299.

Complete the sentences with am/are/is.

- A lot of paper made from wood.
- 1 What this called in English?
- 2 Jane paid on the first of every month.
- 3 1 often sent to the Singapore office.
- 4 any classes taught on Wednesdays?
- 5 More chocolate eaten in the US than in any other country.
- 6 Not very much known about Shakespeare's childhood.
- 7 We woken by the birds every morning.
- 8 you seen by the same doctor every week?

Put simple present passive verbs into these sentences.

- A lot of olive oil used in Greek cooking. (use)
- 1 Arabic from right to left. (write)
- 2 Those programmes by millions of people every week. (watch)
- 3 Stamps in most newsagents in Britain. (sell)
- 4 The police say that nothing about the child's family. (know)
- 5 In English, 'ough' in a lot of different ways. (pronounce)
- 6 Spanish in Peru. (speak)
- 7 Cricket by two teams of eleven players. (play)
- 8 Our windows once a month. (clean)

Make simple present negatives and questions.

► 'Those computers are not made in America.' (not make)

'Where are they made? 'In China'

1 'My name with a Y.' (not spell)

'How' 'L, E, S, L, I, E'

2 'That kind of bird around here, usually.' (not see)

'Where' 'In warmer countries.'

3 'Where like were.' (not pronounce)

'How' 'Like wear'.

4 'Diamonds in Scotland.' (not find)

'Where' 'In South Africa, for example.'

5 'My sister very well.' (pay)

'How much' 'I don't remember.'

future passive Tomorrow your bicycle will be stolen.

+ ? -	I will be woken will I be woken? I will not be woken	you will be woken will you be woken? you will not be woken	he/she/it will be woken etc will he/she/it be woken? etc he/she/it will not be woken etc				
	For contractions (I'll, won't etc), see page 301.						

We use the future passive like the future active (see page 39), to say things that we think, guess or know about the future, or to ask questions about the future.

One day all the work will be done by machines. Where will the match be played?

Make future passive sentences with the verbs from the box.

	clean close 🗸 fi	nish open	send	speak	
>	The motorway	ll be closed			for three days.
1	The museum				by the Queen.
2	One day English				everywhere.
3	This job				in a few days.
4	Your room				while you're out.
5	Your tickets				to you next week.
	The football match	won't be pl	ayed		on Saturday.' (<i>play</i>)
2000	'When will it be				
1					to the hotel by bus.' (take)
	'How				•
2					in the Central Square.' (build)
					'Behind the Police Station.'
3					at the conference.' (s <i>peak</i>)
	'What language				

Make five future passive sentences from the table.

Tomorrow your bicycle will be stolen by your old friend Pete	r.
	•••



simple past passive I was stopped by a policeman.

			he/she/it was woken etc was he/she/it woken? etc he/she/it was not woken etc	ing the first green and the little green and the li	
	For contractions (wasn't etc), see page 301.				

We use the simple past passive like the simple past active, for complete finished actions and events

door.

(3	ee t	Dage 47).		
T	his t	able was made by my grandfather.	Was the letter signed?	We weren't met at the
1		omplete the sentences with was		
	1	The fire seen in Ren	•	
		Most of the matches	•	
		These keysfound in		
		1stopped by a police		_
	6	Yesterday a mancau	ught trying to burn down t	he Town Hall.
2	Pı	ut simple past passive verbs into	o these sentences.	
	1	Our passports	by a tall woman	in a uniform. (take)
	2	These books	in the classroom of	on Monday. (<i>leave</i>)
	3	I don't think this room	yesterda	ay. (clean)
	4	We	at the airport by a driver fro	om the university. (<i>meet</i>
	5	Nobody	what was happening.	(tell)
	6	He a	way to school when he wa	s twelve. (send)
3		ake simple past passive negativ		
		'We weren't paid	when we fin	ished the work.' (<i>not pa</i> y
		'When were you paid?	' 'Two mo	nths later.'
	1	'My father		

	'We weren't paid	when we finished the work.' (not pay)
	'When were you paid?	' 'Two months later.'
1		in England.' (not educate)
	'Where	
2	'The letters	on Tuesday.' (not post)
	'When	' 'On Thursday.'
3	'This	in butter:' (not cook)
	'How	' 'In margarine.'
4	'My suit	in England.' (not make)
	'Where	' 'In Hong Kong.'
5	'The restaurant bill	in cash.' (not pay)
	How	' 'Mith a crodit card'

We use a past passive structure - to be born - to give somebody's date or place of birth. I was born in 1964. (NOT I born in 1964. NOT I am born in 1964.) My sisters were born in Egypt.

4	Write a sentence about your date and place of birth.
	T

present progressive passive It's being cleaned.

+	I am being watched	you are being watched	he/she/it is being watched etc
?	am I being watched?	are you being watched?	is he/she/it being watched? etc
-	I am not being watched	you are not being watched	he/she/it is not being watched etc
	For contractions (I'm, isn't etc), see pages 2 and 301.		A Property Application are reserved.

We use the present progressive passive like the present progressive active, for things that are happening now (see page 24), or for things that are planned for the future (see page 38).

'Where's the carpet?' 'It's being cleaned.' When are you being seen by the doctor?

Questions and answers. Use the words in the box to complete answers to the questions. Use the present progressive passive.

the grass / cut 🗸 he / watch I / send it / clean it / paint it / rebuild my hair / cut she / interview the engine / repair my watch / repair we / follow

	WILL A	
	'Can we play on the football pitch?' 'No,the grass is being cut	′
1	'Can't you wear your blue suit tonight?' 'No,	
2	'Did Alice get that new job?' 'Not yet –	today.
3	'What time is it?' 'Sorry, I don't know:	,
4	'Why the big smile?' to Hawaii for a w	eek.'
5	I usually read a magazine while	
6	I think by a police car.	
7	'Where's your car?' 'At the garage'	
8	The school is closed this year.	
9		lice.
10	I can't use my office this week because	

Imagine you are in a busy hotel at midday. Make sentences to say what is being done.

beds / make) Beds are being made 1 (bills / pay) 2 (coffee / make) 3 (drinks / serve) 4 (food / prepare) 5 (baggage / bring down) 6 (money / change) 7 (new guests / welcome) 8 (reservations / take) 9 (phones / answer) 10 (rooms / clean)



present perfect passive The house has been sold.

I have been seen he/she/it has been seen etc vou have been seen ? have I been seen? have you been seen? has he/she/it been seen? etc I have not been seen you have not been seen he/she/it has not been seen etc For contractions (I've etc), see page 301.

We use the present perfect passive like the present perfect active (see pages 60-65), to talk about past actions and events which are important now - for example, when we give people news.

The house on the corner has been sold. We haven't been invited to Anna's party.

News: put the verbs into the present perfect passive.

- A new university has been opened in Kew today by the Prince of Wales. (open)
- 1 Lord Retlaw for drunk driving. (arrest)
- 2 An old painting from a school in Wales for \$250,000 by an American museum. (buy)
- 3 An 18-year-old soldier in an accident in Devon. (kill)
- 4 The two lost children alive and well in a London park. (find)
- 5 An unknown actor to star in the new film of 'Macbeth' (choose)
- 7 'What's the problem?' 'My bicycle'(steal)
- 8 1 to write something for the local newspaper. (ask)
- 9 All the papers for next week's meeting(lose)
- 10 Everybody in the class to Stacey's party. (invite)

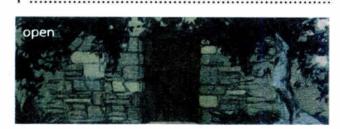
'It's never been done.' Make a sentence for each picture.















passives: more practice

	INDE NAV	itten.	by Many Ch			
'Frankenst						
The repair	s will be fi	nished	before next T	uesday. (finish	7)	
Butter			from milk. (<i>make</i>)			
2 Last night	two men		in a f	ght in a nigh	tclub. (<i>kill</i>)	
One day a	ll our work		by r	nachines. (do)	
1 English			. as a second langu	age by millio	ons of people	e. (speak)
_			in Japan. (-		
5 All the foo	tballers		by a do	ctor before t	he match la	st Sunday. (examine
			every day. (clea			•
			the test results as		ble. (inform)	
			in July nex	•		
			in several cou		a. (find)	
baggage new guest	bills coff	ons rooms	food money telephones			
						rds in the box.
GRAMMAR A Jse a dictio more sente	ND VOCABUL mary if nece nces about v	ARY: travelli ssary. Then what is bein sengers ba	ng by air. Make s imagine you are g done. ggage ✓ boardi	sure you kno in an airpo ng passes	ow the wo	rds in the box.
GRAMMAR A Jse a dictio more sente SUBJECTS:	ND VOCABUL nary if nece nces about v arriving pass departures	ARY: travelli ssary. Then what is bein sengers ba passports	ng by air. Make : imagine you are g done. ggage / boardin reservations	in an airpo ng passes tickets	ow the wo	rds in the box. te six or
GRAMMAR A Use a dictio more sente	ND VOCABUL mary if nece nces about v	ARY: travelli ssary. Then what is bein sengers ba passports	ng by air. Make s imagine you are g done. ggage ✓ boardi	in an airpo ng passes tickets	ow the wo	rds in the box. te six or
GRAMMAR Al Jse a diction more senter SUBJECTS: VERBS:	arriving pass departures announce	ARY: travelli ssary. Then what is bein lengers ba passports check ma	ng by air. Make : imagine you are g done. ggage / boardin reservations	in an airpo ng passes tickets	ow the wo	rds in the box. te six or
GRAMMAR Al Jse a diction more senter SUBJECTS: VERBS:	nary if nece nces about v arriving pass departures announce	ARY: travelli ssary. Then what is bein lengers ba passports check ma	ng by air. Make : imagine you are g done. ggage / boardin reservations	in an airpo ng passes tickets	ow the wo	rds in the box. te six or

	Tenses. Put in present perfect passive or present progressive passive verbs.					
	'Is the Army Museum still in Green Street?' 'No, ithas been closed					
1	Don't look now, but I think we(follow)					
2	Hello, police? I'd like to report a theft. My handbag(steal)					
3	'Why did you take the bus?' 'My car' (repair)					
4	I think someone's been in my room – some books (move)					
5	'There's nobody here.' 'No, all the students home.' (send)					
6	'When'					
	'Tomorrow morning.' (interview)					
7	A group of suspected terrorists by the police. (arrest)					
8	Another group of suspected terrorists, but they					
	(not arrest, watch)					
9	The hospital will be closed for two years, while it(rebuild)					
10	James to join the local football team. (ask)					

Grammar in a text. Put in simple present active or passive verbs.





Gorillas (> find) Tourna	in several countries in Central Africa. They are about
1.6 metres tall, and they (1 cover)	with black or brown hair. Gorillas' lives
(2 spend)	in groups. Each group has five to ten gorillas in it. The gorillas
in a group (3 <i>walk</i>)	about 0.5 to 1.0 km per day, looking for food. They
(4 not eat)	all the leaves in one part of the forest before moving on;
some leaves (s leave)	on the trees and plants.
At night gorillas (6 sleep)	in nests; these nests
(7 make)	of branches and leaves. The number of gorillas living in Africa
today (8 not know)	but it is certain that this number is getting smaller.
Why? Because in the countries wher	e the gorillas (9 <i>live</i>) more and more
trees (10 cut down)	every year.

6 Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find short simple sentences with the following verbs. Write the sentences.

"will be spent" "are being built" "have been seen" "were given" "were sent"	"are made"
"are being built" "have been seen" "were given" "were sent"	"is spoken"
"are being built" "have been seen" "were given" "were sent"	"will be spent"
"were given" "were sent"	"are being built"
"were sent"	"have been seen"
"were sent"	"were given"
"was arrested"	"were sent"
	"was arrested"

passives: revision test

Circle the correct passive or active verb form.

- This book written (was written by my uncle.
- 1 Derek posted / was posted his letter to the university today.
- 2 We did a lot of work for the school, but we didn't pay / weren't paid.
- 3 My friend Douglas speaks / is spoken seven languages.
- 4 The letter H doesn't pronounce / isn't pronounced in French.
- 5 A new hospital will build / will be built in the town centre.
- 6 You can't come in here the room is cleaning / is being cleaned.
- 7 We have invited / have been invited to John's party tonight.
- 8 This sauce makes / is made with oil and vinegar.
- 9 French speaks / is spoken in Belgium.
- 10 John broke / is broken his leg last week.

Correct (✓) or not (✗)?

- ► English is spoken in New Zealand.
- 1 I was studied German for three years.
- 2 Emma invited to a party by her boss.
- 3 How is written your name?

▶ I am born in Manchester.

- 4 'Where's your coat?' 'It's being cleaned.'
- 5 Our car has been stolen.
- 6 When is that window broken?
- 7 This book was written from my father.
 - 8 I was taken to the opera by a friend of mine.
- 9 The new road will finished in July.
- 10 Our house was built in 1850.

Put in the correct passive tenses.

- ► 'The Birds' ... was directed by Alfred Hitchcock. (direct)
- You will be paid next week. (pay)
- 1 'Is the library still downstairs?' 'No, it' (move)
- 2 A new hospital here next April. (open)
- 3 Somebody has been in my handbag. Some money (take)
- 4 'Where's your black sweater?' 'It' (wash)
- 5 You your examination results before the weekend. (tell)
- 6 'My car' 'Well, tell the police' (steal)
- 7 This phone in China. (*make*)
- 8 Spanish in most of South America. (speak)
- 9 The windows nearly every week. (clean)
- 10 | to help you. What can I do? (ask)
- 12 Do you think all translation by computers one day? (do)
- 13 'When?' 'Tomorrow.' (play)
- 14 Three computers from the school since Christmas. (steal)
- 15 The factory closed suddenly last week, and all the workers away. (send)
- 16 This kind of cheese from goats' milk. (make)
- 17 Alice by a car the other day, and her leg (hit; break)
- 18 Your letter now it will be ready in five minutes. (translate)
- 19 It says in today's paper that gold in Scotland. (find)
- 20 'Have you done those letters?' 'Not yet. They by five o'clock.' (finish)

SECTION 8 questions and negatives

grammar summary

To make questions, we normally put an auxiliary verb (be, have, can etc) before the subject.

John has gone. —> Has John gone? She's leaving. —> When is she leaving?

To make negatives, we put not or n't after an auxiliary verb.

John is working. \rightarrow John is not working. I could swim \rightarrow I couldn't swim.

If there is no other auxiliary verb, we use do.

I live in Manchester. → Where do you live? He said 'Hello'. → What did he say? She likes cold weather. → She doesn't like cold weather.

We do not use do when a question word is the subject.

What happened? (NOT What did happen?)

Who are you?

Who were you talking to when I came in just now and you put down the phone? Who were you thinking about when I asked you and asked you again and you answered 'Why, no one'? Who were you with last night when you came home late and said you'd been walking alone?

What was I hoping for that first day when I knocked on your door? What was I thinking about when I first asked you out? Who was I looking at when I first sat looking at you?

Who are you?

I didn't do the housework

I didn't feed the goldfish, I didn't make the bed, I didn't study algebra. I watched a film instead.

I didn't practise on the flute, I didn't write to Jean, I didn't visit Aunty May. I read a magazine.

I didn't do the housework. I started. Then I quit, and wrote a poem just to say I love you. This is it.



yes/no questions Is the taxi here? Do I need a visa?

AM I? HAVE YOU? CAN SHE? DO YOU? DOES HE?

All yes/no questions begin with a verb.							
			verb before the subj		lennon secundarium schiol s		
	(Auxiliary verbs are be (am, are etc), have/has/had, will, would, can, could, shall, should, may, might and must.) STATEMENT : The taxi is coming. Ann has arrived. The train will be late. You can pay.						
				The train will be late.	You can pay.		
QUEST	ION ?: Is	the taxi coming?	Has Ann arrived?	Will the train be late?	Can you pay?		
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	Put the words in the right order to make questions. you ready are Are you ready? telephoned she has Mary Has she telephoned Mary? swim your brother can Can your brother swim? tired are you he at is home go must now you Spanish they speak can tomorrow Derek be here will Aunt Ruth will arrive by train forgotten her keys she has your sister is playing tennis						
10	your nome	e secretary gone has					
If there	e is no aux	iliary verb: put do/d	does/did before the s	ubject and use the infinit	ive (without to).		
STATE	MENT #:	l need a visa.					
QUEST	ION ?	Do I need a visa? (N	OT Need+a visa?, NOT	r Do I to need a visa?)			
STATE	MENT +:	John wants to go h	ome.				
QUEST	ION ?:	Does John want to	go home? (NOT Does :	John wants to go home?)			
	MENT #:	She knew Naomi.					
QUEST	ION ?:	Did she know Naor	ni? (NOT Did she knew	· Naomi?)			
Ma	ke auest	ions with <i>you</i> .					
You	You want to know if somebody: ▶ understands Do you under stand? ▶ called you Did you call me?						
	2 likes classical music						
	4 went skiing last winter						
		-					
7	watches a	lot of TV					
		-					
10	nlavs tenni	ic					

3	Make	questions	with	she
(2)	INIANE	questions	AAICH	3/16.

You want to know if somebody:

	plays football Does she play tootball?
1	speaks Arabic
2	knows Mr Peters
	works at home
4	lived in Birmingham
5	went home last week
6	plays the piano
7	rides horses
8	likes working with children
9	travelled a lot last year
^	Helica Andreada

We don't put do with other auxiliary verbs.

Can you swim? (NOT Do you can swim?)

Choose the correct question.

- ▶ (A) Will you be ready soon? B Do you will be ready soon?
- ▶ A Live you in London? B Do you live in London? C Are you live in London?
- 1 A Do you are tired? B Do you tired? C Are you tired?
- 2 A Do you must go now? B Must you go now?
- 3 A Do you speak Japanese? B Speak you Japanese? C Are you speak Japanese?
- 4 A Do you have been to New York? B Have you been to New York?
- 5 A Were you go to work by car? B Did you go to work by car? C Went you to work by car?
- 6 A Can she sing? B Does she can sing?
- 7 A is Judy looking for a job? B Does Judy looking for a job? C is Judy look for a job?
- 8 A You said something? B Did you said something? C Did you say something?

Only put one verb before the subject.

Is her father working today? (NOT Is working her father today?)

Has your brother got children? (NOT Has got your brother children?)

Did those people telephone again? (NOT Did telephone those people again?)

Put the verbs in the right place to make questions.

	Are / your parents / to dinner (coming) Are your parents coming to alimer?
	Did / the police / the drug dealers (catch)
	Have / Lucy and Felicia / from their holiday (come back)
	When do / English children / school (start)
4	What is / that man / in the garden (doing)
5	Are / the buses / next week (running)
	Has / the film (started)
	Has / John's letter / yet (arrived)
	ls /Alicia / today (working)
	-
9	Does / Paul / your girlfriend (know)
0	Why is / Kate (cry)

- → For more practice with present questions, past questions etc, see Sections 2-5.
- → For question tags like It's late, isn't it?, see pages 288–289.



question words When will you see her?

WHERE IS ...? WHEN CAN ...? WHY DOES ...?

Questions with where, when, why etc normally have the same word order as yes/no questions (pages 104–105). We put am/are/is/was/were or another auxiliary verb (have, will, can etc) before the subject. I will see her on Tuesday. STATEMENT #: Anna is in Russia.

Where is Anna? When will you see her? (NOT When you will see her?) QUESTION ?:

If there is no other auxiliary verb, we use do/does/did + infinitive (without to).

STATEMENT : He likes his job. I came here to learn English.

QUESTION 2: How does he like his job? Why did you come here? (NOT Why you came here?)

Make questions with the words in the boxes.

	how when where where why
	(you staying?) 'Where are you staying?' 'At the Park Hotel.' (you arrive?) 'When did you arrive?' 'Last night.'
	(you arrive?)
1	(you here?)'To see Scotland.'
2	(you been today?) 'To Edinburgh.'
3	(you going to Glasgow?)
4	
	how when where why
5	(you come here?)
6	(you come by car?)'I like driving.'
7	(you live?)
8	(you leaving?)
9	(we see you again?)'I'll be back next summer.'

We often ask questions with how + adjective/adverb.

How old is your sister? How tall are you? How fast can you run?

Here are some common expressions with *how*. Use them to complete the questions.

How old ...? ✓ How far ...? How long ...? How tall ...? How fast ...? How often ...? How well ...? How big ...?

- ► How old are you?' '37 next birthday.' 1 '..... your house from here?' 'About 5 km.'
- 2 '...... John?' 'Very tall nearly two metres.'
- 3 '.....she driving?' 'The police say she was doing 160 km/h.'
- 4 '.....you see your parents?' 'Every week'.
- 6 '.....you stay in China?' 'I was there for six months.'
- 7 '..... you speak Spanish?' 'Not very well.'

Some questions begin with what + noun.

What time is the film? What time does the train leave? (NOT USUALLY At what time?)

What colour are her eyes? (NOT What colour have ...?) What colour is your car?

What size are you? (buying clothes) What size would you like?

What sort of books do you read? What sort of films do you like? (OR What kind of ...?)

Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in an expression with What ...

0		Α	Eight o'clock, if it's not late: \dots .
1	' is the baby's hair?'	В	', small or large?'
2	' music do you play?'	c	'She hasn't got any.'
3	'I'd like a packet of rice, please.'	D	'Pop, mostly.'
4	'Can I borrow one of your sweaters?'	E	'I don't remember – it was very late.'
5	' holidays do you prefer?'	F	'Sure would you like? Blue? Green?'

6 '..... did you get home?'

7 'I need a sweater.' '..... are you?'

G 'Extra large' H 'We usually go to the mountains.'

To ask for descriptions, we often use What is/are/was/were ... like?

'Wherehave you been?' 'In Ireland.' What was the weather like?' 'OK.'

What's your new boyfriend like?' 'He's very nice.'

'My brother writes detective stories.' 'Yes? What are they like?' 'Not very good, really.'

Make questions with What ... like?, using expressions from the box.

your new girlfriend your new house your new car your new job your new boss ✓ your new school your new neighbours

	what's your new boss like?	'He's not very good at his job.'
2		'Very noisy. They have parties all night.'
3		'OK – it's a bit slow.'
4		'Great – we've got much more room.'
5		'It's interesting. I travel a lot.'
6		'The teachers aren't much good.'

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: some more useful questions

Where are you from? Where do you come from? (NOT From where...? - see page 111)

How long have you been here? How long are you here for? (='Until when ...?')

How long does it take to get to London? How long does it take to learn English?

How do you spell that word? How do you pronounce this word?

I keep six honest serving-men (They taught me all I knew): Their names are What and Why and When And How and Where and Who.

(Rudyard Kipling)

For questions with who, what and which, see page 108.



question-word subjects Who phoned? What happened?

V	When who and what are subjects, we make questions without do/does/did. Compare:
,	(Who ^{sus)} phoned?''Mike ^{sus)} phoned.'(NOT 'Who did phone?') (Who ^{os)} did you see?''I saw Mike ^{os)} .' (What ^{sus)} happened?''Something ^{sus)} terrible happened.'(NOT 'What did happen?') (What ^{os)} did he say?''He said something ^{os)} terrible.'
1	The same thing happens when subjects begin with which, what, or how much/many.
	Which team won? (NOT Which team did win?) What country won the World Cup in 1966? How many people work here? (COMPARE How many people ^{OB)} did you ^{SUB)} see?)
4	Circle the correct form. Who lives / does live in that house? What happened / did happen to Joe? Who plays / does play the piano? What made / did make that noise? Who told / did tell you?
2	Make present (PR) or past (PA) questions. • car / belong / to Mary (which - PR)
E	Look at the picture and complete the sentences. Who loves Fred? Alice and Mary. Who does Fred love? Ann? love? Joe. Alice? love? Mary. Nobody. Ann. Ann Ann Ann Fred Ann Ann Ann Ann Ann Ann Ann A
4	Can you write four more questions and answers about the picture? 1 2 3 4

	(a) Melissa bought a coat. (b) Melissa bought	********************	
2	(a) The bus hit that tree. (b) The bus hit that tree		
3	(a) Rose lost the office keys. (b) Rose lost the o		
4	(a) Paul teaches <i>Arabic</i> . (b) <i>Paul</i> teaches Arabi	***********************	
5	(a) Mike hates computers. (b) Mike hates comp	puters.	
	rite questions about the pictures, using t		Do you know the answers?
(1	hey are at the bottom of the page.) build build paint first reach write	1	The Eiffel Tower
1 2 3 4	The North Pole		TRIP (THE PARTY OF STREET
		BOZHA MUP	
		2 War and Peace	4 Sunflowers

For the difference between which and what, see page 322. For whom, see page 322.

Gustave Eiffel. 1 Robert Peary in 1909 2 Leo Tolstoy 3 The emperor Shi Huangdi (and a lot of other people) 4 Van Gogh



questions with long subjects *Are Ann and her mother* and father coming?

E	Be ca	reful when questions have long subjects . The wo	rd order does not change.
	Is A	Ann	coming tomorrow?
	Are A	Ann and her mother	coming tomorrow?
	Are A	Ann and her mother and father and Uncle George	coming tomorrow? (NOT Are coming tomorrow Ann?)
	Have Wher	t time will the bus for the dinner and dance leave? (Bill and Jenny and their children arrived? (NOT Ha redid the President and his wife stay? (NOT Where s food for the children's party ready? (NOT I s ready :	ve arrived Bill and Jenny?) stayed? OR Where did stay?)
6	м	ake <i>yes/no</i> questions.	
		The boss's secretary travels a lot.	
	1	Your sister Caroline is talking to the police.	
	2	All the people here understand Spanish.	
	3	Most of the football team played well.	
	4	The man at the table in the corner is asleep.	
•	3 M	lake questions with question words.	
	•	The President and her husband live in Madrid. Where do the President and her husband	d live?
	1	A ticket for Saturday's concert costs €15.	
	2	The film about skiing in New Zealand starts at 8.	
	3	The second word in the first sentence means 'kir	nd'.
			L:-:-L
	4	The man in the flat downstairs wants to change Why	
6	P	ut the words in the correct order.	
	1	laughing / why / all those people / are /?	
	2		
	2	3 3	
	3	going / everybody in your family / to Scotland /	for Christmas / is /?
	4	what game / those children / playing / are /?	
	5	Lola and her friends / studying / are / where /?	
	6	those people over there / French / are / speaking	

prepositions in questions Who did you go with?

		<mark>preposit</mark> i poken Eng		h, at, foi	etc) at	the en	d of a	ques	tion wi	ith <i>Wh</i>	0?	or <i>Wha</i>	t?,	
		o with? (Mo		ural thar hat's she				go?)	W	ho is th	nat lett	er for?		
We al	We also ask questions with Where from? and Where to?													
'Whei	'Where do you come from?' (OR 'Where are you from?') 'Malaysia.' Where shall I send the letter to?													
D Pu	ıt in pre	positions	from	the box	ζ.									_
	about	about	for 🗸	for 1	from	from	in	on	to	to	to	with	with	
•	What are	e you look	ingfo	r	?			7 W	/ho are	you i	n love		nov	v?
1	Who did	Ann send	I the mo	oney		?		8 W	/hat ar	e you	all wai	ting		.?
2	Where is	s your wife		?				9 W	/ho are	you v	vriting		?	
3	What's y	our book		?			1	0 W	/ho are	you g	going	on holid	day	?
4	What are	e you thinl	king		.?		1	1 W	/ho sha	all I se	nd the	money	<i>i</i>	?
5	What su	bjects are	you into	erested		?	1	2 W	/hich f	light a	re you	travelli	ing	?
6	Where d	loes Franz	come .		?									
2 w		stions be						witl	n prep	ositio	ons.			
•	whoo	did you b	uy yo	ur car	from	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	1	bou	ght my	car fr	om He	enry.		
1							T	m th	inking	about	t life.			
2							'A	lice	works	for my	aunt.			
3	*******	********					٠ '۷	Ve w	ere tal	king a	bout y	ou.'		
4					• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		1	m in	tereste	d in m	nost th	ings.'		
5							۰ ۱	Ve're	lookir	ig at tl	nat aei	roplane	ı .'	
6							Т	stay	ed with	n Eric.'				
7							1	worl	with	Sylvia.	'			
								-	t the r	-				
									lm wa					
10	•••••			•••••	•••••		'\	ou c	an get	ticket	s from	my off	ice.'	
In cor	nversatio	n, we ofter	n ask sh	ort que	stions v	with Wh	o/Who	nt/W	here +	prepo	sition			
"Im g	oing cam	ping.' 'Wh	o with?	' 'W	illiam v	vants to	talk to	you.	'Wha	t abou	ut?'			
3 Co	mplete	the ques	stions v	with on	e wor	d.								
1	'I'm thin	king.' '		about?	'			7 1	m writ	ing po	ostcard	ds.' 'Wh	o	?'
2		a letter.'			ı?'					-			o	
3		him: '											from?	
4	_	etting mar					1	0 1	ve got	a que	stion.	'	abo	out?'
5		ng to Amei					1	1 'S	end th	is box	.' 'Who	ere	?	,
6	'Jamie's	writing a b	ook: '.		abo	ut?'	1	2 1	m mak	ing a	cake.	'Who		?'



negatives Dogs can't fly. I don't know why.

AM NOT HAVE NOT WILL NOT CANNOT DO NOT

To make negative sentences: put not after an auxiliary verb. (Auxiliary verbs are: be (am etc), have/has/had, will, would, can, could, shall, should, may, might, must.)
It is not raining. I have not seen Bill. She cannot understand me.
In conversation we usually use contractions (see page 301): aren't isn't wasn't weren't haven't hasn't hadn't won't (= 'will not') wouldn't can't couldn't shan't shouldn't mightn't mustn't We say I'm not, NOT I amn't: We can also say you're not (= 'you aren't'), he's not, she's not etc.
It isn't / It's not raining. We weren't at home. I haven't seen Ben. She can't understand me. You mustn't tell anybody. I'm not ready.
Make negative sentences. Use contractions. Dogs can swim. (fly) Milk is white. (red) The children are at school. (at home) Max has been to Japan. (Egypt) You must give this letter to Erica. (her mother) I'll be here tomorrow. (in the office) Could talk when I was two years old. (swim) We were in London yesterday. (Birmingham) I'm Scottish. (English) Write five things that you can't do. Here are some suggestions. dance draw drive play chess/bridge etc play the piano/guitar etc remember faces remember names ride a horse sing speak French/Chinese etc understand maths
There are three things that Can't speak German There are three things that I can't remember: names, faces, and I've forgotten the other! Write five things that you probably won't do next week. Here are some suggestions. go to New York get married get rich play football become President
write a poem buy a car make a cake read Shakespeare climb Mount Everest I probably won't go to Paris next week. 1

If ther	e is no auxiliary verb, we use do/does/did + not/n't + infinitive (without to).
I like -	→ I don't like She knows → She doesn't know (NOT She doesn't knows)
He arr	ived → He did not arrive (NOT He did not arrived) It rained → It didn't rain
	ake negative sentences.
	Cats eat meat. (potatoes) Cats don't eat potatoes.
	Cervantes wrote 'Don Quixote'. (Mozart) Mozart didn't write 'Don Quixote'.
1	Shakespeare lived in London. (New York)
2	Dictionaries tell you about words. (phone books)
3	The earth goes round the sun. (round the moon)
	Most Algerians speak Arabic. (Russian)
5	Fridges keep food cold. (cookers)
	The Second World War ended in 1945. (1955)
7	John knows my parents. (<i>my sister</i>)
) Us	e expressions from the two boxes, and write eight things that you don't do.
- 1	buy socks dance go to sleep play football play the violin ride a bicycle speak English sing study mathematics write poetry
	after breakfast at Christmas at school in London in the bath in the middle of the night
- 1	in the middle of the road in the sea on the bus on the telephone on Tuesdays
•	i don't buy books in London.
2	
4	
5	
7	
8	***************************************
3 Co	mplete these negative sentences. Use aren't, haven't, doesn't etc.
1	'What's the time?' 'I know.'
2	'What was the film like? 'It very good.'
3	'Would Stella like some coffee?' 'No, she drink coffee.'
4	I seen William for weeks. Is he OK?
5	Pat and Jim very happy with their new car.
6	'Can I see you tomorrow?' 'I be here. How about Tuesday?'
	'Was the lesson any good?' 'I understand a word.'
	She buy the coat; it was too expensive.
	The baby got much hair.
10	'Can we go?' 'In a minute. I ready.'
→ For	more practice with present negatives, past negatives etc, see Sections 2–5.
NOTE:	one negative word is enough (see page 115).

Nobody understands me. (NOT Nobody doesn't understand me.) She never phones me. (NOT She doesn't never phone me.)

not and no



We use not to make a word, expression or clause negative.

Not surprisingly, we missed the train. (NOT No surprisingly ...)

The students went on strike, but not the teachers. (NOT ... no the teachers.)

I can see you tomorrow, but not on Thursday.

I have not received his answer.

We use no with a noun or -ing form to mean 'not any' or 'not a/an' (see page 115).

No teachers went on strike. (= There weren't any teachers on strike.)

I've got no Thursdays free this term. (= ... not any Thursdays ...)

I telephoned, but there was **no answer**. (= ... **not an** answer.)

NO SMOKING

Put in not or no.

- 1 I work hard, but at weekends.
- 2 She was able to understand him.
- 3 They had butter left in the shop.
- 4 They repaired my watch, but properly.
- 5 We've got time to talk now.
- 6 I can come round, but tonight.
- 7 They did want to help.
- 8 'Do you smoke?' '..... usually.'
- 9 She's a woman with sense of humour.
- 10 'Shall I put some music on?' 'OK, but too loud.'

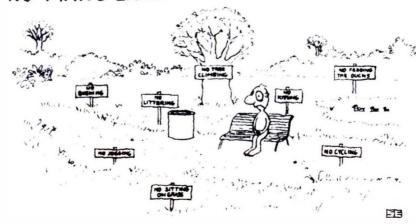
Change not any/a to no.

- ▶ I haven't got any money. I've got no money.
- 1 There aren't any newspapers.
- 2 There isn't any time.
- 3 There weren't any letters.
- 4 I didn't see a light.
- 5 He didn't give an answer.

We don't usually put not with the subject. Instead, we use a structure with it.

It wasn't Bill who phoned, it was Pete. (NOT Not Bill phoned ...)

NO-MAN'S LAND



negatives with nobody, never etc. Nobody loves me.

We can make negative sentences with *nobody, nothing, nowhere, never, no, hardly* (= 'almost not') and similar words. With these words, we **do not** use *not* or *do/does/did*.

Nobody loves me. (NOT Nobody doesn't love me.)

He said nothing. (NOT He didn't say nothing.)

She never writes to me. (NOT She doesn't never write to me.)

I've got **no** money. (**NOT** | haven't got no money.)

I can hardly understand him. (NOT I can't hardly understand him.)



0	Pl	ut the words in order to make sentences.
		up father early my gets never My father never gets up early
	1	lives house nobody that in
	2	my understand I'll dog never
	3	children me the nothing told
	4	money I no have
	5	the could road I see hardly
2	Cl	nange the sentences.
		She didn't say anything. (nothing) She said nothing
	1	
	2	We didn't have any trouble. (no)
	3	My parents don't go out. (never)
	4	I looked for the dog, but it wasn't anywhere in the house. (nowhere)
	5	I didn't eat anything yesterday. (nothing)
	6	It didn't rain for three months. (hardly)
	7	John didn't speak, Mary didn't speak, Bill didn't speak. (nobody)
0		
3	M	ake the sentences negative.
		I drink coffee. (not) I don't drink coffee.
		I drink coffee. (never) . I never drink coffee.
		Somebody telephoned. (nobody) Nobody telephoned.
	1	My grandmother drives fast. (never)
	2	Andrew plays the guitar. (not)
	3	When she talked, I understood. (nothing)
	4	I like Ann's new shoes. (not)
	5	Something happened this morning. (nothing)
	6	There's somewhere to sit down in the station. (nowhere)
	7	l watch TV. (hardly)
	8	Somebody wants to play tennis. (nobody)

I never hated a man enough to give him diamonds back. (Zsa Zsa Gabor)

I have nothing to say, and I am saying it, and that is poetry. (John Cage) Sometime they'll give a war and nobody will come.

(Carl Sandburg)

questions and negatives: more practice

O	Q	uestions with and without do/did. Ask about the words in italics.
		She said something. Who said something?
		She said something. What did she say?
	1	Julia cooked dinner.
	2	Julia cooked <i>eggs</i>
	3	The ball hit Joe.
	4	The ball hit Joe.
	5	Sarah plays the guitar.
	6	Sarah plays the guitar.
	7	Beth speaks eight languages.
	8	Beth speaks eight languages.
	9	Dad ate Mum's breakfast.
	10	Dad ate Mum's breakfast.
2	Pr	epositions in questions. Write questions for these answers.
		I was thinking about you. Who were you thinking about?
	1	I went with Henry.
	2	I'm writing to Margaret.
	3	I bought it for my mother.
	4	The letter's from my uncle.
	5	We were talking about life.
	6	I carried it in a paper bag.
	7	I sold my car for €1000.
	8	She hit him with her umbrella.
	9	I sent the flowers to Caroline.
	10	She comes from Denmark.
	10	ong subjects. Put in auxiliary verbs to make questions.
U		why / Jake and his wife / go / to Moscow last year Why did Jake and his wife go to Moscow
		la. ts year?
		the 7.15 train / run on Saturdays Does the 7.15 train run on Saturdays?
		why / all those people / looking at me
		Anna and Oscar / have lunch together / yesterday
	-	Annuality Oscar, have larier together, yesterady
	3	that man in the dark coat / work / for the government
	_	
	4	the football team / playing / in Scotland / next Saturday
		,
	5	what / those children / doing / in the garden
	6	what / the first word in this sentence / mean
	Ī	
	7	Tom and his sister / staying / at your house / this week
	8	when / Emma's teacher and her class / going / to Paris
	9	what / that strange woman / say to you
1	0	when / Mary and Phil / get married
		•

Not, nobody, never etc. Make negative sentenc	ces.
I read newspapers. (not) . I don't read newspapers	apers.
▶ I read newspapers. (never)! never read news	papers.
Somebody spoke. (nobody) Nobody spoke.	
1 My father eats meat. (never)	
2 Peter likes jazz. (not)	
3 There's something to do in this town. (nothing)	
4 Lunderstood everything. (nothing)	
5 Sally plays the piano. (not)	
6 I go to the cinema. (hardly)	
7 Something happened. (nothing)	
8 Somebody wants to talk to you. (nobody)	
10 I've got enough money. (not)	
Grammar in a text. Read the poem, and then w	rite one yourself.
Just you wait and see	Your poem
I'm getting older.	I'm getting older.
There isn't time to do everything.	There isn't time to do everything.
I can't speak German	I can't
or climb mountains.	or
I can see	I can see
I'm not going to be a ballet dancer	I'm not going to
or an opera singer.	or
I'll never discover a new planet	I'll never
or run a two-hour marathon	or
or write the novel of the century.	or
But I'll do something good.	But I'll
Just you wait and see.	Just you wait and see.
GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY. Make sure you know	v the words in the box, Use a dictionary if
necessary. Then read statements 1-6 and correct	t the five that are wrong.
cat dinosaur elephant grizzly	
bear hunt insect penguin	
spider tiger	
Penguins can fly. Penguins can't fly.	
1 Adult grizzly bears can climb trees	
2 Elephants live for 50–70 years.	
3 Tigers live in Africa.	
4 The first people hunted dinosaurs	
5 Spiders are insects.	
6 Cats can see when there is no light	
Internet exercise. Get information from the int	ernet (in English) about some of the animals
in Exercise 6, or about some other animals. The	
animals, using can't, don't, aren't etc.	
-	

questions and negatives: revision test

0	C	orrect the mistakes or write 'Correct'.		
		Speak you English? Do you speak	10	Did Sarah phoned yesterday?
		Did you understand?	11	Not speak English.
	1	Does your brother living with you?	12	I couldn't find my glasses nowhere.

	2	Are coming to the party all your friends?	13	I'm no ready yet
				I had no money.
	3	Did you see Tom yesterday?		At what are you looking?
	4	Play you football?		I never work at weekends
	5	Why you are tired?		She didn't say nothing
	6	What time does the lesson start?		This sentence is no right.
	7	What is your boss like?		Nobody didn't help me
	8	Where I can pay?		She works in China, but no in Beijing.
	9	Who did tell you that?		
	7			
2		omplete the questions.		
		· What time is the film?' 'Eight o'clock'	7	' music do you like?' 'Pop.'
		' is that?' 'My brother.'	8	' can you sprint?' 'I can do
	2	' did you go home?' 'I was tired.'		100m in 12.4 seconds.'
	3	' were you born?' 'In Scotland.'	9	' are your shoes?' '42.'
	4	' is Roger?' '27 next birthday.'	10	' is John's new girlfriend?'
	5	' is her hair?' 'Black.'		'She's very nice.'
	6	' are you?' '1 metre 84.'		
		ake negative sentences.		
(3)	M	iake negative sentences.		
		I can't speak So	anic	k
		I can speak French. (Spanish) can't speak Sp		
	1	I can speak French. (Spanish) can't speak Sp		
	1 2	I can speak French. (Spanish) can't speak Sp		
	1 2 3	I can speak French. (Spanish) ! caw't speak		
	1 2 3 4	I can speak French. (Spanish) ! can't speak		
	1 2 3 4 5	I can speak French. (Spanish) can't speak Sp		
	1 2 3 4 5 6	I can speak French. (Spanish) ! can't speak		
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7	I can speak French. (Spanish) can't speak Sp		
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	I can speak French. (Spanish) ! caw't speak		
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	I can speak French. (Spanish) ! can't speak		
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	I can speak French. (Spanish) ! caw't speak		
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	I can speak French. (Spanish) ! caw't speak		
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 M	I can speak French. (Spanish)! caw't speak S		
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 M	I can speak French. (Spanish) ! can't speak	n Er	ngland?
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 M	I can speak French. (Spanish)! can't speak S	n Ei	ngland?
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 M	I can speak French. (Spanish) ! can't speak	n Ev	ngland?
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 M 1 2 3	I can speak French. (Spanish)! can't speak Speak Speak (Speak)! can't speak (Speak)! can't speak (Speak)	n Ei	ngland?
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 M 1 2 3 4	I can speak French. (Spanish) ! can't speak	n Ei	ngland?
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 M 1 2 3	I can speak French. (Spanish) ! can't speak	n Er	ngland?
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 M 1 2 3 4 5 6	I can speak French. (Spanish)! can't speak Speak Speak (Speak)! can't speak (Speak)! can't speak (Speak)	n Ev	ngland?
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 M 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	I can speak French. (Spanish) ! can't speak	n Ev	ngland?
	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 M 1 2 3 4 5 6	I can speak French. (Spanish)! can't speak Speak Speak (Speak)! can't speak (Speak)! can't speak (Speak)	n Er	ngland?

SECTION 9 infinitives and *-ing* forms

grammar summary

INFINITIVES: (to) go, (to) break, (to) see etc

-ING FORMS (ALSO CALLED 'GERUNDS'): going, breaking, seeing etc

We can use both -ing forms and infinitives as subjects (but -ing forms are more common).

Smoking is bad for you. (More natural than To smoke is bad for you.)

We can use infinitives to say why we do things.

I got up early to catch the 7.15 train.

After some verbs we use infinitives; after others we use -ing forms.

l expect to pass my exams. (NOT lexpect passing ...) I'll finish studying in June. (NOT l'll finish to study ...)

We can use infinitives after some adjectives and nouns.

She's **ready** to **leave**.

I'm glad to see you.

I've got work to do.

After prepositions we use -ing forms, not infinitives.

You can't live without eating. (NOT ... without to eat.)

I usually watch TV before going to bed. (NOT ... before to go to bed.)

Infinitives often have to before them; but not always.

I want to go home, but I can't go now.

How I stopped smoking

I started smoking when I was 16. I didn't really want to smoke, but at that age it's important to imitate your friends. Once I had started, of course, it was hard to stop. And smoking gave me something to do with my hands. Whenever I met strangers, I couldn't help reaching for a cigarette to give me confidence, to make me look (I thought) cool and sophisticated.

Soon I couldn't get through a day without smoking twenty or thirty cigarettes. But smoking made me feel ill and smell bad, and I was tired of feeling ill and smelling bad. And I realised that it was stupid to spend so much money on a ridiculous habit. So I tried to stop. Hundreds of times. I kept on giving up. I became an expert on giving up smoking. Nothing worked: I always started again.

At last I had a piece of luck. I got terrible bronchitis – so bad that I simply couldn't smoke. It lasted for months. And when I finally recovered, I realised that I had broken the habit. I didn't have to start smoking again.

And I never did. %





infinitives: using to I want to go. Must you go?

infinitive of purpose She went to Paris to study music.

We use an infinitive with to to say why we do something.

10 I listen to music

I turned on the TV to watch the news. Joanna went to Paris to study music.

1 Complete the sentences with the infinitives of the verbs in the box.

L	ask for	buy	catch	drive	finish	hear	learn	meet	relax	turn on 🗸	wait for
•	Use this	button	totur	non		the	compute	r.			
1	Oliver go	ot up ea	arly			۸	Mark to th	e station	١.		
2	I was late	e, so I ra	an			m	y bus.				
3	Ann wro	te to m	e			Joe	e's addres	ss.			
4	I sat in th	ne waiti	ing room				the	doctor.			
5	Bob's go	ne to th	ne airport				his	uncle.			
6	I went to	town	on Saturd	ay			a	present	for my co	ousin's birthd	ay.
7	I stayed	up late	last night	i			my	English h	omewo	rk.	
8	Alice we	nt to Be	eijing				Chinese				
9	Lturned	on the	radio				the late	st news.			

Complete the sentences with the infinitives of the verbs in the box.

_											
	buy	clean	earn	get	get up	go 🗸	go	make	open	tell	wish
•	Mum gave us some money to the cinema.										
1	l stoo	d on a ch	air			t	he top	of the fri	dge,		
2	Roger's gone to town a book.										
3	We m	oved clo	ser to th	e fire				warm.			
4	Use tl	nis key				the fro	nt doc	or.			
5	I left a note George about the meeting.										
6	Jane got a part-time job some pocket money.										
7	I bou	ght some	good b	oots				walkin	g in the r	nounta	ins.
8	Alice	phoned !	Sue			ŀ	ner a h	appy birt	hday.		
9	I put t	he kettle	on				a cup c	of tea.			
0	I set t	he alarm	clock				. early				

1 Put the beginnings and ends together, using verbs from the box with to.

27		
0	You use soap	A towash yourself
1	You use a knife	B things in shops
2	You use a torch	C and close doors
3	You use money	D yourself
4	You use a key	E things into pieces
5	You use a towel	F in the dark

see

cut

dry

open



verb + infinitive I hope to be an airline pilot.

After some verbs we use infinitives, usually with to.

I hope to go to Ireland later this year. Did Jeremy agree to help you with your work?



Read the texts, and write down the verbs that are followed by an infinitive with to.

I'm eighteen, and I hope to be an airline pilot. My parents have agreed to pay for lessons if I do well in my exams. My brother says girls shouldn't be pilots, but I refuse to listen to him.

When I started to work here, my boss promised to give me interesting work, travelling to Europe and Asia. I expected to enjoy my job. But all my work is boring, and I don't do any travelling. I've tried to talk to my boss, but she doesn't listen. Now I've decided to look for another job.

I've always been afraid of water. Then one day last year I thought, 'I don't want to live like this'. So I found some special lessons for people like me. I'm learning to swim, and next summer I plan to take water-skiing lessons.



I needed to be at work early this morning. But I forgot to set my alarm clock, and I woke up at 7.30 instead of 6.30. Then everything seemed to go wrong. I had no clean shirts, the bus was late, ...

I began to learn karate four years ago, and I've continued to go to lessons twice a week since then. I love it. I've visited some other karate clubs, but I prefer to learn at my own club, because the teaching is so good.

	hope to
•	agreed to
1	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

2	
3	
4	
5	
6	

7	
8	
9	

10	
11	
12	

13	
14	

After begin, start, continue and prefer we can also use -ing forms with the same meaning.

When did you begin to learn / begin learning karate?

I started to have / started having these headaches about a month ago.

The President continued to speak / continued speaking for an hour and a half.

I prefer to live / prefer living in the country – the city is too noisy.

For -ing forms after try and forget, see page 308.

Love . . . Everyone feels it, has felt it, or expects to feel it. (Anthony Trollope, 1883)

We must learn to live together as brothers . . (Martin Luther King, 1964)

He preferred to be good rather than to seem good. (Sallust, of Cato, 54 B.C.)

War will stop when men refuse to fight. (Pacifist slogan, 1936)

Gentlemen always seem to remember blondes.

(Anita Loos, 1925)

Stop the world, I want to get off! (Anthony Newley, 1961)

Complete the sentences with verbs from the boxes and to.

1-4:	agree	decide	expect 🗸	need	plan 🗸	try

ALICE:	'The exam seemed easy. I was	surprised when I got a low mark.'
Alice .	expected to p	ass the exam; she was surprised when she got a low mark.

David and Cathy have got plane tickets and hotel reservations for Corsica.

1 Annie is going to Singapore. A visa is necessary, and she hasn't got one.

Annie get a visa.

2 JANE: 'Could you possibly lend me £5?'

ANDY: 'Sure.'

Andy has lend £5 to Jane.

3 JOE: 'Shall I go to the cinema or stay at home? Cinema, perhaps? No, I'll stay at home.' Joe has stay at home.

4 Lizzie was expecting a call from Sarah. Sarah rang the number, but it was engaged. Sarah phone Lizzie, but the number was engaged.

5–10: forget learn refuse promise start want

5 Oliver lives in the US, but he took all his driving lessons in France.

Oliver drive in France.

6 PATRICK: 'I will write to you every day, Barbara.'

Patrick has write to Barbara every day.

7 BOB: 'I was going to post a birthday card to my mother, but I didn't remember.'

Bob post his mother's birthday card.

8 PHILIP: 'Please, please lend me your car.'

AGNES: 'No, no, no and no.'

Agnes has lend her car to Philip.

9 Helen's parents are sending her to England for two weeks. Helen is not happy.

Helen doesn't go to England.

10 Susan said her first word when she was seven months old.

Susan talk when she was seven months old.

11–15: begin continue hope prefer seem

11 Mark plays the piano and the trumpet. The trumpet is his favourite.

Mark can play the piano, but he play the trumpet.

12 Ling usually stops work at 5.00, but yesterday she didn't stop until 7.00.

Ling work until 7.00 yesterday.

13 John swims every day; he's going to try for the national team next year. John be in the national swimming team next year.

14 'I'm not sure, but I think Rebecca was worried yesterday evening.'

Rebecca be worried yesterday evening.

15 Irene sat down to write a letter to her brother yesterday, but she didn't finish it. Irene write a letter to her brother yesterday.

For infinitives in indirect speech (after tell, ask etc), see pages 125 and 269.

For sentences like I don't want to, see page 293.



verb + object + infinitive He wants me to cook.

We o	ften say that we want somebody to do something.						
My b	My boyfriend wants me to do all the cooking. (NOT wants that I do all the cooking.)						
We ca	We can use would like in the same way.						
ľd lik	e you to listen to this song. (NOT l'd like that you listen)						
T							
D M	ake sentences with want or would like.						
	MRS LEWIS: Ann, can you post my letters, please? (want)						
	Mrs Lewis wants Ann to post her letters.						
1	SARAH: John, could you cook tonight? (would like)						
2	POLICEMAN: Please move your car, sir. (want)						
_	the man						
3							
	Helen's mother her						
4	BILL: Andy, can you help me? (would like)						
_	him.						
5	ROGER: Karen, could you lend me some money? (would like)						
6	JESSIE; Be quiet for a minute, Peter. (want)						
U	JESSIE, De quiet loi a minute, i eter. (want)						
7	DAVID: Alice, can you have dinner with me? (would like)						
•	Divide. Finee, carryod nave annier with me. (woods me)						
8	MIKE: The government should put more money into schools. (would like)						
9	LUCY: Bill, stop playing that terrible music. (want)						
10	MARY: Gordon, could you make the bed for once? (would like)						
6	: #fanana = a = laana Alian An da diffanana Ahiman Canalana Aha annanana						
2) D	ifferent people want Alice to do different things. Complete the sentences.						
	buy a better guitar buy him do something ✓ go to America with him go to Russia with her						
	lend her spend every weekend stop study take him for work						
	Everybody wants her to do something						
1	Her boss harder.						
2	Her little brother a bicycle.						
3	Her dog a walk.						
4	Her boyfriend						
5	Her friend Martha a blue dress.						
6	Her guitar teacher						
7	Her mother at home.						
8	Her sister						
9	The people downstairs						
10	Her father economics						

We can use some other verbs like this. For example: ask, expect, help, need, tell.

I asked Peter to go to America with me. The doctor told me to take a holiday. We don't expect you to work at weekends. I need you to translate this letter.

3 C	hange the sentences.
	They thought that we would be late. (expect) They expected us to be late.
1	
2	I said to Fred 'Please be quiet' (ask)
3	
4	
5	
_	her
6	Ann finished the work with me. (<i>help</i>) Ann
7	
8	
9	
10	
10	Some people must help with the party. (need) Theed
4 C	an's family wanted different things from him. Write sentences.
•	His mother (Re happy) His mother wanted him to be happy.
•	His grandfather: 'Don't be a politician'. His gandfather didn't want him to be a politician.
1	His father: 'Get rich'
97.	
2	His sister Isabel: 'Be good at sport'.
	in the second of good are positive and a second of the sec
3	His brother Andy: 'Go to university'.
4	His sister Nicole: 'Don't got to university'.
5	
•	
6	His grandmother: 'Be a doctor'.
Ŭ	nis granamouner, de a adetor.
7	
•	The mend runthony. Nave an easy line.
R	His maths teacher: 'Study maths'.
0	This matris teacher. Study matris.
9	His literature teacher: 'Study literature.'
,	
10	His music teacher: 'Don't study music. Please.'
10	nis music teacher. Don't study music. Flease.
5 v	/hat do/did people want you to do/be in life?
	My parents want me to be a doctor.
	My teacher wanted me to study engineering.



it with infinitive subjects It's nice to be here with you.

We don't often begin sentences with infinitive subjects (like To be here with you is nice).

ni	ce to be here with you. It was good to see you again. It's important to remember people's names.
CI	nange these sentences to make them more natural.
	To take your passport is necessary. It's necessary to take your passport.
1	To phone John was not necessary.
_	
2	To understand that woman is impossible.
3	To stay in bed late on Sundays is nice.
_	
4	To say 'No' is sometimes difficult.
5	To make our children happy was easy.
6	To tell the truth is sometimes dangerous.
U	to tell the truth is sometimes dangerous.
7	To eat out in restaurants is expensive.
8	To learn a foreign language perfectly is almost impossible.
0	To travel is nice.
9	to traver is nice.
0	To visit my parents was good.
c	omplete these sentences about a summer holiday. Use It was and words from the box.
	omplete these sentences about a summer holiday. Ose h was and words from the box.
	a bit hard to understand dangerous to swim expensive to eat impossible to be
	interesting to see nice to have really good to get away ✓ very easy to make
•	It was really good to get away from home and work.
1	sunshine every day.
	how other people live.
	Sometimes the language if people
3	talked fast.
4	friends.
4	friends in restaurants, but the food was wonderf The sea was beautiful, but

3 What do you think? Make sentences beginning It's, using words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

alway	s often	sometimes	never	right	wrong	good
bad	necessary	stupid	dangerous			

	take exercise It's always good to take exercise.
	tell the truth
2	relax
3	save money
4	give money to beggars
5	drive fast
6	fight
7	be polite to older people
8	dress well
9	smoke
	work very hard

4 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: learning and using a language: what is important?

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Then make sentences with It's important to ..., It's not necessary to ... or It's important not to

Different answers are possible: for ours, see the answer key.

bilingual comprehension correctness immediate mistake practise pronunciation regularly results rules translate vocabulary

LEARNING

	study regularly It's important to study regularly.
	study six hours a day It's not necessary to study six hours a day.
	expect immediate results. It's important not to expect immediate results.
1	practise grammar
2	translate everything
	read a lot
	read things that interest you
7	read tillings triat interest you
5	NONUNCIATION have perfect pronunciation
6	have good enough pronunciation
	RAMMATICAL CORRECTNESS
7	make too many mistakes
8	speak without mistakes
	MPREHENSION
9	practise listening to English
VC	DCABULARY
10	know 3,000–5,000 words
	know 50,000 words
12	have a good English-English dictionary
	have a good bilingual dictionary



adjective + infinitive glad to find you at home

We can use **infinitives** (with to) after **adjectives** to say **why we feel** afraid, glad, happy, pleased, sad, surprised, unhappy etc.

Mum will be glad to find you at home. I'm pleased to meet you.

	n	Put in	suitable	adjectives	or	infinitives.
۹			Januaric	uajectives	U .	

- ▶ John was ...happy) ... to get home after a long day at work. (sorry, afraid, happy)
- 1 Hello. I'm very glad you. (meet, tell, like)
- 2 I was sorry not Barbara at the party. (forget, talk, see)
- 3 I'm to say that I've got bad news for you. (glad, sorry, surprised)
- 4 I'm to wake her up she always shouts at me when I do. (excited, pleased, afraid)
- 5 We were pleased a free weekend at last. (work, have, know)
- 6 When I got home, I was surprised a policeman in the kitchen. (get, leave, find)
- 7 I was not to hear that I had failed my exam. (surprised, sorry, sad)
- 8 Anna was not to find that the cat had brought a mouse in. (sad, pleased, unhappy)
- 9 I was sorry home and go to America. I knew I would miss my family. (get, stay, leave)

.....

......

10 We're always to go on holiday. (surprised, sad, happy)

We can use **infinitives** (with to) after **adjectives** to say **what we think** of things that people do. We do this with adjectives like *clever*, *crazy*, *right*, *silly*, *stupid* and *wrong*.

You're **crazy to think** you can get there in an hour. You were **clever to bring** an umbrella.

2	Write	sentences	with	infinitives.
---	-------	-----------	------	--------------

- Angela carries all her money in one bag. She's wrong.
 Angela's wrong to carry all her money in one
 - Angela's wrong to carry all her money in one bag.
- Annie got to the airport early. She was clever.

 Annie was clever to get to the airport early.
-
- 2 Elizabeth took the train without a ticket. She was wrong.
- 3 I sat on my glasses. I was stupid.

1 Eleanor listens to Mark. She's silly.

- 4 I washed a white shirt with a red one. I was wrong.
- 5 You believe Luke. You're silly.
- 6 You eat a good breakfast. You're right.
- 7 You lent money to Chris. You were crazy.
- 8 I thought the new Prime Minister was a good man. I was stupid.
- 9 Rebecca told Peter she loved him. She was wrong.
- 10 I stayed in bed until lunchtime. I was right.

adjectives with enough/too + infinitive too tired to sing

After adjective + enough, we can use an infinitive (with to). Note the word order - see page 176.

Julie's old enough to drive now. (NOT Julie's enough old ...)

John isn't strong enough to carry that.

0	Make	sentences	with	is/isn't	old	enough	to
---	------	-----------	------	----------	-----	--------	----

Alice is 13.	Mark is 16.	Cathy is 17.
John is 18.	Liz is 21.	

	John is old enough to drive a car
	Alice isn't old enough to drive a car
1	Alice part-time
2	Alice home
3	Mark school
4	Cathy home
5	Cathy vote
6	John his name
7	Liz a bus

IN BRITAIN - AT WHAT AGE CAN YOU?						
When you are	you can					
13	work part-time					
16	leave home					
17	leave school					
18	drive a car					
18	vote					
_ 18 mm	change your name					
21	drive a bus					

Rewrite these sentences using ... enough ... to

1	Laurie is not very tall, so he can't play basketball. He's
2	Annie's only 14, so she can't vote.
3	I'm not very strong. I can't open this bottle.
4	My French is good. I can read a newspaper.
5	Peter isn't very old. He can't go out by himself.

6 Rob is intelligent. He will do well at university.

ter too + adjective, we can use an infinitive (with to).

1 too tired to sing. Alice was very afraid - too afraid to speak.

Change two sentences into one. Use too ... to

	I'm very sleepy. I can't drive. I'm too sleepy to drive.
1	Helen is very ill. She can't work.
	My grandfather is very old. He can't travel.
	I'm very bored. I can't listen any longer.
	Cara's very hot. She can't play tennis.

5 I'm very hungry. I can't work.

6 I'm very tired. I can't drive.

7 I was very afraid. I couldn't move.

8 Molly was very ill last week. She couldn't go to school.

9 Our dog's very fat. It can't run.

10 My mother's very deaf. She doesn't understand what people say.

Middle age: the age when you are too old to play tennis and too young to play golf.



noun/pronoun + infinitive some letters to write

We can often use infinitives with to after nouns.

I've got some letters to write. Sorry – I haven't got any money to lend you.



Complete the sentences with the expressions from the box.

dress to wear film to watch friend to see homework to do letters to post shopping to do stories to tell ✓

We can use infinitives with to after words like somebody, anything and nowhere (see page 172).

Would you like **something to drink**? I haven't got **anything to read**; can I borrow this book? There's **nothing to eat** in the fridge. Those poor people have **nowhere to live**.

- 2 Complete the sentences with somebody etc and the verbs in italics.
 - POLICEMAN: Move on, please. There's (see) ...nothing to see.
 - 1 I can't go to the party: I don't have (wear)
 - 2 Could I possibly use this table? I need (work)
 - 3 When I arrived, there was (do) all the work was finished.
 - 4 Everyone in our class was ill today, so our teacher had (teach)
 - 5 I'll be with you in a few minutes I have (finish)
 - 6 All my friends are out of town tonight, and I've got (qo)
 - 7 Everybody needs (*love*)
 - 8 My brother couldn't find (stay) in Bristol.
 - 9 I'm looking for (help) me with the disco on Saturday.
 - 10 Your arms are full give me (carry)

NOTHING TO EAT

She had nothing to eat. They made a film about her because she had nothing to eat.

Her husband was killed in the war. They wrote a book about how he was killed in the war.

Her mother and brother were executed by the revolutionaries. There was an opera about it.

Both her children died (there was no hospital).
You can see the photographs at an exhibition in London.

Then somebody wrote a poem.

she had nothing to eat.

Level 1

-ing forms as subjects Smoking is bad for you.

We often use -ing forms (als	o called 'gerunds') as sub	ojects – more often than	infinitives.						
Smoking is bad for you. (More natural than To smoke is bad for you.)									
Swimming is good exercise.	Driving makes me tired.	Travelling takes a lot o	f my time.						
Complete the sentence	ces.								
	is slower than	ng. (running; s	wimming)						
	is more dangerous than		_)					
2	is faster than	(flying; goin	g by train)						
3	costs more than	(washin	g; eating)						
4									
5									
6	_			ping)					
7	_		-						
8	. is more dangerous	(smol	king; driving)						
Make three more sent	tences like the ones in	Exercise 1. Use some	of the words	in the box.					
cycling learning	running shopping	sleeping teaching	thinking v	vriting					
<u></u>									
2									
3				*********					
We can put abjects after in									
We can put objects after -in		1100 11	Charles Control Control						
Learning languages is difficut Eating chocolate does not me		. are difficult earning	g is singular.)						
Lating chocolate does not in	ake you siiiii.								
Complete this list of a	ctivities with verbs fro	om the box (us -ing f	forms). Then i	number					
them in order of inter	est: 1 = most interesti	ing (for you); 8 least	interesting.						
buy cook learn	listen to look after	meet play read	i						
cards		poetry		music					
meals		poetry							
childr		clothes		menas					
······································									
In notices, you often see NO	before -ing forms.								
NO SMOKING NO WAITING									
GRAMMAR AND VOCABL	JLARY: public notices								
Which words go with									
Use a dictionary if neo		1	2						
NO PARKING NO SMOKING									
	CYCLING	Si .	200	7200					
NO CAMPING	CICLING	iic	OND	Wald of the same o					
		3 4		5					
				مجعزبان ايرانيان					



preposition + ...ing Thank you for coming.

After prepositions, we use -ing forms of verbs.

The children are tired **of going** to the same place every summer. (NOT ... are tired of to go to ...)

She spoke for an hour without using notes. (NOT ... without to use ...)

Thank you for coming. I worry about spending too much money.

We're thinking of going to Jamaica for Christma's.

→ For spelling of -ing forms, see page 23.

Put the beginnings and ends together.

O Every morning, my dad worries about 1 Please don't leave without 2 I don't like the idea of 3 Are you interested in 4 I'll pay you for 5 I never get tired of 6 Thank you very much for 7 My brother's thinking of 8 I can't work without 9 Sometimes I dream of A being late for his train B watering my garden while I'm on holiday C telling me that you're going D going to Vienna with us next weekend? E working all my life F being able to fly G selling his house H drinking lots of coffee J babysitting				
6 Thank you very much for 7 My brother's thinking of 8 I can't work without G selling his house H drinking lots of coffee	1 2 3	Please don't leave without I don't like the idea of Are you interested in	B C D	watering my garden while I'm on holiday telling me that you're going going to Vienna with us next weekend?
	6 7 8	Thank you very much for My brother's thinking of I can't work without	G	selling his house drinking lots of coffee reading

2 Add -ing forms of the verbs in the box.

	ask be 🗸	close	get	go	hear	ski	smoke	wash	watch	work
•	Alice dreams	s of bei	ng		an	opera	singer, but	she can'	t sing very	y well.
1	I I'm tired of the same old stories; doesn't John realise he's boring us									
2	2 Which British Prime Minister was famous for big cigars?									
3	I'm thinking	of			to G	reece	next sumn	ner – hav	e you eve	r been the
4	Eric's interested in football on television, but not in playing it.									
5	Don't worry about the dishes – I'll wash them in the morning.									
6	She ran out without the door.									
7	They didn't pay me much for in their garden.									
8	Jessica and Rob are talking about married.									
9	I'm not very good at, but I like it.									
10	She took my	bike wit	hout							

People talking without speaking,
People hearing without listening, . . .
'Fools,' said I, 'You do not know
Silence like a cancer grows.'

(from 'Sound of Silence', song by Paul Simon)

3 Make sentences with very / quite / not very good at ...ing or bad at ...ing.

	RUN	SWIM	CYCLE	DRAW	SING
JANE	*	•	☆	0	☆
вов	☆	•	0	*	☆
SUE	*	*	☆	0	☆
MARK	*	☆	*	☆	0

KE	Υ
*	VERY GOOD
☆	QUITE GOOD
0	NOT VERY GOOD
•	BAD

•	(Jane/run, swim)	Jane is very good at running, but bad at swimming.
	(Sue/run, cycle) .	Sue is very good at running, and quite good at cycling.
1	(Bob/run, cycle) .	
2	(Sue / draw, run)	
3	(Mark/swim, run)	
4	(Bob / swim, sing)	
5	(Jane / run, cycle)	
6	(Mark/sing, draw)	
7	(Jane / draw, sing)	
8	(Sue/sing,swim) .	
4 w	Vhat are you good	or bad at? Write some sentences about yourself.
***	*********************	
***	*******************	
We u	ise bying and with	houting to say how people do something.
l earr	n my pocket money by	y working in a petrol station. She passed her exams without studying.
SM	lake sentences wit	th bying or withouting.
		, c
	I left the house	use this morning, I didn't close the windows. this morning without closing the windows.
•	Ali got a wonderful Ali got a wond	l job. He was in the right place at the right time. Ierful job by being in the right place at the right time.
1	Ellie stayed awake.	She drank lots of coffee.

2	Paul drank three gl	asses of water. He didn't stop.

3	Charles woke us up	o. He turned the TV on.
4		
	You can find out th	ne meaning of a word. Use a dictionary.
_		ne meaning of a word. Use a dictionary.
5		
5	Mike paid for his ne	e meaning of a word. Use a dictionary. ew house. He didn't borrow any money.
5 6	Mike paid for his ne	ne meaning of a word. Use a dictionary. ew house. He didn't borrow any money. ing licence. She drove too fast, too often.
	Mike paid for his ne Helen lost her drivi	ne meaning of a word. Use a dictionary. ew house. He didn't borrow any money. ing licence. She drove too fast, too often.
5 6 7	Mike paid for his ne Helen lost her drivi	ne meaning of a word. Use a dictionary. ew house. He didn't borrow any money. ing licence. She drove too fast, too often. nework. He didn't ask for any help.
	Mike paid for his ne Helen lost her drivi Carl did all his hom	ne meaning of a word. Use a dictionary. ew house. He didn't borrow any money. ing licence. She drove too fast, too often.

Sometimes to is a preposition (for example I look forward to your answer). In this case we must use -ing forms of verbs after to.

I look forward to hearing from you. (NOT Hook forward to hear from you.)

verb + ...ing I can't help feeling unhappy.

After some verbs we use -ing forms.

Some of these verbs are: **keep** (on) (= 'continue', 'not stop'), **finish**, **stop**, **give up** (= 'stop', for habits), **go**, **can't help** (= 'can't stop myself'), **spend** (time), **mind**, **suggest**, **practise**, **enjoy**.

I can't help feeling unhappy.

Do you mind sharing a room?

Alex has gone swimming.

- Complete the sentences with -ing forms. (For spelling rules, see page 23.)
 - We enjoy tennis in the morning. (play)
 - 1 Has Julia finished her photos? (take)
 - 2 Robert's given up sweets. (eat)
 - 3 'Where's Helen?' 'She's gone' (shop)
 - 4 | have to practise so I can pass my test. (drive)
 - 5 Alec suggested at the supermarket. (stop)
 - 6 On Sunday I spent three hours in the garden. (work)
- 2 Write sentences using the expressions in the box with -ing forms.

He can't help She enjoys \(\struct \) They've just finished He's given up They're going All that week, it kept She's practising She's suggesting \(\struct \) It's just stopped



She enjoys skiing



She's suggesting



K- IT'S HOT WING NOW!



5



6



7

We use -ing forms after love, like, (not) mind (= '(not) dislike'), dislike, hate.

Put in -ing forms of the verbs in the box.

	cook	eat	get up 🗸	play	shop	study	wash	watch	watch	wear	work
•	I hate	getti	ng up		in th	e winter	before th	e sun is u _l	0.		
			es								
2	I don't	like pla	aying baseb	all, but	l like			it	t.		
3	I don't	mind				late if n	ny boss a	sks me.			
4	Joe's t	wo-yea	r-old sister	loves				. with her	toys in th	e bath	
5	Jenny	and he	r sister like				each	other's c	lothes.		
6	When	l was a	t school, I ha	ated				history.			
7	Hike				natur	e prograr	nmes on	TV.			
8	I hate				in su	permark	ets.				
9	My fat	her like	es		, ,	and we al	l like			, so w	e go well t

Write about ten things you love/hate etc doing. Use expressions from the box or write about other things.

cooking dinner for friends dancing until 1 a.m. eating out with friends getting up early listening to loud music lying on a sunny beach reading novels swimming in the ocean travelling to new places walking in the mountains walking in the rain watching old films

	I love walking in the mountains.
1	
8	
10	



After love, like and hate we can also use infinitives with to with the same meaning.

I love to sing. = I love singing. Rachel likes to go out / going out with friends. Mum hates to cook / cooking on an electric cooker.

(BUT NOT I dislike to listen to opera. AND NOT Do you mind to wait for a few minutes?)

infinitives and -ing forms: more practice

(I saw Daniel.) I was happy to 556 Daviet. (I need to do some shopping.) I've got \$500 shopping to do. (I found a cat in my bed.) I was surprised. (She left her job.) She was wrong	were glad sorry was too ere are some got no time ings and ends together, and put in infinitives
(I found a cat in my bed.) I was surprised (She left her job.) She was wrong (I can't buy a car.) I've got no money (I gave Peter money.) I was crazy (We said goodbye to Aunt Emma.) We were glad (I didn't have time to phone you.) I was sorry (I couldn't work because I was tired.) I was too (Somebody must post these letters.) Here are some (Somebody must wash the dishes.) I've got no time (I need a drink.) I need something finitive of purpose. Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in infinitives ith to) from the box. catch cut impress keep learn look for make make pay stop watch O Toby gave Lucy some flowers 1 Alicia went to America 2 I switched the TV on 3 I took two aspirins 4 Carolyn went to the kitchen 5 I'm wearing a hat 6 I have to work in the evenings 7 I used a small knife 8 Jack bought some new clothes 9 We all ran as fast as we could 1 The cat got up on the table Driving listening to music playing chess reading studying English studying history talking to friends watching birds. Watching birds is wore interesting.	were glad sorry was too ere are some got no time ings and ends together, and put in infinitives
(She left her job.) She was wrong (I can't buy a car.) I've got no money (I gave Peter money.) I was crazy (We said goodbye to Aunt Emma.) We were glad (I didn't have time to phone you.) I was sorry (I couldn't work because I was tired.) I was too (Somebody must post these letters.) Here are some (Somebody must wash the dishes.) I've got no time (I need a drink.) I need something finitive of purpose. Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in infinitives /// with to) from the box. Catch cut impress keep learn look for make ✓ make pay stop watch O Toby gave Lucy some flowers 1 Alicía went to America B	were glad sorry was too ere are some got no time ings and ends together, and put in infinitives
(I can't buy a car,) I've got no money (I gave Peter money.) I was crazy (We said goodbye to Aunt Emma.) We were glad (I didn't have time to phone you.) I was sorry (I couldn't work because I was tired.) I was too (Somebody must post these letters.) Here are some (Somebody must wash the dishes.) I've got no time (I need a drink.) I need something finitive of purpose. Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in infinitives vith to) from the box. Catch cut impress keep learn look for make / make pay stop watch O Toby gave Lucy some flowers 1 Alicia went to America 2 I switched the TV on 3 I took two aspirins C my head warm. C my head warm. C my head warm. D English. 4 Carolyn went to the kitchen 5 I'm wearing a hat F my headache. 6 I have to work in the evenings G food 7 I used a small knife B Jack bought some new clothes 9 We all ran as fast as we could J his girlfriend In the potatoes into pieces	were glad sorry was too ere are some got no time ings and ends together, and put in infinitives
(I gave Peter money.) I was crazy	were glad sorry was too ere are some got no time ings and ends together, and put in infinitives
(We said goodbye to Aunt Emma.) We were glad (I didn't have time to phone you.) I was sorry (I couldn't work because I was tired.) I was too (Somebody must post these letters.) Here are some (Somebody must wash the dishes.) I've got no time (I need a drink.) I need something finitive of purpose. Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in infinitives /// // // // // // // // // // // // /	were glad sorry was too ere are some got no time ings and ends together, and put in infinitives
(I didn't have time to phone you.) I was sorry (I couldn't work because I was tired.) I was too (Somebody must post these letters.) Here are some (Somebody must wash the dishes.) I've got no time (I need a drink.) I need something finitive of purpose. Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in infinitives ith to) from the box. Catch cut impress keep learn look for make in make in make pay stop watch O Toby gave Lucy some flowers I Alicia went to America I Switched the TV on I C my head warm. I Look two aspirins I C my head warm. C my head warm. C my head warm. I Look two aspirins I C my head warm. I Look two work in the evenings I I was a small knife I my headache. I layed a small knife I my headache. I my h	ings and ends together, and put in infinitives
(I couldn't work because I was tired.) I was too (Somebody must post these letters.) Here are some (Somebody must wash the dishes.) I've got no time (I need a drink.) I need something finitive of purpose. Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in infinitives yith to) from the box. catch cut impress keep learn look for make ✓ make pay stop watch 0 Toby gave Lucy some flowers 1 Alicia went to America 2 I switched the TV on 3 I took two aspirins 4 Carolyn went to the kitchen 5 I'm wearing a hat 6 I have to work in the evenings 7 I used a small knife 8 Jack bought some new clothes 9 We all ran as fast as we could 10 The cat got up on the table Driving listening to music playing chess reading studying English studying history talking to friends watching birds. watching birds is more interesting.	was tooere are someegot no time
(Somebody must post these letters.) Here are some (Somebody must wash the dishes.) I've got no time (I need a drink.) I need something finitive of purpose. Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in infinitives // ith to) from the box. catch cut impress keep learn look for make ✓ make pay stop watch 0 Toby gave Lucy some flowers 1 Alicia went to America 2 I switched the TV on 3 I took two aspirins 4 Carolyn went to the kitchen 5 I'm wearing a hat 6 I have to work in the evenings 7 I used a small knife 8 Jack bought some new clothes 9 We all ran as fast as we could 10 The cat got up on the table Driving listening to music playing chess reading studying English studying history talking to friends Driving is more interesting than watching birds. Watching birds is more interesting.	ere are someegot no timeings and ends together, and put in infinitives
(Somebody must wash the dishes.) I've got no time (I need a drink.) I need something finitive of purpose. Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in infinitives vith to) from the box. catch cut impress keep learn look for make ✓ make pay stop watch 0 Toby gave Lucy some flowers 1 Alicia went to America 2 I switched the TV on 3 I took two aspirins 4 Carolyn went to the kitchen 5 I'm wearing a hat 6 I have to work in the evenings 7 I used a small knife 8 Jack bought some new clothes 9 We all ran as fast as we could 10 The cat got up on the table Diriving listening to music playing chess reading studying English studying history talking to friends Diriving is more interesting than watching birds. Watching birds is more interesting.	ings and ends together, and put in infinitives
finitive of purpose. Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in infinitives with to) from the box. catch cut impress keep learn look for make ✓ make pay stop watch 0 Toby gave Lucy some flowers 1 Alicia went to America 2 I switched the TV on 3 I took two aspirins 4 Carolyn went to the kitchen 5 I'm wearing a hat 6 I have to work in the evenings 7 I used a small knife 8 Jack bought some new clothes 9 We all ran as fast as we could 10 The cat got up on the table Diriving listening to music playing chess reading studying English studying history talking to friends watching birds. Watching birds is more interesting.	ings and ends together, and put in infinitives
finitive of purpose. Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in infinitives with to) from the box. Catch cut impress keep learn look for make ✓ make pay stop watch	ings and ends together, and put in infinitives
catch cut impress keep learn look for make make pay stop watch 0 Toby gave Lucy some flowers 1 Alicia went to America 2 I switched the TV on 3 I took two aspirins 4 Carolyn went to the kitchen 5 I'm wearing a hat 6 I have to work in the evenings 7 I used a small knife 8 Jack bought some new clothes 9 We all ran as fast as we could 10 The cat got up on the table driving listening to music playing chess reading studying English studying history talking to friends watching birds. watching birds is more interesti.	
1 Alicia went to America 2 I switched the TV on 3 I took two aspirins 4 Carolyn went to the kitchen 5 I'm wearing a hat 6 I have to work in the evenings 7 I used a small knife 8 Jack bought some new clothes 9 We all ran as fast as we could 10 The cat got up on the table driving listening to music playing chess reading studying English studying history talking to friends D	
1 Alicia went to America 2 I switched the TV on 3 I took two aspirins 4 Carolyn went to the kitchen 5 I'm wearing a hat 6 I have to work in the evenings 7 I used a small knife 8 Jack bought some new clothes 9 We all ran as fast as we could 10 The cat got up on the table driving listening to music playing chess reading studying English studying history talking to friends D	A to make har fool botton
2 I switched the TV on 3 I took two aspirins 4 Carolyn went to the kitchen 5 I'm wearing a hat 6 I have to work in the evenings 7 I used a small knife 8 Jack bought some new clothes 9 We all ran as fast as we could 10 The cat got up on the table driving listening to music playing chess reading studying English studying history talking to friends watching birds. Watching birds is more interesting. C	
3 I took two aspirins 4 Carolyn went to the kitchen 5 I'm wearing a hat 6 I have to work in the evenings 7 I used a small knife 8 Jack bought some new clothes 9 We all ran as fast as we could 10 The cat got up on the table driving listening to music playing chess reading studying English studying history talking to friends D	
4 Carolyn went to the kitchen 5 I'm wearing a hat 6 I have to work in the evenings 7 I used a small knife 8 Jack bought some new clothes 9 We all ran as fast as we could 10 The cat got up on the table driving listening to music playing chess reading studying English studying history talking to friends watching birds. Watching birds is more interesting. E	
5 I'm wearing a hat 6 I have to work in the evenings 7 I used a small knife 8 Jack bought some new clothes 9 We all ran as fast as we could 10 The cat got up on the table driving listening to music playing chess reading studying English studying history talking to friends Driving is more interesting than watching birds. Watching birds is more interesti	
6 I have to work in the evenings 7 I used a small knife 8 Jack bought some new clothes 9 We all ran as fast as we could 10 The cat got up on the table Mriving listening to music playing chess reading studying English studying history talking to friends watching birds watching TV cycling Driving is more interesting than watching birds. Watching birds is more interesti	
7 I used a small knife 8 Jack bought some new clothes 9 We all ran as fast as we could 10 The cat got up on the table Mry for my new car J	
8 Jack bought some new clothes 9 We all ran as fast as we could 10 The cat got up on the table K	
9 We all ran as fast as we could 10 The cat got up on the table K	
The cat got up on the table K	
of form subjects. Put these activities in order of interest (for you) and make sentences ith more interesting. driving listening to music playing chess reading studying English studying history talking to friends watching birds watching TV cycling Driving is more interesting than watching birds. Watching birds is more interesti	
talking to friends watching birds watching TV cycling Driving is more interesting than watching birds. Watching birds is more interesti	J his girlfriend K the train
	n watching birds. Watching birds is more interesti
	9

	opy not to have	pleased to find	sorry to say	unhappy to think
e years ago, I went to Aust	ralia to start a ne	ew job. I was ▶9!	ad to leave	London,
l was very 1				, and my mother was
	that I would b	e so far away. I was	a bit afraid of m	ny new life, so I was
	any problems	when I arrived. Syc	lney was beauti	ful, and I was
	friendly peopl	e in the office, an ii	nteresting job a	nd a lovely apartment
		id to 6d		
5–7: happy to be pleas	sed to see sur	prised to find		
erything went well in Austr	ralia, but I never	felt really at home	there, and in the	e end I decided to com
k. Today I arrived in Londo				
inges, but I am really 6		here aga	in. On the way	from the airport I start
- I was so 7		a big red London b	ous.	
				.1 .
AMMAR AND VOCABULAR e a dictionary if necess		-		
inges, but I am really 6		here aga a big red London b	ain. On the way ous.	from the airport I



Heathield H300 Hybrid



• 4130 Molloy frame • 24-speed Hitalo gears

CELGA 113A



1000 hours AF/E. CofA to November. New leather seats







6	Find three advertisements on the internet. Write some words from each and say what the advertisers want you to do or buy.

infinitives and -ing forms: revision test

	ut in the correct form of the verb.		
	I promiseto Phone you every day. (phone)	6	The boss refused to me. (talk)
	She suggested a doctor. (see)	7	I thought of you a birthday card,
	We agreed together. (work)		but I forgot. (send)
	I didn't expect John there. (see)	8	They still haven't finished (talk)
3			Bill doesn't want with us. (come)
	I can't keep – I'm too tired. (<i>drive</i>)		Your English is good, but you must practise
	Iris has decided a car. (buy)		(speak)
	,,		
2 C	orrect the mistakes or write 'Correct'.		
•	I want seeing youto see	9	I'm glad to see you.
•	Can I help you? Correct.	10	Learning languages is difficult.
1	It's necessary to get a visa	11	I don't want that you pay for me
2	I hope to not have problems at university.	12	It's dangerous to smoke.
		13	We need getting tickets.
3	I went to Mexico for learning Spanish.	14	You can't live without to eat.
	************	15	I often think about change my job.
4	His parents wanted him to be a doctor.		*****************
		16	I was wrong to say that to her
5	You can get there faster by take the train.	17	I would like see you again.
		18	Is it necessary to buy a ticket now?
6	I stopped to smoke last year		******************
	She keeps telephoning me	19	Try to not forget your keys
8			You must pay now.
-	3. 3.,		
63 W	rite sentences with want.		
•		ts P	aul to tell him everything.
	- 1.		
1	ROBERT → PAUL: tell / everythingRobert wan		
1	ROBERT → PAUL: tell / everything Robert wan. ANNA → BETH: look after / children JOE → JACK: lend / money		
1 2	ROBERT → PAUL: tell / everything Robert war. ANNA → BETH: look after / children JOE → JACK: lend / money PETER'S MOTHER → PETER: clean / room		
1 2 3 4	ROBERT → PAUL: tell / everything Robert wan ANNA → BETH: look after / children JOE → JACK: lend / money PETER'S MOTHER → PETER: clean / room SAM → JOE: go shopping		
1 2 3 4	ROBERT → PAUL: tell / everything		
1 2 3 4	ROBERT → PAUL: tell / everything Robert wan ANNA → BETH: look after / children JOE → JACK: lend / money PETER'S MOTHER → PETER: clean / room SAM → JOE: go shopping /rite sentences with would like. ALICE → OLIVIA: make / coffee Alice would like	ke c	Dlívía to make coffee
1 2 3 4	ROBERT -> PAUL: tell / everything Robert wan. ANNA -> BETH: look after / children JOE -> JACK: lend / money PETER'S MOTHER -> PETER: clean / room SAM -> JOE: go shopping Prite sentences with would like. ALICE -> OLIVIA: make / coffee Alice would like. TOM -> SARAH: pass / newspaper	ke C	Dlivia to make coffee
1 2 3 4 W	ROBERT → PAUL: tell / everything Robert wan. ANNA → BETH: look after / children JOE → JACK: lend / money PETER'S MOTHER → PETER: clean / room SAM → JOE: go shopping Prite sentences with would like. ALICE → OLIVIA: make / coffee Alice would like. TOM → SARAH: pass / newspaper	ke C	Dlívia to make coffee
1 2 3 4 W	ROBERT -> PAUL: tell / everything Robert wan ANNA -> BETH: look after / children JOE -> JACK: lend / money PETER'S MOTHER -> PETER: clean / room SAM -> JOE: go shopping Prite sentences with would like. ALICE -> OLIVIA: make / coffee Alice would like. TOM -> SARAH: pass / newspaper MIKE'S PARENTS -> MIKE: study / medicine	ke C	Dlivia to make coffee
1 2 3 4 W	ROBERT → PAUL: tell / everything Robert wan. ANNA → BETH: look after / children JOE → JACK: lend / money PETER'S MOTHER → PETER: clean / room SAM → JOE: go shopping Prite sentences with would like. ALICE → OLIVIA: make / coffee Alice would like. TOM → SARAH: pass / newspaper MIKE'S PARENTS → MIKE: study / medicine	ke c	Dlivia to make coffee
1 2 3 4 W	ROBERT → PAUL: tell / everything Robert wan ANNA → BETH: look after / children JOE → JACK: lend / money PETER'S MOTHER → PETER: clean / room SAM → JOE: go shopping /rite sentences with would like. ALICE → OLIVIA: make / coffee Alice would like. TOM → SARAH: pass / newspaper MIKE'S PARENTS → MIKE: study / medicine THE BOSS → EMMA: answer / phone	ke C	Dlivia to make coffee
1 2 3 4 W	ROBERT → PAUL: tell / everything Robert wan. ANNA → BETH: look after / children JOE → JACK: lend / money PETER'S MOTHER → PETER: clean / room SAM → JOE: go shopping Prite sentences with would like. ALICE → OLIVIA: make / coffee Alice would like. TOM → SARAH: pass / newspaper MIKE'S PARENTS → MIKE: study / medicine	ke C	Dlivia to make coffee
1 2 3 4 W 5 5	ROBERT → PAUL: tell / everything Robert wan ANNA → BETH: look after / children JOE → JACK: lend / money PETER'S MOTHER → PETER: clean / room SAM → JOE: go shopping /rite sentences with would like. ALICE → OLIVIA: make / coffee Alice would like. TOM → SARAH: pass / newspaper MIKE'S PARENTS → MIKE: study / medicine THE BOSS → EMMA: answer / phone	ke C	Dlivia to make coffee
1 2 3 4 W 5 5	ROBERT → PAUL: tell / everything Robert wan. ANNA → BETH: look after / children JOE → JACK: lend / money PETER'S MOTHER → PETER: clean / room SAM → JOE: go shopping /rite sentences with would like. ALICE → OLIVIA: make / coffee Alice would like. TOM → SARAH: pass / newspaper MIKE'S PARENTS → MIKE: study / medicine THE BOSS → EMMA: answer / phone	ke c	Dlívia to make coffee
1 2 3 4 W 5 5	ROBERT -> PAUL: tell / everything	ke c	Dlívía to make coffee Robert to drive fast.
1 2 3 4 W 5 6 7	ROBERT → PAUL: tell / everything Robert wan. ANNA → BETH: look after / children JOE → JACK: lend / money PETER'S MOTHER → PETER: clean / room SAM → JOE: go shopping Prite sentences with would like. ALICE → OLIVIA: make / coffee Alice would like. TOM → SARAH: pass / newspaper MIKE'S PARENTS → MIKE: study / medicine THE BOSS → EMMA: answer / phone	ke c	Dlivia to make coffee Robert to drive fast.
1 2 3 4 W 5 6 7	ROBERT -> PAUL: tell / everything Robert wan ANNA -> BETH: look after / children JOE -> JACK: lend / money PETER'S MOTHER -> PETER: clean / room SAM -> JOE: go shopping Prite sentences with would like. ALICE -> OLIVIA: make / coffee Alice would like. TOM -> SARAH: pass / newspaper MIKE'S PARENTS -> MIKE: study / medicine THE BOSS -> EMMA: answer / phone Prite sentences with not want. CAROL -> ROBERT: drive fast Carol doesn't with MARY -> JACK: look / her / like that	ke o	Dlivia to make coffee Robert to drive fast.
1 2 3 4 W 5 5 6 7 W 8	ROBERT -> PAUL: tell / everything Robert wan ANNA -> BETH: look after / children JOE -> JACK: lend / money PETER'S MOTHER -> PETER: clean / room SAM -> JOE: go shopping //rite sentences with would like. ALICE -> OLIVIA: make / coffee Alice would like. TOM -> SARAH: pass / newspaper MIKE'S PARENTS -> MIKE: study / medicine THE BOSS -> EMMA: answer / phone //rite sentences with not want. CAROL -> ROBERT: drive fast Carol doesn't with MARY -> JACK: look / her / like that	ke c	Dlivia to make coffee Robert to drive fast.
1 2 3 4 W > 5 6 7 W > 8 9	ROBERT -> PAUL: tell / everything Robert wan ANNA -> BETH: look after / children JOE -> JACK: lend / money PETER'S MOTHER -> PETER: clean / room SAM -> JOE: go shopping //rite sentences with would like. ALICE -> OLIVIA: make / coffee Alice would like. TOM -> SARAH: pass / newspaper MIKE'S PARENTS -> MIKE: study / medicine THE BOSS -> EMMA: answer / phone //rite sentences with not want. CAROL -> ROBERT: drive fast Carol doesn't with MARY -> JACK: look / her / like that	ke c	Dlivia to make coffee Robert to drive fast.

SECTION 10 special structures with verbs

grammar summary

Several different structures are practised in this section:

- structures with get

 It's getting late. I got a letter. Get out!
- verbs followed by prepositions
 Look at this.
- phrasal verbs
 Hurry up we're late.
- verbs with two objects
 Can you lend me some money?

- have something done
 I have my hair cut every week.
- let's

 Let's go and see a film tonight.
- imperatives

 Come in and have some coffee.





'Don't embarrass me again, spell-checker.'



structures with get get up; get your coat; it's getting cold

Get has different meanings in different structures.
Get + direct object: 'receive, fetch, obtain, buy'
Get your coat – it's time to go. She got a letter from her mother.
Get + adjective: 'become'
It's getting cold. The problem is getting worse.
Get + adverb particle / preposition: 'move, change position'
What time do you usually get up? It takes me an hour to get to work. I couldn't get on the bus because it was full.
1 Complete the sentences using expressions with <i>get</i> .
My English is getting better.
1 I need to some out of the bank.
2 Antonia her car and drove away.
3 a long from Arthur this morning.
4 What are you doing in my room?!
5 If you go out in the rain without a coat, you'll
6 If you don't put on a sweater, you'll
7 We have to the bus at the next stop.
8 If I don't have breakfast, I really about eleven o'clock.
9 I'm ing, I think I'll go to bed.
10 It early in winter.
Get is often used with a past participle. Common expressions:
get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost
get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost get married get divorced get broken This structure can be similar to a passive verb.
get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost get married get divorced get broken
get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost get married get divorced get broken This structure can be similar to a passive verb. Joe got arrested for drunk driving last week. (= 'was arrested') We never get invited anywhere.
get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost get married get divorced get broken This structure can be similar to a passive verb. Joe got arrested for drunk driving last week. (= 'was arrested')
get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost get married get divorced get broken This structure can be similar to a passive verb. Joe got arrested for drunk driving last week. (= 'was arrested') We never get invited anywhere.
get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost get married get divorced get broken This structure can be similar to a passive verb. Joe got arrested for drunk driving last week. (= 'was arrested') We never get invited anywhere. 2 Complete the sentences with get and verbs from the box (use past participles). break burn change divorce dress invite lose marry send ✓ steal undress
get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost get married get divorced get broken This structure can be similar to a passive verb. Joe got arrested for drunk driving last week. (= 'was arrested') We never get invited anywhere. 2 Complete the sentences with get and verbs from the box (use past participles). break burn change divorce dress invite lose marry send ✓ steal undress ▶ When he was 12 he . got sent away to boarding school.
get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost get married get divorced get broken This structure can be similar to a passive verb. Joe got arrested for drunk driving last week. (= 'was arrested') We never get invited anywhere. 2 Complete the sentences with get and verbs from the box (use past participles). break burn change divorce dress invite lose marry send ✓ steal undress ▶ When he was 12 he got sent away to boarding school.
get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost get married get divorced get broken This structure can be similar to a passive verb. Joe got arrested for drunk driving last week. (= 'was arrested') We never get invited anywhere. 2 Complete the sentences with get and verbs from the box (use past participles). break burn change divorce dress invite lose marry send ✓ steal undress ▶ When he was 12 he got sent away to boarding school. 1 I forgot to take the chicken out of the oven and it
get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost get married get divorced get broken This structure can be similar to a passive verb. Joe got arrested for drunk driving last week. (= 'was arrested') We never get invited anywhere. 2 Complete the sentences with get and verbs from the box (use past participles). break burn change divorce dress invite lose marry send ✓ steal undress Need to take the chicken out of the oven and it
get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost get married get divorced get broken This structure can be similar to a passive verb. Joe got arrested for drunk driving last week. (= 'was arrested') We never get invited anywhere. 2 Complete the sentences with get and verbs from the box (use past participles). break burn change divorce dress invite lose marry send ✓ steal undress Never the was 12 he got sent away to boarding school. 1 I forgot to take the chicken out of the oven and it
get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost get married get divorced get broken This structure can be similar to a passive verb. Joe got arrested for drunk driving last week. (= 'was arrested') We never get invited anywhere. 2 Complete the sentences with get and verbs from the box (use past participles). break burn change divorce dress invite lose marry send ✓ steal undress When he was 12 he got sent away to boarding school. 1 I forgot to take the chicken out of the oven and it
get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost get married get divorced get broken This structure can be similar to a passive verb. Joe got arrested for drunk driving last week. (= 'was arrested') We never get invited anywhere. Complete the sentences with get and verbs from the box (use past participles). break burn change divorce dress invite lose marry send ✓ steal undress When he was 12 he Sent away to boarding school. I forgot to take the chicken out of the oven and it
get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost get married get divorced get broken This structure can be similar to a passive verb. Joe got arrested for drunk driving last week. (= 'was arrested') We never get invited anywhere. Complete the sentences with get and verbs from the box (use past participles). break burn change divorce dress invite lose marry send ✓ steal undress When he was 12 he got sent
get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost get married get divorced get broken This structure can be similar to a passive verb. Joe got arrested for drunk driving last week. (= 'was arrested') We never get invited anywhere. Complete the sentences with get and verbs from the box (use past participles). break burn change divorce dress invite lose marry send ✓ steal undress When he was 12 he Sent away to boarding school. I forgot to take the chicken out of the oven and it

verbs with prepositions Wait for me.

'I cut it
'I cut it
'I cut it
r
r
r 'd
r
r 'd

→ For more about prepositions, see pages 273–286.

phrasal verbs Come in, take off your coat and sit down.

Some verbs have two parts. The second part is a small adverb (back, away, out etc).

These verbs are called 'phrasal verbs'.

The small adverbs are not the same as prepositions (but some of them look the same).

SOME COMMON PHRASAL VERBS

be in/out/away/back get out get up go away go/come back go on (='continue') go in/out hurry up lie down look out look round sit down stand up turn round wake up

'Can I speak to Ann?' 'She's not in.' Come back soon. This headache won't go away.

Look out! Come in and sit down. It's time to get up.

Complete the sentences.

- ▶ The door opened and I went
- Come... back and see us soon.
- 1 I usually up at seven o'clock in the morning.
- 2 Shall we out this evening?
- 3 I heard a noise behind me and turned
- 4 I can't go Can we stop for a minute?
- 5 I'm going home for a bit. I'll be after lunch.
- 6 Hurry We're late.
- 7 I'm not feeling well. I'm going to down for an hour.
- 8 'I love you.' '..... away!'

2 Look at the pictures and complete the captions.





Some phrasal verbs can have objects.

SOME COMMON PHRASAL VERBS THAT CAN HAVE OBJECTS

fill in (a form) bring back fill up give back qive up (= 'stop doing') let in look up (something in a dictionary etc) pick up put down put on (clothes) switch/turn on/off (lights, electrical appliances) take off (clothes) take away throw away turn up/down (radio, TV, heater) wash up (cups, plates etc)

Please fill in this form and post it. I'm trying to give up smoking.

I put on my best clothes for the interview. Shall I switch on the lights?

Could you turn down the radio? Don't throw away the newspaper.

In phrasal verbs, up often means 'completely'.

I'll cut up the wood. Let's clean up the house. Fill up your glass. I tore up her letter.

Here are some sentences from books and conversations. Complete the phrasal verbs with words from the boxes.

back down down off on on up

- 1 It was a good feeling to put dry clothes and eat a large cooked breakfast.
- 2 Switch the kettle and sit on that chair while I make tea.
- 3 Put your paper and listen to me.
- 4 Switch the lights when you are not using them.
- 5 It's hot in here. Do you mind if I turn the heater a bit?
- 6 If you find a café, could you bring a couple of sandwiches?
- 7 I think I'll wash the plates and cups now.

break fill let look give pick take

- 8 If you want to know what grammar is, up the word in the dictionary.
- 9 You can't up a newspaper these days without reading about terrible things.
- 10 She got ill and had to up her job.
- 11 He in six goals in four games.
- 12 Why did you have to in the form?
- 13 I off my shoes whenever I can.
- 14 up the firewood into little pieces, can you?

The small adverb can usually go before or after the object.

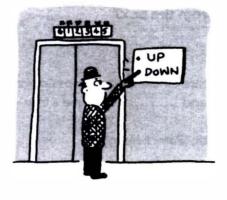
Switch on the kettle. OR Switch the kettle on. He let in six goals. OR He let six goals in.

When the object is a pronoun (him, her, it etc), the small adverb must go after it.

Switch it on. (NOT Switch on it.) He let them in. Take it away.

Change the sentences twice.

- She put on her coat. She put her coat on. She put it on
- I washed up the plates. I washed the plates up. I washed them up.
- 1 Could you turn down the TV?
- 2 You can throw away the potatoes.
- 3 Why don't you take off your glasses?
- 4 Please put down that knife.
- 5 Shall I fill up your glass?
- 6 I'll switch on the heating.







verbs with two objects Take the boss these letters.

SOME VERBS THAT CAN HAVE TWO OBJECTS

bring	buy	cook	fetch	find	get	give	lend	m	ake	offer	pass
pay	promise	read	send	show	ted	ich	take	tell	writ	e	

1 Sally 4		2 VERB + THING + TO/FOR + PERSON
I show you my photos? Iwrote her a long letter, but she never answered. I going to put John to bed and tell him a story. I've bought you a present. Change the structure. Send Alison the bill. Send the bill to Alison.	Could you take the boss these letters?	Could you take these letters to the boss?
Change the structure. Send Alison the bill. Send the bill to Alison. Fill make some tea for you. I'll make you some tea. I lent Joe my bicycle yesterday. I lent Joe my bicycle yesterday. I often read stories to Lucy. Carol teaches small children maths. Ruth showed the photo to the others. Ananda often gives her mother flowers. Could you buy a newspaper for me? I found a hotel room for my parents. Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. Luke has written a letter to Joy. I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing. JOE: chocolates -> SALLY: a book -> FRED: flowers -> ANNIE: a picture -> LUKE: a sweater -> MARY: a camera -> JOE Joe gave Sally chocolates. Sally 4 Can you complete these quotations with words from the box? buy find give give lend -> Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears. (Shakespeare: Julius Caesar) A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and me a four-year-old child.	ost often, we use verb + person + thing, especiall	y with personal pronouns (<i>me, you</i> etc).
Send Alison the bill. Send the bill to Alison I'll make some tea for you. I'll make you some tea I lent Joe my bicycle yesterday. I loften read stories to Lucy. Carol teaches small children maths. Ruth showed the photo to the others. Amanda often gives her mother flowers. Could you buy a newspaper for me? I found a hotel room for my parents. Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. Luke has written a letter to Joy. I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing. JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: flowers → ANNIE: a picture → LUKE: a sweater → MARY: a camera → JOE Agaily 4 2 5 Can you complete these quotations with words from the box? buy find give give lend ✓ Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears. (Shakespeare: Julius Caesar') A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and me a four-year-old child.	•	
Send Alison the bill. Send the bill to Alison I'll make some tea for you. I'll make you some tea I lent Joe my bicycle yesterday. I loften read stories to Lucy. Carol teaches small children maths. Ruth showed the photo to the others. Amanda often gives her mother flowers. Could you buy a newspaper for me? I found a hotel room for my parents. Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. Luke has written a letter to Joy. I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing. JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: flowers → ANNIE: a picture → LUKE: a sweater → MARY: a camera → JOE Agaily 4 2 5 Can you complete these quotations with words from the box? buy find give give lend ✓ Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears. (Shakespeare: Julius Caesar') A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and me a four-year-old child.	Change the structure.	
I'll make some tea for you. I'll make you some tea I lent Joe my bicycle yesterday. I often read stories to Lucy. Carol teaches small children maths. Ruth showed the photo to the others. Amanda often gives her mother flowers. Could you buy a newspaper for me? I found a hotel room for my parents. Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. Luke has written a letter to Joy. I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing. JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: flowers → ANNIE: a picture → LUKE: a sweater → MARY: a camera → JOE Agave Sally chocolates. Sally 4 2 5 Can you complete these quotations with words from the box? buy find give give lend ✓ Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears. (Shakespeare: Julius Caesar') A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and me a four-year-old child.	Send Alison the bill. Send the bill to Ali	íson.
1 I lent Joe my bicycle yesterday. 2 I often read stories to Lucy. 3 Carol teaches small children maths. 4 Ruth showed the photo to the others. 5 Amanda often gives her mother flowers. 6 Could you buy a newspaper for me? 7 I found a hotel room for my parents. 8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 10 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing. JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: flowers → ANNIE: a picture → LUKE: a sweater → MARY: a camera → JOE Joe gave Sally chocolates. 3 Sally 4 2 5 Can you complete these quotations with words from the box? buy find give give lend ✓ Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears. (Shakespeare: Julius Caesar') 1 A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and me a four-year-old child.		
2 I often read stories to Lucy. 3 Carol teaches small children maths. 4 Ruth showed the photo to the others. 5 Amanda often gives her mother flowers. 6 Could you buy a newspaper for me? 7 I found a hotel room for my parents. 8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing. JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: flowers → ANNIE: a picture → LUKE: a sweater → MARY: a camera → JOE ▶ Joe gave Sally chocolates. 1 Sally		
3 Carol teaches small children maths. 4 Ruth showed the photo to the others. 5 Amanda often gives her mother flowers. 6 Could you buy a newspaper for me? 7 I found a hotel room for my parents. 8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing. JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: flowers → ANNIE: a picture → LUKE: a sweater → MARY: a camera → JOE → Joe gave Sally chocolates. 1 Sally 4 2 5 Can you complete these quotations with words from the box? buy find give give lend ✓ ► Friends, Romans, countrymen,lend me your ears. (Shakespeare: Julius Caesar') 1 A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and me a four-year-old child.		
4 Ruth showed the photo to the others. 5 Amanda often gives her mother flowers. 6 Could you buy a newspaper for me? 7 I found a hotel room for my parents. 8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing. JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: flowers → ANNIE: a picture → LUKE: a sweater → MARY: a camera → JOE JOE gave Sally chocolates. 3 1 Sally 4 2 5 Can you complete these quotations with words from the box? buy find give give lend ✓ Friends, Romans, countrymen,lend me your ears. (Shakespeare: Julius Caesar') 1 A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and me a four-year-old child.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
5 Amanda often gives her mother flowers. 6 Could you buy a newspaper for me? 7 I found a hotel room for my parents. 8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing. JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: flowers → ANNIE: a picture → LUKE: a sweater → MARY: a camera → JOE Joe gave Sally chocolates. 3 Sally 4 2 5 Can you complete these quotations with words from the box? buy find give give lend ✓ Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears. (Shakespeare: 'Julius Caesar') 1 A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and me a four-year-old child.		
6 Could you buy a newspaper for me? 7 I found a hotel room for my parents. 8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing. JOE: chocolates -> SALLY: a book -> FRED: flowers -> ANNIE: a picture -> LUKE: a sweater -> MARY: a camera -> JOE JOE gave Sally chocolates. 3 3 1 Sally 4 2 5 Can you complete these quotations with words from the box? buy find give give lend / Friends, Romans, countrymen,lend me your ears. (Shakespeare: Julius Caesar) 1 A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and me a four-year-old child.	•	
7 I found a hotel room for my parents. 8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing. JOE: chocolates -> SALLY: a book -> FRED: flowers -> ANNIE: a picture -> LUKE: a sweater -> MARY: a camera -> JOE JOE gave Sally chocolates. 3 3 1 Sally 4 2 5 Can you complete these quotations with words from the box? buy find give give lend / Friends, Romans, countrymen,lend me your ears. (Shakespeare: Julius Caesar') 1 A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and me a four-year-old child.	•	
8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing. JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: flowers → ANNIE: a picture → LUKE: a sweater → MARY: a camera → JOE Joe gave Sally chocolates. 3 1 Sally 4 2 5 Can you complete these quotations with words from the box? buy find give give lend ✓ Friends, Romans, countrymen,lend me your ears. (Shakespeare: Julius Caesar') 1 A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and me a four-year-old child.		
9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing. JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: flowers → ANNIE: a picture → LUKE: a sweater → MARY: a camera → JOE Joe gave Sally chocolates. 3 1 Sally 4 2 5 Can you complete these quotations with words from the box? buy find give give lend ✓ Friends, Romans, countrymen,lend me your ears. (Shakespeare: Julius Caesar') 1 A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and me a four-year-old child.	7 Hourid a Hotel footh for the parents	
O I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing. JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: flowers → ANNIE: a picture → LUKE: a sweater → MARY: a camera → JOE Joe gave Sally chocolates. 1 Sally 4 2 5 Can you complete these quotations with words from the box? buy find give give lend ✓ Friends, Romans, countrymen,lend me your ears. (Shakespeare: 'Julius Caesar') A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and	• •	
Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the person before the thing. JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: flowers → ANNIE: a picture → LUKE: a sweater → MARY: a camera → JOE Joe gave Sally chocolates. 1 Sally	8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews	
JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: flowers → ANNIE: a picture → LUKE: a sweater → MARY: a camera → JOE Joe gave Sally chocolates. 1 Sally 4 2 5 Can you complete these quotations with words from the box? buy find give give lend ✓ Friends, Romans, countrymen,lend me your ears. (Shakespeare: 'Julius Caesar') 1 A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and me a four-year-old child.	8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews.9 Luke has written a letter to Joy.	
 MARY: a camera → JOE Joe gave Sally chocolates. Sally	8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews.9 Luke has written a letter to Joy.	
 MARY: a camera → JOE Joe gave Sally chocolates. Sally	8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews	
Doe gave Sally chocolates. 1 Sally	8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put	the person before the thing.
1 Sally	8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED:	the person before the thing.
1 Sally	8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED:	the person before the thing.
Can you complete these quotations with words from the box? buy find give give lend ✓ Friends, Romans, countrymen,	8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: → MARY: a camera → JOE	the person before the thing. :flowers> ANNIE: a picture> LUKE: a sweater
Can you complete these quotations with words from the box? buy find give give lend ✓ Friends, Romans, countrymen,	8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put JOE: chocolates -> SALLY: a book -> FRED: -> MARY: a camera -> JOE Joe gave Sally chocolates.	the person before the thing. :flowers> ANNIE: a picture> LUKE: a sweater
buy find give give lend ✓ Friends, Romans, countrymen,	8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: → MARY: a camera → JOE Joe gave Sally chocolates. 1 Sally.	the person before the thing. flowers> ANNIE: a picture> LUKE: a sweater 3 4
buy find give give lend ✓ ► Friends, Romans, countrymen,	8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: → MARY: a camera → JOE Joe gave Sally chocolates. 1 Sally	the person before the thing.
Friends, Romans, countrymen,	8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put JOE: chocolates -> SALLY: a book -> FRED: -> MARY: a camera -> JOE Joe gave Sally chocolates. 1 Sally	the person before the thing. flowers> ANNIE: a picture> LUKE: a sweater 3
1 A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and me a four-year-old child.	8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put JOE: chocolates -> SALLY: a book -> FRED: -> MARY: a camera -> JOE Joe gave Sally chocolates. 1 Sally	the person before the thing. flowers> ANNIE: a picture> LUKE: a sweater 3
1 A four-year-old child could understand this. Run out and me a four-year-old child.	8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put JOE: chocolates -> SALLY: a book -> FRED: -> MARY: a camera -> JOE > Joe gave Sally chocolates. 1 Sally	the person before the thing. flowers> ANNIE: a picture> LUKE: a sweater 3
	8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put JOE: chocolates -> SALLY: a book -> FRED: -> MARY: a camera -> JOE Doe gave Sally chocolates. 1 Sally	the person before the thing. flowers — ANNIE: a picture — LUKE: a sweater 3
	8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews. 9 Luke has written a letter to Joy. 0 I want to get a good watch for Peter. Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: → MARY: a camera → JOE Doe gave Sally chocolates. 1 Sally 2 Can you complete these quotations with which buy find give give lend ✓ Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me	the person before the thing. If flowers

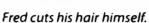
We don't use describe, explain, say, suggest or borrow in the verb + person + thing structure. (NOT Explain me this: NOT She said me 'hello': NOT Can | borrow you a stamp?)

have something done I have my hair cut every week.

If you have something done, you don't do it yourself; somebody does it for you.

I have my hair cut every week. I have my car serviced at the garage every 10,000 km.







Eric has his hair cut at Franco's.

1 Ann is very practical: she likes doing things herself. Bill is not so practical: he has things done by other people. Complete the sentences.







		Ann checks her oil herself.	Bill has his oil checked	at the garage.
	1	Ann checks her tyres herself.	Bill	
	2	Ann changes her oil herself.	Bill	at the garage.
	3	Ann repairs her car herself.	Bill	at the garage.
	4	Ann cleans her shoes herself.	Bill	on the way to work
	5	Ann does the gardening herself.	Bill	for him.
	6	Ann types her letters herself.	Bill	by his secretary.
2		ake sentences with should have		
		John's car is running badly. (check)	He should have it checked.	••••
	1	Mary's watch isn't going. (repair)		
	2	Mike's trousers are dirty. (clean)		
	3	Steve and Helen's kitchen window is	broken. (<i>repair</i>)	
	4	Pete's hair is getting very long. (cut)		••••
	5	Tom and Janet's new car has done 10	0,000 km. (s <i>ervice</i>)	
	6	Emma's eyes are giving her trouble.	(check)	
	7	Jasper's roof lets water in. (repair) .		
	8	Daniel's phone makes funny noises.	(check)	



imperatives Come in. Don't worry.

Imperatives are like infinitives without to. We use them, fo	r example, to	tell people what t	to do,	to give them
advice, or to give them friendly invitations.				

Turn left at the next crossroads. Always hold the tennis racket like this. (NOT Hold always ...)

Pay here. Come and have dinner with us. Have some more meat. Try again.

Negative imperatives begin do not, don't or never.

Never tell her that she's wrong. (NOT Tell her never ...) Please do not park here. Don't listen to him.

Which words go with which picture?

- ► DRIVE SLOWLY
- 1 TURN LEFT
- 2 DON'T TOUCH
- 3 DO NOT PICK FLOWERS

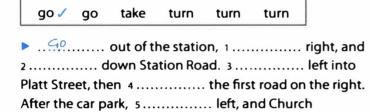


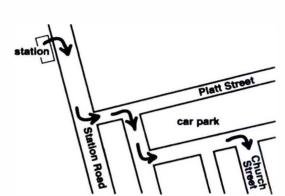






How do you get from the station to Church Street? Complete the directions.





GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: some common imperative expressions Make sure you know the expressions in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Then complete the sentences.

Street is the second on the right.

1-5: Be careful!	Have	a good jou	rney/holiday	Help!	Hurry	y up!	Look out! 🗸	Sleep well
6–11: Come in	Don't	forget	Don't worry	Follow	me	Have	some (more)	
Make yourself at I	home	Sit down	Wait for me!					

	Look out! There's a child crossing the road in front of you!
2	There's ice on the steps.
3	! can't swim!
4	'' 'Thanks. I'll send you a postcard.'
5	'I'm going to bed.' 'Goodnight'
6	'I'll be home late tonight.' 'OK your keys.'
7	l can't walk as fast as you!
8	coffee.' 'No thanks. If I drink any more I won't be able to sleep.'
9	'I'd like to speak to the manager, please.' 'Of course, sir, please.'
10	'Jill's gone into hospital.' ' She'll be all right.'
11	Hello
	Please

We don't use imperatives, even with please, to ask for things politely (see page 86).

Could you tell me the time? (NOT Tell me the time, please.)

let's (suggestions) Let's go.

We can make suggestions with let's (or let us - very formal) + infinitive without to.

Let's eat out this evening. Let's see what's on TV. I'm tired. Let's go home.

The negative is Let's not ... or Don't let's ... (informal).

Let's not go camping this summer. Let's not tell John about Mary and Pete. Don't let's invite that fool Raymond.

Look at the pictures and complete the suggestions, using Let's (not) ...

•	Let's go for a walk.
1	Let's not
2	play
3	cards.
	go ing
5	
	watch
8	go









2 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: cities and countries

Do you know the English names for cities and countries round the world? Complete the conversations using names in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Athens	Bar	igkok	Beijing	Copenh	agen	Ista	nbul	Lisbon 🗸	Marrakesh
Mexico Ci	ity	Mosco	w Prag	ue Rio	Vier	nna	Wars	aw	

	'I'd like to visit Portugal'. Let's go to Lisbon."
1	'I'd like to visit Greece.' 'Let's go to
2	'It would be nice to see Denmark.' 'Let's go
3	'I want to see Austria.' 'Let's'
4	'I've always wanted to see the Czech Republic'
5	'I'm interested in seeing Poland.'
6	'What about a holiday in Russia?'
7	'Morocco sounds interesting.'
8	'I've never been to Turkey.'
9	'What about Thailand this year?'
10	'I'd love to see China.'
11	'It's time to see Mexico.'
12	'Brazil this summer, OK?'

special structures with verbs: more practice

0	P	nrasal verbs. Put in the missing words.
		I'm really tired. I'm going to down for half an hour.
	1	Hurry! We're late.
	2	Don't turn, but somebody is following us.
	3	Can you in this form?
	4	The radio's too loud. Can you it down?
	5	It's dark. I'll switch the lights.
	6	It's cold on your coat.
	7	Shall I wash these plates?
	8	She borrowed my shoes and never brought them
	9	'I must talk to you.' 'No! away!'
1	0	It's 6.30. Time to up.
2	DI	are sel works with a biosts. Change the contanges twice
		rasal verbs with objects. Change the sentences twice. He put on his glasses
		I turned the radio down. ! turned down the radio. I turned it down.
	_	
	1	Could you wash up the cups?
	2	You can throw away those papers.
	2	Why don't you take your coat off?
	3	wity don't you take your coat on:
	4	You need to fill in this form.
		Please bring my bicycle back.
	6	Let me fill up your glass.
	7	Please put down that gun.
	8	I'll switch the TV on.
	9	Can you cut up the onions?
1	0	Pick your coat up.
3		erbs with two objects. Change the structure.
		Send John this letter. Send this letter to John
		Can you make some coffee for me? Can you make me some coffee?
	1	Alice sent her sister €500.
	2	Sarah bought ice creams for the children.
	3	Let's send Granny a postcard.
	4	Ruth showed the photo to the others.
	5	I gave some flowers to the secretary.
	6	Can you find John's address for me?
	7	I found a hotel for Aunt Patsy.
	8	Take these papers to Mrs Lewis.
		I've given George all the information.
1	0	I want to buy a nice present for my sister.

	atives. Complete the sentences.
▶ Be .	careful. with those glasses – they break easily.
1	in and close the door.
2 Dor	n't Everything will be all right.
3 Goo	odbye! a good journey.
4 Loo	k! There's a car coming.
5	yourself at home.
6	! I can't turn the water off!
	odnight well.
	nere's the Director's office?' 'I'll show you me.'
	a good holiday.' 'Thanks. I'm sure we will.'
	n't to phone us when you arrive.
10 201	To minimum to priorite as when you arrive.
	mar in a text. Read the text and put in imperatives from the box. dictionary if necessary.
1-5	: fetch hold let pick put
6.1	
1	
11-	16: blow drink find kneel remove telephone
	Programma de la little de la li
In	structions for giving a cat a pill
	up the cat. 2 it in your left arm like a baby.
	e mouth open, holding the pill in your left hand. Put the pill into the cat's mouth.
	the cat close its mouth and swallow the pill.
	ck up the pill from the floor and 5 the cat from behind the sofa. Pick up e cat. Hold it in your left arm like a baby and 6 as before.
	Put in Ste correct preportion or - te-un preportion.
	etch the cat from the bedroom and 7 the pill away. 8
	other pill out of the packet. Hold the cat in your left arm, holding its back legs tightly with
	our left hand. 9 the cat's mouth and push the pill to the back of the mouth
WI	ith your right forefinger. Hold the mouth shut while you count to ten.
10	the pill out of the goldfish bowl. Get the cat down from the top of the
Wa	ardrobe.Wrap the cat in a towel. 11 on the floor, holding the cat firmly
be	tween your knees. Put the pill in the end of a drinking straw. Force the cat's mouth open
wi	th a pencil and 12 down the drinking straw.
C	heck the label to make sure the pill is not harmful to humans. 13
	water to take the taste away. Put a bandage on your arm and 14 the
	ood from the carpet with cold water and soap. 15 the fire brigade to get
	e cat down from the tree across the road.
16	a new home for the cat. Get a dog.
Interes	at avarging like a courch anging (a = Canala) to find six also contained with the full accident
	et exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find simple sentences with the following
phrasa	al verbs: pick up, bring back, switch on, throw away, fill up. Write them here.
*******	***************************************

special structures with verbs: revision test

Which is/are correct? Circle the letter(s) of the correct sentence(s). One, two or more answers may be correct for each question.

- 1 A He picked up the plate.
 - B He picked the plate up.
 - C He picked up it.
 - D He picked it up.
- 2 I don't repair my car myself. I ...
 - A repair it in the garage.
 - B let it repair in the garage.
 - C let repair it in the garage.
 - D have repaired it in the garage.
 - E have it repaired in the garage.
 - F have it repair in the garage.
- 3 A I sent some flowers to my mother.
 - B I sent some flowers my mother.
 - C I sent to my mother some flowers.
 - D I sent my mother some flowers.
- 4 A DO NOT OPEN THIS WINDOW
 - **B** NOT OPEN THIS WINDOW
 - C DON'T OPEN THIS WINDOW
 - D OPEN NOT THIS WINDOW
- 5 A Let's to play cards.
 - B Let's playing cards.
 - C Let's play cards.

- 6 A Let's not go home.
 - B Let's don't go home.
 - C Not let's go home.
 - D Let's go not home.
- 7 A I got out the bus at the station.
 - B I got off the bus at the station.
 - C I got on the bus at the station.
 - D I got down from the bus at the station.
- 8 A Don't listen to!
 - B Don't listen him!
 - C Don't listen!
 - D Don't listen to him!
- 9 A They're looking at a hotel.
 - B They're looking a hotel.
 - C They're looking for a hotel.
 - D They're looking to a hotel.
- 10 A I'm getting cold.
 - B Can you get some bread?
 - C Get out of here.
 - D Let's get married.

Put in the correct preposition or – (= no preposition).

- 1 What's happened Tom? He's an hour late.
- 2 I usually arrive the station at 8.30.
- 3 'Have you lost something?' 'I'm looking my keys.'
- 4 'You look happy.' 'Yes, I'm thinking my holiday.'
- 5 I had to wait the bus for half an hour this morning.
- 6 Have you paid the tickets?
- 7 Could you look the children for half an hour?
- 8 Who's paying the bill for lunch?
- 9 My parents don't like me to ask money.
- 10 I got the bus and sat down.
- 11 Listen this it's really interesting.
- 12 Anna still believes Father Christmas.
- 13 Do you belong a political party?
- 14 I'll sing, but please don't laugh me.
- 15 I need to talk the secretary.
- 16 Look! There's your brother.
- 17 I send money my parents every week.
- 18 You can pay the driver when you get the bus.
- 19 They talked sport all evening it was very boring.
- 20 My girlfriend comes Ireland.

SECTION 11 articles: a/an and the

grammar summary

A/An shows that we are talking about one person or thing. We often use a/an:

- in descriptions
 - She's an interesting person.

He's got a loud voice.

- when we say what something is, or what somebody's job is.
 - This is a return ticket.

I'm an engineer.

The usually means 'You know which one(s) I'm talking about'.

Can I use the phone? (The hearer knows that this means 'your phone'.)

Nouns used without articles often have a special meaning.

I dislike cats. (This means 'all cats'.)

Most Western European languages have articles. So if you speak (for example) French, German, Spanish or Greek, you will not have too many problems with *a/an* and *the*: they are used mostly in the same way as your articles. There are a few differences: see pages 156–161. If you speak a non-Western-European language (for example Russian, Polish, Arabic, Chinese, Japanese), you may find articles more difficult. Study all of this Section, especially pages 154–155.

There is a mountain far away.

And on the mountain stands a tree.

And on the tree there is a branch.

And on the branch there is a nest.

And in the nest there is an egg.

And in the egg there is a bird.

One day the bird will fly.

One day we will be free.

(old folk song)

An Englishman, an Irishman, a Scotsman and a Welshman went into a pub. The Englishman...

Shut the door and turn off the lights when you go, will you?

We've got offices in Australia, Canada and the United States.

He's a doctor and she's an engineer.

There's some bacon in the fridge if you're hungry.

My wife's from California.

I'll meet you at the Palace Hotel in Clark Street at 8.00.

He's got a very nice smile.

You have beautiful eyes.

We went to the Czech Republic on holiday last year.

I'm afraid Ann's in hospital again.

We both studied at Birmingham University.

People a_____



a/an; pronunciation of the

We use a before a consonant sound (for example, the normal sound of b, c, d, f, g, h).

abook acoat ahouse aletter anewidea

We use an before a vowel sound (for example, the normal sound of a, e, i, o, u).

an address an egg an idea an old house

Put in a or an.

ticket	▶ 🤐 afternoon	1 bicycle	2 airport	3 shop
4 holiday	5 exercise	6 day	7 American	8 student

We choose a or an because of pronunciation, not spelling.

- a house, a hand, a head BUT an hour /awa/ (the h is silent, so hour is like our)
- an uncle, an umbrella, BUT a university (pronounced 'you-niversity'), a European (pronounced 'ou-ropean'), a uniform (pronounced 'you-niform'), a useful book
- an orange, an opera, an office BUT a one-pound stamp (pronounced 'wun ...)

Put in adjectives.

a car (expensive) an expensive car	5 an uncle (rich)
an address (new) a new address	6 a job (<i>easy</i>)
1 a friend (<i>old</i>)	7 an exercise (<i>hard</i>)
2 an apple (<i>big</i>)	8 a language (European)
3 a child (<i>unhappy</i>)	9 a book (small)
4 a train (early)	

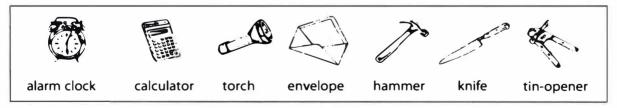
Before a consonant sound we pronounce *the* as /ðə/ (like the end of *mother*). Before a vowel sound we say /ði/ (it rhymes with *see*).

Pronounce:

the beginning the child the place the horse the woman the time the house the end the old man the office the address the American the hour the one the university the European the uniform

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: seven useful things

Complete the sentences with words from the box. Use a or an.



- 6 wakes you up in the morning.

countable and uncountable a car, cars; petrol



Countable nouns are words like car, book, chair. They are the names of things that you can count: you can say 'one car', 'two books', 'three chairs'. They can be singular (a cat, one book) or plural (two chairs, lots of books).

Uncountable nouns are words like *smoke*, *rice*, *water*, *petrol*. These are things that you can't count: you can say 'smoke', but not 'one smoke' or 'two rices' or 'three waters'.

Uncountable nouns are only singular. (For more information, see page 198.)



0	Singular countable, plural countable or uncountable? Write 'SC' (singular countable),
	'PC' (plural countable) or 'U' (uncountable) against the words.

bird SC.	bottles	blood	children	flower	love
meat	mountains	music	nose	oil	photos
piano	river	snow	songs	table	windows

We use a/an only before singular countable nouns. (A/An is a bit like one: you can't say one houses or one air.)						
SINGULAR COUNTABLE	PLURAL COUNTABLE	UNCOUNTABLE				
a house	houses (NOT a houses)	air (NOT an air)				
a car	cars	petrol				

Put in a/an or nothing (-).

	Jake's father makes films.	5	The police are looking for him with dogs
	I needa new bicycle.	6	My room has got really big window.
1	I never drink milk.	7	That child wants new shoes.
2	Jane is old friend.	8	She was wearing orange skirt.
3	Most cars use petrol.	9	They live in very nice house.
4	l often listen to music.	10	I never have sugar in coffee.

We often use an uncountable noun (without a/an) to say what something is made of.

The walls in the house were all **made of glass**. This sweater is **made of silk**.

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: materials. Put in words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

	brick	cotton	glass	leather	metal	plastic	silk	stone	wood	wool	
>	Shoes	are made	oflea	ther or pla	astic.	3 Hou	ses are m	ade of			
1	1 Socks are made of							s are mad	de of		
2	2 Cars are made of						5 Table	es are ma	de of		

We use **one** instead of a/an when the **exact number** is important. Compare:

Can I have a cheese sandwich? (NOT Can I have one cheese sandwich?)
No, I asked for one sandwich, not two!
I only want one sandwich.

4 Put in a/an or one.

3 I've got problem. Can you help?
4 She's only got child.
5 John's got beautiful sister.
6 girlfriend is enough.

Level 1

the and a/an Let's see a film. I didn't like the film.

We use *the*, not *a/an*, to talk about somebody or something, when the speaker and hearer **both know about** this person or thing; when they both know **which one(s)**. In other cases we use *a/an*.



THE

Could you close the door?

(You know which door.)

I'm going to the post office.

(You know which one - the one near here.)

Can I use the phone? (= 'your phone')

I didn't like the film. (= 'the one that we saw')

He looked at the moon. (There's only one.)

She's in the front room.

(You know which room - I'm telling you.)

She came on the 8.15 train.

(You know which train - I'm telling you.)

How much is the red coat?

(You know which coat - I'm telling you.)

A/AN

Could you open a window?
(I don't mind which window.)

Is there a post office near here?

Have you got a phone? Let's go and see a film.

He looked at a tree.

I need a room for tonight.

She arrived in an old taxi.

I've just bought a new coat.

1 Put in a/an or the.

- I walked up to her house, rang ...the.... bell and opened ...the.... door.
- ► He lives in small village.
- 1 Look that's John walking across street.
- 2 Can I use bathroom?
- 3 I need English-French dictionary have you got one?
- 4 I know good restaurant shall I reserve table for tonight?

- 5 Where's teacher? She's very late.
- 6 I want long holiday in sun.
- 7 Who's man in your office?
- 8 I'm leaving on 4.30 bus.
- 9 'Which is your coat?' '..... green one.'
- 10 Claire's looking for new job.
- 11 Why are you looking at sky?
- 12 I'll meet you at 4.30 at bus stop outside police station.

We use the before only; first, second etc; and superlatives like oldest, most (see page 223).

She's the only woman for me. I live on the second floor.

It's **the oldest** restaurant in Glasgow. He bought **the most expensive** one.

2

Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in a/an or the.

- 2 John's
- 3 What time is4 Yesterday was
- 5 Would you like
- A cup of coffee?
- B first train tomorrow morning?
- C hottest day of the year.
- D most intelligent person in our family.
- E only boy in the class.
- F present for you.

We often use alan to talk about a person or thing for the first time; and the when we talk about the person or thing again.

A man walked up to a policeman. The man took out a map and asked the policeman ...

Put in a/an or the.

A BAG IN A BAG

REMEMBER: we don't use a/an with plurals. We can use the with plurals.

She's wearing black shoes. (NOT ... a black shoes.) She bought the shoes last week.

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: animals, birds and other creatures

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then look at the groups of pictures and complete the sentences. Put in a/an or the.

ı	ant	camel 🗸	eagle	frog	monkey	mouse (plural mice)	parrot	pigeon	snake	spider

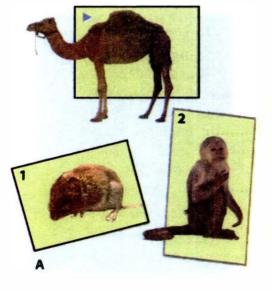
GROUP A

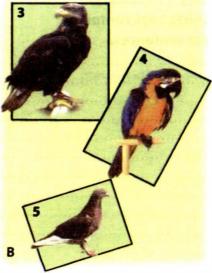
- This is a ...amel... It's ...the...... biggest animal in ...the...... group.
- 1 This is It's smallest animal in group.

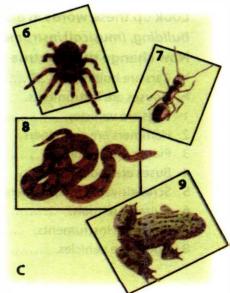
GROUP B

- 3 This is It's fastest bird in group.

GROUP C







a/an She's a doctor.

We use a/an when we say what something is, or what job somebody does.

A pony is a small horse. Canada is a big country. My sister is an electrician.

REMEMBER: we don't use a/an with plurals.

Ponies are small horses. (NOT ... a small horses.)

1 Say what these people's jobs are. Use the words in the box.

builder cook dentist doctor ✓ driver hairdresser musician photographer shop assistant teacher

	She's a doctor.		ره م	ROS	,	
1	He's a			113		du. 1
2	He's					
	She's					2
4	He		,	A Common	_	
5	She			4 /9	3	8
6	She		التعما	9,		816
7	He			UU N	A	4141
8	She				A STATE OF THE STA	<i>~</i> C
9	He		1	7		
		6				
				INEU :	$oldsymbol{\circ}$	
						9

Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

1	is a good film.
2	is a bad film.
3	is a terrible singer.
4	is an interesting book.
5	is a great man/woman.
6	are beautiful animals.
7	is a/an

3 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: kinds of things

Look up these words in a dictionary if necessary: building, (musical) instrument, vehicle, tool, container.

Now change these to true singular sentences.

	ow change these to true singular sentences.
	Cars are buildings. A car is a vehicle.
	Houses are instruments. A house is a building.
1	Bags are vehicles.
2	Hammers are containers.
3	Pianos are buildings.
4	Buses are tools.
5	Screwdrivers are containers.
6	Guitars are tools.
7	Boxes are instruments.
Ω	Hotels are vehicles

a/an: describing people She's got a nice smile.

We often use a/an in descriptions.

She's got a quiet voice. (NOT ... the quiet voice.) He's got a friendly face.

REMEMBER: we don't use a/an with plurals or uncountable nouns.

She's got blue eyes. (NOT ... a blue eyes.) He's got long hair. (NOT ... a long hair.)

1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the words in the box, and add alan if necessary.

- 2 Here are two descriptions of the same person. Put in a or nothing (-).
 - A 'My name's Sandra. I'm tall and slim. I've got ▶...... blue eyes, ▶....... small nose, 1...... big mouth and 2...... dark hair. I think I've got 3...... nice smile. I wear 4...... glasses.'
 - B 'Sandra's got 1 very friendly face with 2 lovely smile. She's got 3 long dark hair and 4 blue eyes. She's got 5 long legs, and she's very pretty. She's wearing 6 blue dress today. She's got 7 nice voice.'
- Write a short description (two or three sentences) of a friend of yours. Use some words from Exercises 1 and 2.

DESCRIPTIONS WRITTEN BY ENGLISH 7-YEAR-OLDS

my Dad

He's got glock eyes like me. He has got light bloom hair in some places.

My Friend

My friend is Annie Lydford. Annie's got shore hair and loves horses. Annie has blue eyes and a round head with a short haircut down to her forehead. Annies always happy and 61 males a really good friend.



talking in general without the People are funny.

We do not normally use the to talk about people or things in general. The does not mean 'all'. We use the to talk about particular people or things (see page 154).

GENERAL

People are funny.

I like music.

Sugar is fattening.

She's interested in dogs and horses.

PARTICULAR

The people in that house are funny.

The music's too loud – can you turn it down?

Could you pass the sugar?

'Why are the dogs barking?' 'There's somebody outside.'

Make some sentences from the words in the boxes.

A	rtists	Buil	ders	Cats
	Do	gs I	Horse	es
Pł	otogr	aphe	rs F	Pianists
	Sho	p ass	sistan	ts
	Stude	nts	Teac	hers

build don't eat don't like

eat learn like

paint play sell take

teach

cats dogs grass houses meat music photos pictures things

	Dogs don't like cats.	4	
	Teachers teach things	5	
_			
2		7	
3		8	

- Circle the correct forms.
 - ► The old people Old people often forget the things / things.
 - ▶ I like talking to *the old ladies / old ladies* who live in that house.
 - 1 The books / Books are expensive in my country.
 - 2 'Where shall I put the books / books?''On the floor.'
 - 3 Japanese is a difficult language for the English people / English people.
 - 4 The flowers / Flowers are beautiful. Thank you very much!
 - 5 The life / Life is sometimes hard.
 - 6 I don't understand the words / words of that song.
 - 7 The food / Food in this restaurant is very expensive.
 - 8 The water / Water turns into the ice / ice at 0°C.
 - 9 Why are the windows / windows open in this room?
- Here are some common sayings about men and women (not all true!). Complete the sentences with words from the box, and give your opinion.

	drivers	lost 🗸	money	things	things	think	think	understand	understand
>	Men nev	er ask th	e way whe	n they're	lost		TRI	JE / NOT TRUE	
1	Men are	better			than wo	men. TF	RUE / NOT	TRUE	
2	Women a	are more	careful wi	th		tha	an men.	TRUE / NOT TRU	JE
3	Women .			men. l	Men don't			women.	TRUE / NOT TRUE
4	Women .			that m	en will ch	ange, bu	t they do	n't. TRUE / NO	T TRUE
5	Men don	't		that	women v	will chang	ge, but th	ey do. TRUE /	NOT TRUE
6	Men pay	too mud	h for		tl	nat they v	vant. Wo	men buy	tha
	they don	't want b	ecause th	ey're chea _l	D. TRUE	NOT TRU	E		



Read the two texts and then write one yourself.

I love snow.

I like poetry, art and walking.

I don't like football, big dictionaries or hot weather.

I hate telephones, banks, vegetable soup, pop music and small dogs.

I hate writing letters.
I don't like swimming or opera.
I like children, apples, sport, television and cheese.
I love computers, history, dancing, cats, nice clothes and shopping.

.....

Choose some words from the box to complete the sentences. Use a dictionary if necessary. Don't use *the*!

art chess dancing football history music opera photography poetry politics (singular) skating swimming tennis travel

1	Hike
2	I don't like
3	I like better than
4	l love, but I hate
5	l enjoy
6	I think is interesting, but is boring.
7	is difficult.
8	I'm good at, but I'm not so good at
9	l prefer to
10	I'm not interested in
11	Most people are interested in
12	Not many people are interested in





names Mary, Africa, the USA

NAMES WITHOUT THE: PEOPLE, LANGUAGES, MOST PLACES • people: the Mary works for Dr Andrews. (NOT The Mary ... the Dr Andrews.) Prince Charles General Parker Aunt Elizabeth · languages: the Sorry, I don't speak Russian. (NOT ... the Russian.) • most place-names (for example continents, countries, states, lakes, mountains, towns, streets): the Barry's from Texas. (NOT ... the Texas.) Cuba Africa Queensland Dublin Lake Geneva **Mount Everest** Wall Street Piccadilly Circus Times Square Hyde Park

Complete the sentences with words from the boxes.

	Lake Su	perior	London	Oxford Street	Peru	Queensland 🗸	Spanish	Uncle Eric
•	Quee	nsland	is in	Australia.				
1	They sp	eak		in				
2	Here's a	postcar	d from		He's b	een swimming in		
3			is in	the centre of				
	Africa	France	Kiliman	jaro Napoleor	n Swi	tzerland		
4			was	a very small man	١.			
				•				
6	• • • • • • • • • •		is ne	xt to				

NAMES WITH THE: SOME PLACES

• deserts, rivers, seas and oceans (but not lakes!): the

the Sahara Desert the Thames the Rhine the Mediterranean the Atlantic

• plural names: the

the Netherlands the United States / the USA the Alps

• expressions with Republic/Kingdom/etc: the

the Czech Republic the United Kingdom

• large areas of the world: the

the West the Middle East the Far East

Circle the correct answers.

- lonce went on a boat on the Rhine Y Lake Victoria.
- We're going to drive right across Europe / Sahara Desert.
- 1 Ann's just come back from the Himalayas / Mount Everest.
- 2 My sister works in Netherlands / Denmark.
- 3 I'd like to learn Japanese / the Japanese.
- 4 My parents are on holiday in the South Africa / People's Republic of China.
- 5 Here's a photo of Max in USA / Trafalgar Square.
- 6 Alan's living in a small town near the Barcelona / Mediterranean.
- 7 We have friends in Ireland / Republic of Ireland.
- 8 Wales is the smallest country in the *Great Britain / United Kingdom*.
- 9 There are a lot of Spanish-speaking people in the USA / America.

BUILDINGS WITH THE

most names of buildings: the

the Hilton Hotel the Globe Theatre the Eiffel Tower

the Old Mill Restaurant the British Museum the Taj Mahal

the Great Pyramid

EXCEPTIONS

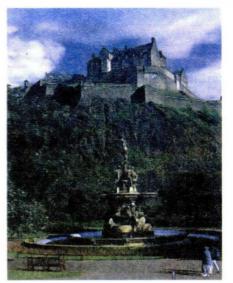
• place-name + Airport, Station, Cathedral, University, Palace, Castle, School: the

Oxford Airport **Glasgow Central Station** Exeter Cathedral Cambridge University **Didcot Junior School** Buckingham Palace

• name + possessive 's: the

St Paul's Cathedral McDonald's



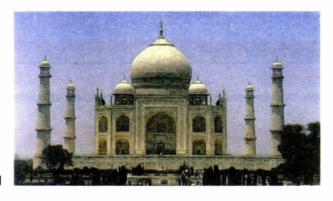






the Tower of London

the Globe Theatre





the Taj Mahal

6				
3	Put the before five of	these buildings,	and nothing (-) before three.

▶ ..the ... Taj Mahal ▶ Halloran's Restaurant 1...... Old Steak House 2....... National Gallery of Modern Art 3....... Central Museum 4...... Birmingham Airport 5...... Sheraton Hotel 6 New Theatre 7 Jenner's Hotel 8 Canterbury Cathedral

4) Put in the or nothing (-).

1 American English	2 Asia	3 Blue	e Train Restau	rant
4 Dominican Repub	olic 5 Flo	rida 6	Gobi Deser	t
7 Lake Michigan	8 Metropo	litan Museum	9 N	lississippi (River)
10 Mount Kenya	11 New Yor	k 12	North Sea	13 Paris
14 Regent Street	15 Rocky N	lountains 16.	Trafa	lgar Square
17 Egypt 18	White House	19 Whit	tehall Theatre	20 Far East

special cases in bed; after lunch; a hundred; ...

NO ARTICLE (DIE): COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITHOUT THE (1)

- · meals: the
 - to nave breaktast/lunch/dinner; before/at/after/for breakfast etc
- days, dates, public holidays, months and years: the on Tuesday(s); on September 17th; at Christmas; in July; in 2006
- this/next/last + a day or longer period of time: the this Monday; next Friday; last week; next month; this summer; last year
- Complete the sentences with words from the boxes.

	I usually just	have toas	st and col	ffee for	breakfa:	st	
1	Let's have			toget	her on		
2	We usually go	to Scotl	and at				
3	I'm working a	t home .			week	ί.	
4	It got very co	ld last					
5	I play tennis v	with Rob	on				
Г	August 23rd	Christ	mas la	ist Se	ptember	1616	this

9 The whole family always comes together at

NO ARTICLE (THE): COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITHOUT THE (2)

10 We went to California summer.

- places and activities: the
 - to/at/from school/university/college; to/in/out of church/prison/hospital/bed; at home; to/at/from work; on holiday
- transport: expressions with by: the
 - by car/bus/bicycle/plane/train/underground/boat and on foot
- Complete the sentences with words from the box.

	bed	car	church	foot	home	holiday	hospital	prison	school	university	work
1	lusua	ally stay	/ in		lä	ate at the w	eekend.				
2	Jake's	going	to		to	study bus	iness.				
3	Most	of the	people in d	our villag	ge go to .		c	n Sunday	S.		
4	l was	in			for a wee	k when I bi	roke my leg.				
5	If I go	to			. by		it tak	es half an	hour.		
6	Uncle	Georg	e comes o	ut of			in June.				
7	I'm no	ot goin	g there on			– it's	raining.				
8	'Is Kir	sten at			?' 'No	o, sorry, she	e's out.'				
9	'Are y	ou wor	king in Au	gust?' 'N	No, I'm on			,			
10	We ha	ad to le	arn Latin a	t							

A/AN (BEFORE SINGULAR COUNTABLE NOUNS) after with, without and as I did the translation with a dictionary. (NOT ... with dictionary.) You can't get in without a ticket. (NOT ... without ticket.) She's working as a bus-driver. after haven't/hasn't got We haven't got a fax. (NOT We haven't got fax.) • in exclamations with What ...! What a crazy idea! before hundred/thousand/million a million dollars a hundred days a thousand people Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in a/an. 0 What A American passport. I didn't listen to the programme; I haven't got B terrible day! 1

C garden. 2 I want a house with 3 I went to sleep on the sofa and used my coat as D hundred times. 4 I've told you E million people in our city. 5 There are about F blanket. 6 You can't work there without G radio. 7 Phil's working as H stupid idea! 8 What Ijob. J tourist guide. 9 It's hard to live without

THE: COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITH THE

the same; the country/sea/mountains; on the right/left; at the top/bottom/side/front/back; in the middle; at/to the cinema/theatre; on the radio (BUT on TV)

Her hair is the same colour as her mother's. (NOT Her hair is same colour ...)

I prefer the mountains; she prefers the sea.

Our house is the second on the right.

Write your name at the top of the page.

I don't often go to the cinema.

4	Make	sente	nces.

	Anne's house / the first / left Anne's house is the first to the left.
1	Patrick and I work / same office
2	We / going / theatre / tonight
3	My room / top / house
4	Would you like / live / country?
	We usually go / mountains / Christmas
6	Joe always sits / back / class
7	Suzie's office / right
8	I would like / live near / sea
9	Why are you driving / middle / road?
10	Please sign your name / bottom / this paper

Anne's house is the first in the left

POSSESSIVES

We don't use alan or the with my, your etc (see page 188).

your address (NOT the your address) my friend / a friend of mine (NOT a my friend)

articles: more practice

Mixed article uses. Put in a, an, the or nothing ((–).	
1 My sister lives in big flat.	11	I'm not interested in politics.
2 'Where's phone?' 'In kitchen.'	12	Can I switch on lights?
3 Andy's brother is architect.	13	vegetarians don't eat meat.
4 I'm taking 10.15 train.	14	petrol is very expensive these days.
5 Most people like animals.	15	We haven't seen sun for a week.
6 Do you play tennis?	16	Where did you put butter?
7 music's too loud – please turn it down.	17	I often listen to music when I'm driving
8 All our furniture is made of wood.	18	life is sometimes hard.
9 Carola has got beautiful brown eyes.	19	I don't like fish.
10 I don't want to be student for the next	20	Perhaps people are more interesting
five years.		than grammar.
Names and special article uses. Correct (✓) or n	ot (x)	?
1 The Canada is a big country	6	Would you like to work as teacher?
2 Have you ever seen Eiffel Tower?	7	He was in bed at 10.00
3 Andy works at Apollo Theatre	8	We live in a small town in south
4 The River Rhone runs into the Mediterranean	9	Please write your address at the top of the
Sea		page
5 Hello. I'm at the Oxford Station	10	I don't eat much for the lunch
Countable or uncountable? How many countal in these advertisements? Beautiful 1	iair	Learn to take better photos!
for OTTOR toda	IV!	For information, call 13462
for ever		To information, can 13402
We have the best	`'	YOU'LL FIND ALL
coffee	3	THE MUSIC YOU
Collec		LOVE AT OUR





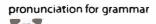


COUNTABLE:	
UNCOUNTABLE:	

4 Grammar in a text. Put in a, an, the or nothing (-).

	A TRUE STORY	
	In 1 1969, in 2 Portland, 3 Oregon, 4 man went to rob 5 bank.	
	He didn't want 6 people in 7 bank to know what was happening, so he walked up to	•
	one of 8 cashiers, wrote on 9 piece of 10 paper, 'This is 11 robbery and	
	l've got 12 gun', and showed 13 paper to 14 cashier. Then he wrote, 'Take all	
	15 money out of your drawer and put it in 16 paper bag.' 17 cashier read	
	18 message, wrote at 19 bottom of 20 paper, 'I haven't got 21 paper bag	g'
	and gave 22 paper back to 23 robber. 24 robber ran out of 25 bank.	
3	CDAMMAD AND VOCABLII ADVI materials	
	GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: materials	
	Learn some or all of the words in the box. Use a dictionary. Then write some sentences	
	to say what your clothes and other possessions are made of.	
	to say what your clothes and other possessions are made of.	
	to say what your clothes and other possessions are made of.	
	to say what your clothes and other possessions are made of. brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool	
	brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of leather and rubber. (NOT	
	brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of leather and rubber. (NOT the leather)	
	brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of leather and rubber. (NOT the leather)	
	to say what your clothes and other possessions are made of. brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of leather and rubber, (NOT the leather)	
	brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of leather and rubber. (NOT the leather)	
	brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of leather and rubber, (NOT the leather)	
	brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of leather and rubber. (NOT the leather)	
	brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of leather and rubber, (NOT the leather)	
	to say what your clothes and other possessions are made of. brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of leather and rubber. (NOT the teather)	
	to say what your clothes and other possessions are made of. brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of leather and rubber. (NOT the leather)	
	to say what your clothes and other possessions are made of. brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of leather and rubber. (NOT the leather)	
	to say what your clothes and other possessions are made of. brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of leather and rubber, (NOT the leather) Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find the names of the following in Br	
	to say what your clothes and other possessions are made of. brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of leather and rubber. (NOT the leather) Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find the names of the following in Br Australia, Canada or the USA. Write them using articles correctly.	itain,
	brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of leather and rubber. (NOT the leather) Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find the names of the following in Br Australia, Canada or the USA. Write them using articles correctly. 1 a river	itain,
	brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of Leather and rubber. (NOT the Leather) Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find the names of the following in Br Australia, Canada or the USA. Write them using articles correctly. 1 a river	itain,
	brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of leather and rubber. (NOT the leather) Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find the names of the following in Br Australia, Canada or the USA. Write them using articles correctly. 1 a river 2 a lake 3 a mountain	itain,
60	brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of leather and rubber. (NOT the leather) Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find the names of the following in Br Australia, Canada or the USA. Write them using articles correctly. 1 a river 2 a lake 3 a mountain 4 a part of the country	itain,
60	brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of Leather and rubber, (NOT	itain,
60	brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of Leather and rubber. (NOT	itain,
6	brick cotton china diamond glass gold leather metal paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool My shoes are made of Leather and rubber, (NOT	itain,

10 a museum



articles: revision test

	Put in <i>a</i> or <i>an</i> .										
	1 address				9 one-pound coin						
	2 student			old woma	an 10uncle						
	3 English student	7	•••••								
4	4university student	8		hour's les	son						
2	Countable or uncountable? Put i	n a	or noth	ing (-).							
	1 I don't like beer.			5	I prefer dogs to cats.						
	Peter is very good friend.				6 My flat has got very small kitchen.						
	Does your car use petrol ordiesel?Do you listen to music while you're studying?				7 I need new jeans.						
					8 Nadia was wearing blue dress.9 They live in small town.						
					I never have milk in tea.						
8	Put in <i>a, an, the</i> or nothing (–).										
	Rob has got very long ha	ir.		12	12 John's very interested in science.						
	2 books are very expensive.				I liked everything in the film except						
	3 life can be difficult.				music.						
	Ayesha's leaving on 10.30 plane.				14 Why did you put shoe in fridge						
	5 Do you drink beer?				15 These socks are made of silk.						
	5 'Where's toilet?' 'At the to	o q	f	16	I watch football, but I don't play it.						
	stairs.'	•			I'd like to be student again.						
-	7 I like watching sport on TV.				My mother thinks animals are nicer						
8					than people.						
9	It's hot in here. Can I open			19	children don't usually like						
	She stood at her door for a long time looking at				vegetables.						
	moon.				Andy lives in houseboat.						
1	Most people like children	۱.									
0	Correct the mistakes or write 'Co	rre	ct'.								
100	I live in the France. France										
	I was born in London Correct.										
	Can I speak to the Professor Anderson?										
	2 Greek is a difficult language										
	3 We've just been to Czech Republic										
	5 She's from Texas										
	5 Carol has just spent two months in hospital.										
8	You can't go there without passport.										
9											
10					•••						

SECTION 12 determiners

grammar summary

this, that, these, those some, any, no enough all, each, every, both, either, neither much, many, a little, a few more, most a lot, lots (a/an, the) (my, your etc)

Determiners are words that come at the beginning of noun phrases, before adjectives.

Determiners help to show which or how many people/things we are talking about.

this old coat some strange ideas all English words enough people

Most determiners are explained and practised in this section. A/An and the have a separate section on pages 151–166. My, your etc are explained together with pronouns on pages 188–189.

Somebody, anything, nowhere etc are included here. These are not determiners, but it is more convenient to deal with them in this section.









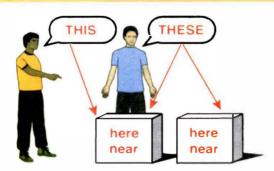


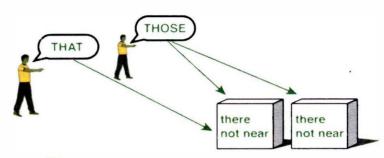




this, that, these and those

We can use this and these to talk about things that are here, near to us. We can use that and those to talk about things that are there, not near.





Put in this or these.

	,
	Do you like dress?
1	Do you like shoes?
2	cat sleeps all day.
3	tomatoes are not very good
4	letters are for you.
5	I don't understand word.

Put in that or those.

	Ann lives inthat house over there.
1	Who are people?
2	Could you pass me papers?
3	I don't think train is ours.
4	glasses look very nice.
5	Why is she running after man?

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: cutlery and crockery

Use the words in the box to make ten or more sentences about the colours of the things in the picture. Use a dictionary if necessary.

cup	plate	saucer	knife 🗸	fork	spoon	glass	napkin	jug	bowl		
This k	nife is	black. Th	ose kniv	es are	silver.		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •			 	
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •			•••••					•••••	 	•••••
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • •			• • • • • • • • • •				• • • • • • • • •		 •	



www.irLanguage.com

We can use *this* and *these* to talk about things that are happening now or starting now. We can use *that* and *those* to talk about things that are finished.

I like this music. Listen to these sentences.

That lesson was boring. Did you answer those letters yesterday?

4

Circle the correct answer.

- Do / Did you like that film?
- 1 I'm enjoying / I enjoyed these lessons.
- 2 This game was / will be hard.
- 3 These / Those potatoes weren't very nice.
- 4 That holiday is / was great!
- 5 Do you remember this / that funny hotel in France?
- 6 May I have this / that dance with you?
- 7 I'm going to enjoy this / that meal.
- 8 That political speech is / was really stupid.
- 9 Did you understand this / that explanation?
- 10 Listen to this / that letter from Karen.

We can use this, that, these and those without nouns.

I don't like this. Look at these. Who said that? Those are pretty.

We can use this to introduce people, and to introduce ourselves on the telephone.

This is my friend Carla. This is Alex. Can I speak to Fred?

6

Put in this, that, these or those.

I don't like living in this

	r don't like living in Country.
1	Could you bring box to me, please?
2	Why did you say?
3	is Peter – is Mary at home?
4	Who are people over there?
5	Listen – you'll like story.
6	Wait – I can't walk fast in shoes.
7	' is my sister Helen.' 'How do you do?'
8	was a wonderful meal – thanks.
9	I'm not enjoying conversation.
10	Do you remember people that we met in Greece?
11	Let's leave party.
12	The meal was nice, but I didn't like wine much.
13	Could you take letters to the post office?
14	I thought Geoff looked silly in shorts.
15	Is your mother coming out of the police station?
16	Where are you? I can't see very well with glasses.
17	We're going to win match. You wait and see.
18	What are birds on the roof?
19	I can't eat apple – it's too hard.
20	I'll never forget ten days with Barbara.



some and any I need some sugar. Have you got any?







She hasn't got any problems.

We use some and any, not a/an, with uncountable and plural nouns.

They mean 'a limited number or quantity'.

We use *some* in affirmative (+) sentences.

We use any in negative () sentences, and in most questions.

I'd like some water. Here are some flowers for you.

I haven't got any money. There aren't any trains today.

Have you got any sugar? Do you speak any other languages?

Circle the correct answers.

- I'd like some ' any help.
- 1 There aren't some / any letters for you.
- 2 Have you got some / any brothers or sisters?
- 3 We need some / any more milk.
- 4 She's got some / any interesting friends.
- 5 Are there some / any restaurants near here?
- 6 I'm having some/any problems with my car.
- 7 I didn't have some / any breakfast today.
- 8 He hasn't done some / any work for ten years.
- 9 Do you know some / any Americans?
- Complete the sentences with any and words from the box.

	English newspapers	games	foreign languages	help 🗸	more to drink	sleep
•	Harriet likes to do thir	ngs by her	self: she doesn't want	any he	الع.	
1	No, I'm not thirsty – I o	don't want				
2	Joe doesn't speak					
3	Our team hasn't won			this	year.	
4	I didn't get		last r	ight.		
5	I couldn't find		at	the shop		

We use some in questions which expect the answer'Yes' – for example offers or requests.

Would you like some more coffee? Could I have some bread?

33)	Write	senten	ices wi	th some	

1	(Ask for coffee) Could I have
2	(Offer bread) Would you like

3 (Offer rice)

4 (Ask for tomatoes)

5 (Offer more potatoes)

6 (Ask for more milk)

We use any with words like never, without or hardly	(= 'almost not'), which have negative meanings.					
They never give me any help. I got there without a	any difficulty. You made hardly any mistakes.					
Put the beginnings and ends together.						
0 I finished the work without	A any rain					
1 I was tired, so I went to bed without	B some rain, at last					
2 I'm going to do	Cany work in the garden					
3 Yesterday we had	D some work in the house					
4 In July we hardly had	E any supper					
5 She never does	F some supper					
6 You're hungry. I'll make you	G any help					
We can use some and any without nouns if the mea 'Can you lend me some money?' 'Sorry, I haven't got a						
Complete the answers with words from the						
buy good got ✓ more ✓ put tom	orrow want you					
► 'How many children has he got?' 'He hasn'tgot any'						
This is wonderful soup.' 'Have						
1 'How much did the flowers cost?' 'I didn't						
2 'We need light bulbs.' 'I'll get						
3 'Where's the sugar?' 'There's	in front of					

NOTE: **Any** is used in negative sentences, but is **not negative**. **Not** ... **any** (or **no** – see page 114) is negative. Sorry, I haven't got **any** time I I've got no time. (NOT Sorry, I've got any time.)

o Complete the sentences with negative past-tense verbs. Use words from the box.

6 'The car needs oil.' 'But I've just in.'

	3		
•	I didn'tget any letters today.	3	The hotel any free rooms.
1	There any fruit in the shops.	4	The policeman me any questions.
2	John any work at university.	5	We any open petrol stations.

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: possessions

Have you got any of the things in the box? Use a dictionary if necessary. Write some sentences with *some* or *any*.

aspirins	ballpoint per	ns dollar	s jewe	ellery	keys	love letters	
make-up	red shoes	stamps	string	ties	white	socks	
I've got so	me ballpoint	pens.	1 have	n't got	anyr	ed shoes.	-

somebody, anything, nowhere, ...

somebody someone something somewhere anybody anyone anything anywhere nobody nothina nowhere everybody everyone everything everywhere no one Somebody and someone mean the same; so do anybody and anyone etc. The difference between somebody etc and anybody etc is the same as the difference between some and any (see pages 170-171). For every, see page 179. Somebody telephoned for you. Has **anybody** seen my keys? She didn't speak to anyone. I've got something for you. Do you want **anything** from the shops? He lives **somewhere** in London. **Nothing** happened. She never goes anywhere. Everyone knew that. Complete the words. 7 'Where did you go at the weekend?' 1 'What did you say?' 'No......where - we stayed at home.' 2 I haven't seen Amywhere. 8 I want to tell you some..... 3 There'sone at the door. 9 Every..... in my family has blue eyes. 4 Can I do any..... to help? 10 I don't knowbody who plays rugby. 5 You can find Coca-Cola every..... 11 Every..... in this shop is expensive. 6 No..... understands me. 12 I want to livewhere warm. These are sentences from real conversations. Can you complete them with somebody, anything etc? 5 Ten people in one room with no bath, no 1 Does want to speak about that? 2 The poor woman has to go. water, 3 It doesn't cost 6 What can you buy for a woman who has 4 said 'thank you': not one man.? After nobody/no one, everybody/everyone, everything and nothing we use singular verbs. Everybody knows. (NOT Everybody know.) Everything is OK. Nothing happens here. Put in verbs from the box. Use singular forms. agree happen have know 1 Nobody where she lives. 4 everybody here? 2 Everything to me. 5 everybody got a drink? 3 Everything interesting to somebody. 6 No one with me. One negative word (like nothing, never, not) is normally enough (see page 115). She never says anything. (NOT She never says nothing. OR She doesn't never ...) Correct (\checkmark) or not (x)? 1 We couldn't find a hotel nowhere. 6 Don't say nothing to Alan about Olivia. 2 Does anybody know Penny's phone 7 Everybody needs help sometimes. number? 8 Do anybody want another drink?

Note the difference between no one and none. No one means 'nobody'; none means 'not any'.

9 Anybody doesn't understand me.

10 I don't never want to take nothing from

nobody.

No one can help me. I wanted some plums, but there were **none** in the shop.

3 Can I ask you something?

4 Nobody want to go home.

5 I don't want something, thank you.

much and many How much milk? How many languages?

We use much with singular (uncountable) nouns, and many with plurals.

Do you listen to much music? Do you go to many concerts?

Put in much or many.

- ▶ She doesn't speak English.
- She doesn't buy clothes.
- 1 I haven't got time.
- 2 Do you play football?
- 3 There aren't people here.
- 4 Are there Americans in your company?
- 5 We don't have rain in summer.
- 6 I don't eat meat.
- 7 Have you travelled to countries?
- 8 We don't watch films.
- 9 Was there traffic on the road?
- 10 Not tourists visit our town.
- 11 Do you know songs?
- 12 She doesn't have trouble with English.
- 13 There aren't birds in the garden.
- 14 She doesn't get money in her new job.
- 15 There hasn't been rain this year.

So many worlds, so much to do, so little done.

(Alfred Lord Tennyson)

We use how much with singular (uncountable) nouns, and how many with plurals.

How much milk do you want? How many languages are there in the world?

Write the questions. Do you know the answers? (See the bottom of the page.)

	plays / Shakespeare / write How many plays did Shakespeare write?
1	symphonies / Beethoven / write
	cents / in a dollar are there are there
	kilometres / in a mile
	states / in the USA
	blood / in a person's body is there
	air / we breathe / every minute
	points / you get / for a try in rugby union
	food / an elephant / eat every day

We can use much and many without nouns if the meaning is clear.

'Have you got any money?' 'Not much.' 'How many people were there?' 'Not many.'

Much and **many** are used mostly in **questions** and **negatives**. They are unusual in spoken affirmative (+) sentences. In an informal style, we prefer expressions like **a lot of** (see page 174).

'Do you get much snow in winter?' 'Not much, but we get a lot of rain.' (NOT ... we get much rain.)
'Have you got many English friends?' 'No, I haven't got many English friends. But I've got a lot of American friends.'
(NOT USUALLY ... 'I've got many American friends.)

Answers to Ex 2: A thirty-seven 1 nine 2 a hundred kilos 6 of fittes 6 of litres 7 hirty-seven 1 nine 2 a hundred kilos

a lot of and lots of

A lot of and lots of are common in an informal style. They mean the same. He's got lots of money and lots of friends. I haven't got a lot of time just now. We can use both expressions before singular (uncountable) or plural nouns. • a lot of / lots of + singular subject: singular verb A lot of his work is good. Lots of his work is good. (NOT Lots of his work are good.) a lot of / lots of + plural subject: plural verb A lot of his ideas are good. (NOT A lot of his ideas is good.) Lots of his ideas are good. If we use a lot or lots without a noun, we don't use of. 'Have you got a lot of work?' 'Yes, a lot.' (NOT Yes, a lot of.) Circle the correct answer. 1 Lots of people have / has computers now. 5 A lot of my friends work/works in London. 6 'Any letters for me?' 'A lot / A lot of.' 2 There is / are lots of cinemas near here. 3 Lots of snow has / have fallen today. 7 A lot of things need / needs to change. 4 'Problems?' 'Yes, a lot / a lot of.' 8 There is / are lots of food in the fridge. not much hair not many teeth In affirmative (+) sentences in conversation, a lot of and lots of are more natural than much/many (see page 173). We eat a lot of vegetables. (NOT We eat many vegetables.) This car uses lots of petrol. (NOT This car uses much petrol.) a lot of / lots of hair a lot of / lots of teeth Plenty of can be used in the same way as a lot of / lots of. Put in plenty of with words from the box. eggs food ideas paint 🗸 patience time warm clothes water What do you need: if you're painting a big house? Plenty of paint 4 if you're in the Arctic? 1 if you're very hungry? 5 if you're making a big omelette? 2 if you've got a lot of work? 6 if you're crossing the desert? GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: towns Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then write four sentences about a town, using a lot of / lots of / plenty / not much / not many. industry libraries bookshops cinemas hotels markets nightlife restaurants theatres traffic parks In Oxford there are a lot of museums; there is not much industry.

a little and a few a little English; a few words

We use a little with singular (uncountable) nouns, and a few with plurals.

If you're hungry, we've got a little soup and a few tomatoes.

Put in a little or a few.

1	I know English.	6	Could I have more coffee?
2	I speak words of Spanish.	7	I'd like to ask you questions.
3	I'll be on holiday in days.	8	I'm having trouble with the police.
4	Can you give me help?	9	The soup needs more salt.
5	Grace will be ready in minutes.	10	I'm going away for weeks.

Little and few (without a) have a rather negative () meaning (like not much/many).

A little and a few have a more positive () meaning (like some).

We've got a little food in the house if you're hungry. (='some, better than nothing')
There was little food in the house, so we went to a restaurant. (='not much, not enough')
His lesson was very difficult, but a few students understood it. (='more than I expected')
His lesson was so difficult that few students understood it. (='not many, hardly any')

Circle the correct answer.

- I have little a little time to read newspapers and no time at all to read books.
- 1 Come about 8 o'clock; I'll have little / a little time then.
- 2 There was little / a little water on the mountain, and we all got very thirsty.
- 3 Foreign languages are difficult, and few / a few people learn them perfectly.
- 4 I'm going to Scotland with few / a few friends next week.
- 5 I've brought you few / a few flowers.
- 6 Life is very hard in the Arctic, so few / a few people live there.
- 7 She was a difficult woman, and she had few / a few friends.
- 8 'Would you like something to drink?' 'Little / A little water, please.'

Little and few are rather formal; in conversation we use not much/many or only a little/few.

There wasn't much food in the house. OR There was only a little food in the house. The lesson was so difficult that not many / only a few students understood it.

Make these sentences more conversational.

I speak little English. Only speak a little English OR I don't speak much English.
There was little room on the bus.
Few people learn foreign languages perfectly.
She has few friends.
We get little rain here in summer.
This car uses little petrol.
There are few flowers in the garden.
Our town gets few tourists.
We have little time to catch the train.

We can use (a) little and (a) few without nouns if the meaning is clear.

'Have you got any money?' 'A little.' 'Did you buy any clothes?' 'A few.'

enough money; fast enough

We put enough before nouns.

Have you got enough money for the bus?

There aren't enough plates for everybody.



Look at the pictures and complete the descriptions.



1 not food



2 strings



3 seats



Use enough with words from the box to complete the sentences.

L	buses 🗸	chairs	girls	money	salt	time	work	
>	You need	d a car in o	our villa	ge, becaus	e there	aren't	enough	buse
1	Have you	got				to finish	the wor	k?
2	There we	re plenty	of boys	at the par	tv. but	not		

- 3 We couldn't sit down because there weren't
- 4 I won't pass the exam because I haven't done
- 5 I've got just for a ticket to America.
- 6 This soup isn't very nice. There's not in it.

We put enough after adjectives and adverbs.

This room isn't big enough. (NOT ... enough big)

You're not walking fast enough.

3 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: common adjectives

Check the words in the box with a dictionary if necessary. Then complete the list with not ... enough.

bright clear comfortable deep easy fresh interesting ✓ loud

POSSIBLE PROBLEMS a book not interesting enough a n exercise a an explanation a chair a lamp 7 a swimming pool

4 Put *enough* with each word.

	old old enough				
	people enough people	4	often	8	help
1	warm	5	quiet	9	sweet
2	early	6	children	10	young

We can use enough without a noun if the meaning is clear.

'More coffee?' 'No, thanks. I've got enough.'

too, too much/many and not enough



We use *too* with adjectives and adverbs. We use *too much/many* with nouns. These give the opposite meaning to 'not enough'.

This coffee's too cold. (NOT ... too much cold ...)
I've got too much work and not enough time.

He drives too fast. You ask too many questions.





not hot enough too hot

Put in too, too much or too many.

1	old	6 work
2	trouble	7hot
3	problems	8 students
4	money	9 cars
5	ill	10 difficult

2 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: common adjectives

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then change the expressions.

1	•	•	expensive				•	_	_				
L	narrow	short	slow 🗸	soft	tall	thick	thin	wet	WIG	le			
			too slo					ot hard	enou	ıgh =	 	 	
	too slow	=not	fast enou	igh			5 to	oo narro	ow =		 	 	
1	not high	enough	=				6 to	оо ехре	ensive	=	 	 	
2	not tall e	enough =	·				7 to	oo dry =	=		 	 	
3	not heav	v enoug	h =				8 to	on thick	(=				

3 A man is going walking in the mountains for three days. Look at the things that he is taking and give your opinion, using (not) enough or too much/many. Use a dictionary if necessary.

HE IS TAKING		YOUR OPINION
1 packet of soup		not enough soup
1 camera		enough cameras
8 maps		too many maps
5 pairs of socks	1	
1 pair of boots	2	***************************************
3 pocket torches	3	***************************************
1 tube of sun-cream	4	
2 waterproof jackets	5	
2 pairs of sunglasses	6	
10 kg of bread	7	
2 kg of cheese	8	
100 cl of water	9	
1 orange	10	
1 bar of chocolate	11	
1 small bar of soap	12	***************************************
3 toothbrushes	13	





all all my friends are here; my friends are all here

	an go with a noun or wit			
All th	<mark>ne trains</mark> stop at Cardiff. ne courses begin on Mona i <mark>rds</mark> lay eggs. Birds a li	lay. The cou	stop at Cardiff. rses all begin on Monday. All my clothes need cleanin	ng. My clothes all need cleaning.
1 2 3 4 5 6	The children all went he All these coats cost the All languages have graded the people all voted for All my friends live in Lo These houses all need all those shops belong	lingMy fandays	onservatives.	S.
1 be	the word order when a efore one-word verbs be guides all speak Germa	A section	not it	We all got up late.
	and the second supplied to the second		a combination of the second street, and the second second	vve all got aplate.
Th	ter auxiliary verbs (will, l	h <mark>ave, can etc) ar</mark> nd Spanish. (NO °	nd after <i>are</i> and were. Tall can understand Spanish.)	us of Buppess Build in views of Ca.
Th Th	ter auxiliary verbs (will, leguides can all understante visitors have all arrived. The with the verb. Cars break down some Mark's friends have gore The offices close at weet The lessons will start or These children can swird Our windows are dirty. Sorry, the tickets have go We went to New York for The shops will be open We stopped for lunch a These watches are took.	times	nd after are and were. T all can understand Spanish:) e arrived:) We were all tired. all break down sometimes ark's friends have all gone	(NOT We all were tired.)
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 We d	ter auxiliary verbs (will, le guides can all understante visitors have all arrived. The with the verb. Cars break down some Mark's friends have gore The offices close at weet The lessons will start or These children can swire Our windows are dirty. Sorry, the tickets have governed we stopped for lunch at These watches are too of The lights have gone gone of the lights have gone gone gone gone gone gone gone gon	times	nd after are and were. T all can understand Spanish.) e arrived.) We were all tired. all break down sometimes ark's friends have all gone	(NOT We all were tired.) home.
1 2 P 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 We d	ter auxiliary verbs (will, le guides can all understante visitors have all arrived. The with the verb. Cars break down some Mark's friends have gore The offices close at weet The lessons will start or These children can swire Our windows are dirty. Sorry, the tickets have governed we stopped for lunch at These watches are too of The lights have gone gone of the lights have gone gone gone gone gone gone gone gon	times	nd after are and were. T all can understand Spanish:) e arrived:) We were all tired. all break down sometimes ark's friends have all gone	(NOT We all were tired.) home.

same way as the Ritz Hotel.

(Judge Sturgess)

equal in dignity and rights.

(Universal Declaration of Human Rights)

all and every; each

We use every with singular not	ins and verbs. Compare:	
All people are interesting. All teachers make mistakes.	Every person is interest Every teacher makes m	ing. (NOT Every person are) iistakes.
We can use other determiners	the, my, this etc) after all, b	out not after <i>every</i> . Compare:
All the shops were closed.	Every shop was closed.	(NOT Every the shop)
Rewrite the sentences w		
	•	
0 0		
	_	
_		
10 All the roads were closed		
Each and every are similar. We	use each for two or more ,	but we use <i>every</i> for three or more.
She had a bag in each hand. (NC		e had a ring on each/every finger.
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	a mad a mig on cas in coar , imgen
Can you change each to	every in these sentence	s?
He's got six earrings in ea	ch ear. No.	
I work each day except S	unday. Yes every	day except Sunday.
	•	
		nd in each city.
		different way.
o, peremo ere omenge, a		
6 Each house in this street	looks the same	
o zacimouse in triis street	ooks the same.	
hand the left		
	ery aay (= on Mondays, Tu	esdays, Wednesdays etc') and <i>all day</i>
(='from morning to night').		±45 ,
The restaurant is open all day,	every day except Sunday.	
'Behind every successful ma	an 🗼	'Behind every successful man stands a
is a good woman.' (Tradition		surprised mother-in-law.' (Hubert Humphrey)
	n-man	
No. of the last of		
'Behind every successful wo	oman stands a good	'Behind every successful man is a woman,

man, looking rather confused.' (E Stabetsi)

behind her is his wife.' (Groucho Marx)

both, either and neither

We use both, either and neither to talk about two people or things. Both (come and the other') has a plural noun. Either (come or the other') has a singular noun. Neither (not either, not one and not the other') has a singular noun. 'Are you free on Monday or Wednesday?' 'I'm free on both days.'
'Which day is better for you?' 'Either day is OK.'
'About four o'clock?' 'No, sorry, I'm not free on either afternoon.'
'What about Thursday or Saturday, then?' 'No, neither day is any good.'
Put in both, either or neither.
1 children are very tall.
2 I'm busy on afternoons.
3 'Which room can I have?' 'You can have room rooms have a view of the sea
4 students tried the exam, but student passed.
5 I'm lucky – I can write with hand.
6 It's very heavy: use hands to carry it.
7 coat will look good on you. Why don't you buy one of them?
8 I don't like coat. And coats are very expensive.
9 'Do you want your holiday in July or August?' ' month will be fine.'
10 my brothers studied medicine, but brother works as a doctor.
11 I paid for tickets – Ann's and mine.
12 'What do precipitate and recursion mean?' 'I don't know word.'
QRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things that come in twos Make sure you know all these words. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then complete the sentences, using both.
ankle ✓ direction earring end eye knee parent sex side sock team

	ankie 🗸	airection	earring	ena	eye	knee	parent	sex	siae	SOCK	team
•	I hurt	oth ankles		pla	ying fo	otball.					
1	Cars are p	oarked on				of the	road.				
2		her		are	doctors						
3	Traffic on	the road wa	as very slov	v in							
4			ar	e playir	ng really	badly.					
5	She hurt				skiing.						
6	I've lost .		my		– h	ave you	seen them	anywł	nere?		
7	Police we	ere stopping	cars at			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	of the	bridge.			
8	That child	d has got ho	les in		of h	is					
9	I need ne	w glasses. B	oth				are gettin	g wors	e.		
10	His shop	sells clothes	for								

determiners and of most people; most of us

We use **determiners** (some, any, much, many, more, most, few, enough etc) with of before **other determiners** (the, this, my etc) and before personal pronouns (it, us etc).

DETERMINER + OF	DETERMINER WITHOUT OF
before the: some of the people here	some people (NOT some of people)
before this etc: too many of those books	too many books l've got too many.
• before my etc: a few of our friends	a few friends She has a few.
• before it, us etc: enough of it most of them	enough milk most students

Change the expressions.

	some houses (those) some of those houses	6	most mistakes (these)
1	not much milk (<i>the</i>)	7	too many students (the)
2	any friends (<i>my</i>)	8	more potatoes (those)
3	enough meat (that)	9	not much money (<i>my</i>)
			not enough work (his)
5	a few ideas (her)		

Put in of or nothing (-).

rı	at in or or nothing (-).		
	Some people don't like her.	6	There wasn't enough food for everybody.
	Some	7	I didn't have much time to talk to her.
1	Can you lend me some more money?	8	A few us want to change things.
2	I've lost some the addresses.	9	I spend a lot my time in Scotland.
3	I don't like many his books.	10	We haven't got any more eggs.
4	She knows a few those people.	11	I've got some bread, but not much
5	'Do you like jazz singers?' 'Some	12	She didn't understand much it.

Note the difference between most people/things (in general) and most of the people/things (particular ones).

Most people like dancing. You can pay by credit card in most shops. Most of the people at the party were dancing.

Most of the shops here are open on Sundays.

But in most or most of the.

1	people talk to themselves.
2	I know people in our village.
3	people on the bus had no tickets.
4	people like music.
5	cars are expensive.
6	There are students in houses in this street.
7	cats eat fish.
8	Our cat eats things: fish, meat, biscuits, cheese,
9	l understand words in this book.
Λ	She's very friendly: she gets on well with

NOTE: we often drop of after all and both. After a lot / lots / plenty we always use of with a noun or pronoun (see page 174).

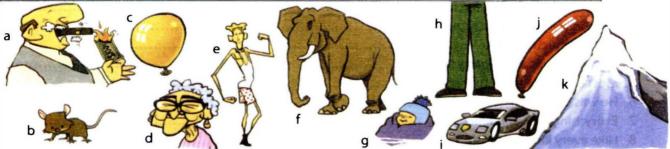
All (of) my friends. Both (of) her parents. a lot of problems, (NOT a lot problems)

determiners: more practice

U D	Demonstratives; some and any. Put in the correct forms.						
	Have you got shampoo? (some / any)						
1	Listen to						
2	I didn't like film yesterday. (this / that)						
3	Who are people in John's car? (these / those)						
4	' is my friend Beth.' 'How do you do?	'(this / that)					
5	'Look at earrings.' 'Where?' 'On my e	ears, of course!' (these / those)					
6							
7							
8							
9	'What are you thinking about?' '' (Any						
10	We got to London any difficulty. (wi	th / without)					
2 M	lixed determiners. Put in all, each, every, everyb	body, everything, both, either or neither.					
1	Has student arrived?	6 'Tea or coffee?''No,, thanks.'					
2	Hold the string at end.	7 I can write with hand.					
3	Tell me	8 I can write with hands.					
4	She stayed in bed day yesterday.	9 Do you know here?					
5	We're open day except Tuesday.	10 Not animals can swim.					
6							
	lixed determiners. Circle the correct forms.						
	Can I give you my answer tomorrow? I need little / a						
2	His ideas are so difficult that few / a few people und						
3	There were only a little / a few people at the meeting	g.					
4	I'd like to ask you <i>few / a few</i> questions, if I may.						
5	Too much work, too little / few time.						
6	James always has much / lots of money.						
7	Were there much / many girls at the party?						
8	A lot of my friends think / thinks I'm wrong.						
	Am I driving too / too much fast?						
10	Are those shoes big enough / enough big?						
0	fulth determinent Dut in the source forms						
	f with determiners. Put in the correct forms.						
	the children enjoyed t						
	people like animals. (/						
	us are meeting at Joe	-					
	Have you seen						
	I've invited my friends	_					
6		c, but not it.					
	(most / most of / all / all of)						
7	, ,						
8	You ask questions. (to						
9	'How many books have you got to read?'						
10	I don't like these books. (many / many of)						

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: common adjectives with somebody etc. Check that you know all the adjectives in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

fast high hot intelligent interesting old rich bia boring red thin round small sour 🗸 sweet tall useful useless young warm



Now find these in the picture. Write the letters.

something high
something big
something big
something small
somebody old
somebody rich

7 somebody young

Now write your own examples for:

	·		
	something soura lemon	5	somebody intelligent
1	somewhere very hot	6	something interesting
2	somewhere warm	7	something useless
3	something sweet	8	something boring
4	something useful	9	somebody nice

6 Grammar in a text. Circle the correct forms.

SOME STATISTICS

3 something red

Those who always know better: perhaps half us / half of us

Those who are not sure: most the rest / most of the rest.

Those who don't know how to be bad: very few / few of.

Those who think they are important: a lot / a lot of.

Those who are always afraid of someone or something: most us / most of us.

Those who are glad to help, if it doesn't take too long: nearly half / half of.

Those who can be happy: some us / some of us, not very many.

Those who are kind alone but cruel in crowds: half or more.

Those who will kill you if they think they have to: it's best not to know how many / how many of.

Those who only take from life and give nothing: maybe 30% (I wish I were wrong).

Those who are lost and ill in the dark: nearly everybody, sooner or later.

Those who are good: a lot /a lot of.

Those who are good and understanding: hardly anybody.

Those that we should feel sorry for: almost everybody.

Those who are dead at the end: all us / all of us.

adapted from a poem by Wisława Szymborska

Internet exercise: checking correctness. Use a search engine (e.g. Google).

everybody is"	"everybody are"
everything are"	"everything is"
most people"	"most of people"

determiners: revision test

	orrect the mistakes and rewrite the sentences.
	Would you like little more coffee? Would you like a little more coffee?
1	He spoke fast, but I understood all.
2	I'm hungry, but there isn't nothing to eat.
3	She has much money.
4	A lot of us was at the party last night.
5	Most of people think I'm right.
6	He was carrying a heavy bag in every hand.
7	Everything are very difficult.
8	I like every kinds of music.
9	I think you're driving too much fast.
10	If everybody are ready, we can go.
-	
2) (Ci	rcle the correct forms.
1	I'm enjoying this / that game.
2	This / That lesson was really hard.
3	I've had a postcard from these / those people we met in America.
4	What's this / that thing in the tree over there?
5	Hello. This / That is Mike. Can I speak to Anna?
6	There's somebody / anybody on the phone for you.
7	I need / I don't need some help.
8	Could I have some / any more coffee?
9	Anna hardly said <i>anything / nothing</i> all evening.
10	We never go somewhere / anywhere interesting.
D .	ut in the correct forms.
	Let me tell you my problems. (all / every / each)
	everybody ready to leave? (Is /Are)
	her parents are doctors. (Either / Each / Both)
	I pronounced word separately, very slowly. (all / each / both)
5	Not bird can fly. (all / every / either)
6	'Is there anything to drink?' 'There's orange juice.' (a little / a few / any)
7	There was to do in the town, so we stayed at home most evenings. (a little / little / anything)
8	It's nice to spend time alone, sometimes. (a little / a little of / little of)
9	I've been to Scotland times. (a little / a few / a little of / a few of)
10	'Do you speak Russian?' '' (A little / A little of / A few / A few of)
11	Children ask questions. (lots / lots of / much / many)
12	I don't go to parties. (a lot / many / many of)
13	I've got problems. (too / too much / too many / too many of)
14	She didn't eat breakfast. (much / many / many of)
15	There lots of time before the shop closes. (is / are)
16	There's a pub at end of our street. (each / every / all / both)
17	She thinks she knows (all / all of / everything)
18	I practise karate day except Tuesday. (all / either / every)
19	'Which car can I have?' 'Sorry car is free.' (neither / either / any / both)

20 I'd like sweet. (something / something of)

SECTION 13 personal pronouns; possessives

grammar summary

I, you, he, she, it, we, you, they me, you, him, her, it, us, you, them my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their mine, yours, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves each other

We use pronouns when it is not necessary, or not possible, to use a more exact noun phrase.

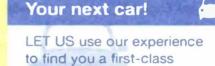
Mrs Parker phoned. She said ... (The speaker uses the personal pronoun she because it is not necessary to repeat Mrs Parker.)

Ann talks to herself all the time. (It is unnecessary to repeat Ann.)

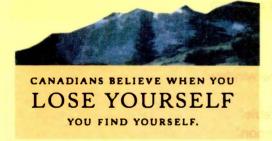
In this section we explain **personal pronouns** (*I, me, you* etc.); **possessives** (*my, your* etc and *mine, yours* etc.); **reflexive pronouns** (*myself, yourself* etc.); and **each other**.

Indefinite pronouns (somebody, anything etc) are explained in Section 12, together with some and any. Relative pronouns (who, which etc) are explained in Section 19.

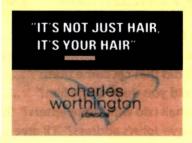




second-hand car









FIND YOURSELF IN ONE BITE luxury **Belgian** chocolates



a new idea in banking:
it's your money, not ours



personal pronouns: I and me etc

SUBJECTS	1	you	he	she	it	we	you	they
OTHER USES	me	you	him	her	it	us	you	them
SUBJECTS: I, HE	ETC		I like Mary.	He need:	shelp. 7	hey want you	ur address.	
OBJECTS: ME, H	IIM ETC		Mary doesn't	like me.	Help him.	Don't tel	l them anyth	ing.
AFTER PREPOSI	TIONS: A	AE, HIM ETC	Look at me.	Why is	lane <mark>with</mark> hi	im? Is tha	t for us?	
AFTERBE: ME, I	HIM ETC		'Who's there?	' 'It's me.' (I	NOT 'lam.' O	R 'lt is l.')	'Is that Joe?'	'Yes, that's him.'
INFORMAL ANS	WERS: M	IE, HIM ETC	'Who said the	at?' 'Me.'	'I'm tired.'	'Me too.'		

- Circle the correct answer.
 - ► I / Me don't understand.
 - 1 'Who said that?' 'It was she / her.'
 - 2 Tell we / us your address.
 - 3 This isn't for you, it's for he/him.
 - 4 I don't think they / them are here today.
- 5 'Where's your brother?' 'That's *he / him* over there.'
- 6 Where are the children? Can you see *they/them*?
- 7 Ask she/her why she/her is crying.
- Put in he, him, she, her, they or them.
 - 1 'Does your father speak English?' '..... understands a little.'
 - 2 'I'm seeing Lucy and Pete on Tuesday.' 'Oh, give my love.'
 - 3 'Mr Carter's here.' 'Ask to wait downstairs.'
 - 4 Where are your friends?'re very late.
 - 5 'Have you spoken to Mrs Lewis?' 'Not yet. I'm going to speak to this evening.'
 - 6 'Where's Ann?' '.....'s in Germany all this week.'

We use it, they and them for things, including (usually) countries and animals.

I like Scotland, but it's cold in winter. She sold her horse because it cost too much.

- Put in it, they or them.
 - 1 'Where are my keys?' '.....'re on that chair.'
 - 2 'Where did that cat come from?' '...... came in through the window.'
 - 3 'What did you think of the film?' '.....'s not very good.'
 - 4 'What shall I do with these letters?' 'Just put on the table.'
 - 5 'Can I have John's address?' 'I'll give to you this afternoon.'
 - 6 'Did you enjoy your holiday in Ireland?' 'Yes,'s a wonderful place.'
 - 7 'Where are your glasses?' 'I've lost
 - 8 'Would you like tickets for the concert?' 'How much do cost?'

We use it to talk about times, dates, distances and the weather.

It's five o'clock. It's Tuesday. It's December 17th today. It's my birthday. It's 20 miles from my house to the centre of Oxford. It's cold today. It's raining.

- Write true answers to these questions beginning It's ...

We don't usually leave out personal pronouns. (For exceptions in spoken English, see page 293.)

Jan arrived in America in 1976. **He** found a job in a clothes shop. (NOT Found a job ...) 'What languages do you know?' 'I can speak some German.' (NOT 'Can speak ...') 'Is your room OK?' 'Yes, I like it.' (NOT 'Yes, I like.')

S Write answers, using *I*, you etc.

- ► 'What time is the next train?' (8.30 / leaves / at)
 It Leaves at 8.30.
- 1 'Where's John?' (has / London / to / moved)
- 2 'Have you seen my glasses?' (on / chair / are / that)
- 3 'What do you think of my new shoes?' (like)
- 4 'What's Elisabeth going to do?' (medicine / study / going to / is)

.....

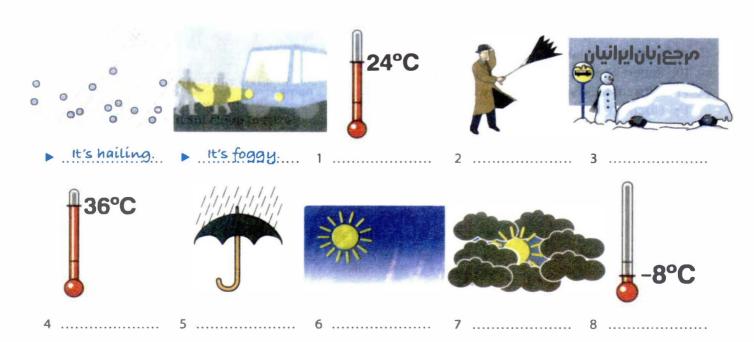
-
- 5 'I'm learning Greek.' 'Is it easy?' (No / difficult / is)

- 6 'Where's my bicycle?' (put / in / the garage)
- 7 'What do you do at weekends?' (play / tennis)
- 8 'Do you like my picture?' (is / beautiful)

G GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: weather

Make sure you know the adjectives and verbs in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then label the pictures.

ADJECTIVES: cloudy cold foggy ✓ hot sunny warm windy VERBS: hail ✓ rain snow





possessives: my, your etc This is my coat.

1	->	my	This is my coat.
you	>	your	That's your problem.
he	>	his	John's visiting his mother.
she	->	her	Ann looks like her brothers.
it	->	its	The club has its meetings on Tuesdays.
we	->	our	Our friends Joe and Pat are staying with us.
they	->	their	The children have spent all their money.
who?	->	whose?	Whose coat is this?

Possessives don't change for singular and plural.

our friends (NOT ours-friends)

Note how we use *his* and *her*: if a boy or man has something, we use *his*; if a **girl** or **woman** has something, we use *her*.

I saw John and his sister yesterday. (NOT ... John and her sister ...)

Mary and her brother are students. (NOT Mary and his brother ...)

We often use possessives with parts of the body and clothes.

Phil has broken his arm. (NOT Phil has broken the arm.)
She stood there with her eyes closed and her hands in her pockets.

Ó

Put in the correct possessives.

- ▶ Would you like to wash ... your hands?
- ▶ We're taking holiday in June.
- 1 Tina's lost keys.
- 2 Peter says wife is ill.
- 3 car is that outside?
- 4 My bank has changed name.
- 5 I'm going to sell motorbike.
- 6 My students have got exam next week.
- 7 Stephen writes to girlfriend every day.
- 8 Maria lives with father in Portugal.
- 9 Come in and take coats off.
- 10 Robert broke leg skiing last winter.
- 11 'What film did you see?' 'Sorry, I've forgotten name.'
- 12 Elizabeth did well in exams.



'Your loving son,'

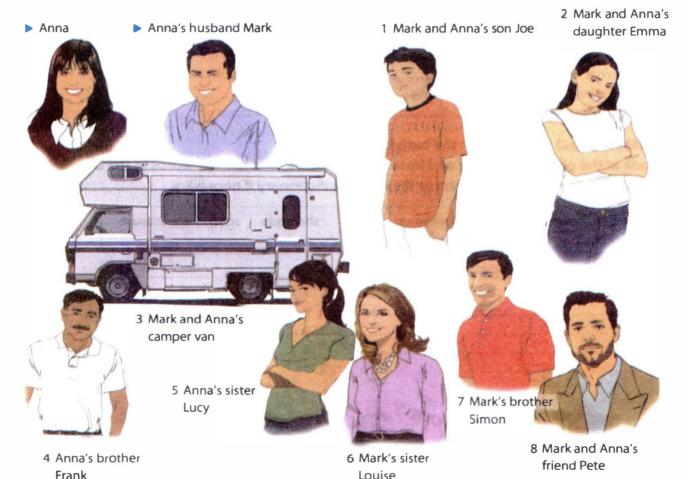
2 Who sold what to who? Make sentences.

AMY: car -> JAMES: bike -> CARLOS: dog -> SARA: house -> PAT AND SAM: motorbike ->
HARRY: piano -> ALICE: coat -> MICHAEL: camera -> HELEN: guitar -> MARILYN: hair dryer ->
TOM: dictionary -> AMY

>	Amy sold her car to James.	6	
1	James sold to Carlos.	7	
2	Carlos	8	***************************************
3		9	
4		10	
_			

3 Look at the picture and complete the text.

	Anna	and	her husband Mark went	on holiday with 1	and
2.		in 3	There's ro	oom for six in the var	n, so Anna invited
4.		to go w	vith them, but she didn't ask	5	, because Mark doesn't
ge	et on with Lucy	. Mark asked 6	, but sh	ne said no, because s	she doesn't like Frank. Ther
Μ	ark asked 7		, but he wasn't free. How	/ever, 8	was happy to go
W	th them, so ev	erything was O	K.		



We don't use a/an, the, this or that before possessives.

my car (NOT the my car) this idea OR my idea (NOT this my idea)

Don't confuse its (possessive) and it's (= 'it is' or 'it has' - see page 301). Compare:

The company had its annual meeting yesterday. It's losing a lot of money.

possessives: mine, yours etc This is mine.

DETERMINER	PRONOUN
my coat	mine
your car	yours
his chair	his
her book	hers

DETERMINER	PRONOUN		
its price			
our house	ours		
their problem	theirs		

We use mine,	yours etc	without	nouns.	Compare:
--------------	-----------	---------	--------	----------

That's not my coat. This is mine. (NOT This is the mine.) Is that your car? I thought yours was a Ford.

Their garden is much bigger than ours. (NOT ... ours garden)

We can use the question word whose with or without nouns.

Whose coat is that? Whose is that coat?

1	Rewrite the	sentences	with	possessive	pronouns.
	mewrite the	Schicences	****	Possessive	promouns.

- ► That's my newspaper. That's mine.
- 1 | I prefer our house to their house. | I prefer our house to
- 2 Her hair looks better than your hair. Her hair
- 3 Your hair looks terrible.
- 4 That dog looks like our dog.
- 5 That car's not her car.
- 6 This coat isn't my coat.
- 7 My cooking is better than his cooking.
- 8 Is this bike your bike?

Q GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: the bathroom

Look at the pictures of David and Natasha's bathroom, and use the words in the box to make sentences with his, hers or theirs. Use a dictionary if necessary.

	toothbrush toothpaste towel washcloth	washcloth
1 2	The red washcloth is his. The is not theirs.	6
•	John's 1 8 Mary's 7 Mary's	3 John's 4 Mary's 4 John and Mary's 9 Mary's

10 John and Mary's

11 John and Mary's

reflexive pronouns: myself, yourself etc

We use myself, yourself etc when an object is the same person/thing as the subject.

I cut myself shaving this morning. (NOT I cut me ...) We must ask ourselves some questions. He tried to kill himself, (Different from He tried to kill him.)

(Circle) the correct answer.

- 1 She doesn't love him / himself.
- 2 She likes looking at her/herself in the mirror.
- 3 Old people often talk to them / themselves.
- 4 I'm going out tonight, so you will all have to cook for yourself / yourselves.
- 5 I like Bill, but I don't understand him / himself.

2 Put in myself, yourself etc.

- 1 I'm teaching to play the guitar. 2 'Who's John talking to?'
- 3 Get a drink for
- 4 We really enjoyed last night.
- 5 Mary talks about all the time.
- 6 Find chairs for and sit down.
- 7 They just want to make money for

We can also use myself etc to emphasise - to say 'that person/thing and nobody/nothing else'. It's best if you do it yourself. I want to speak to the manager himself, not his secretary.

Put in myself, yourself etc.

- 1 Did you cut your hair? 2 Peter and Ann built their house
- 3 Lanswer all my letters
- 4 Can you repair this, or must we do it?
- 5 We got a letter from the Queen

Note the difference between ourselves etc and each other.



They're looking at themselves.





They're looking at each other.

4) Each other or -selves?

- 1 Henry and Barbara write to every week.
- 2 Joe and Pat have bought a flat for
- 3 Do you and Julia tell everything?
- 4 You'll need photos of for your passports.
- 5 Ruth and I have known for years.

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: some common expressions with reflexive pronouns

by myself/yourself etc (= 'alone') enjoy myself/yourself etc Take care of yourself. Help yourself. (= 'Take what you want.') Make yourself comfortable.

personal pronouns and possessives: more practice

Forms. There is one mistake in each column. Find the mistakes in columns 2–5 and correct them.

1	2	3	4	5		
1	me	my	mines	myself		
you	you	your	yours	yourself		
he	him	his	his	himself		
she	her	hers	hers	herself		
it	it	its	_	itself		
we	our	our	ours	ourselves		
you	you	your	yours	yourselves		
its they	them	their	theirs	theirselves		

2 N	lixed structures. Correct the mistakes.		
•	Her didn't say 'Hello'	11	'Where are your gloves?' 'I've lost its.'
1	John and her wife have gone to Greece	12	'Who did that?' 'It was I.'
2	This coat is my	13	'Which girl is your sister?' 'That's she in the
3	Their house is much bigger than our		red dress.'
4	That dog has hurt it's ear	14	Is cold again today
5	'What about this music?' 'I like.'	15	'What's her name?' 'Have forgotten.'
6	There are five miles to the nearest station.	16	Lucy broke the leg skiing
	**********	17	'What's the date?' 'Is December 17th.'
7	We are Tuesday		
8	Where's the station?' 'He's over there.'	18	Is that the my coat?
9	Their were all late	19	Who's car is this?
10	'Did you like France?' 'I thought was wonderful.'	20	'Who's that?' 'I am.'
	27/20044444		

Reflexives and each other. Complete the captions.







2	M	ixed pronouns. Put in a personal pronoun (me, you etc), a reflexive pronoun						
V								
	(myself, yourself etc), each other or nothing (-).							
		She looked at but we didn't say anything.						
	1	When I'm alone I don't always cook for						
	2	We love very much, but we fight all the time.						
	3	When he looks at in the mirror, he gets very depressed.						
	4	Don't help I want to do it by						
	5	Anna and I write to every week.						
	6	The children really enjoyed at your party.						
	7	I'm sorry. I haven't got time to teach to cook. You'll have to teach						
	8	'Can we have some coffee?' 'Sure. Help'						

9 My girlfriend doesn't speak much Italian, and I don't speak much Chinese, so we sometimes have trouble understanding

10 Come in and make comfortable.

5	Re	eflexives. Circle the right pronouns.
	1	Of all my wife's relations I like myself / herself the best.
		(Joseph Cook)
	2	Novels are about other people and poems are about themselves / yourself.
		(Philip Larkin)
	3	An egotist: a person more interested in himself / yourself than in me.
		(Ambrose Bierce)
	4	'How do you know you're God?' 'Simple. When I pray to Him I find I'm talki

- urself than in me.
- ay to Him I find I'm talking to myself / himself. (Peter Barnes)
- 5 We grow neither better nor worse as we get old, but more like ourselves / themselves. (May Lamberton Becker)
- 6 You can always get someone to love you even if you have to do it ourself / yourself. (Tom Masson)

Grammar in	a text.	Choose w	ords from the	boxes t	o comple	ete the	text.		
each other	her	his it:	s themselves	they	your				
My brother an	d 1		. girlfriend have	known .	2	fo	r about	five years,	
but 3	۱۱	e only bee	en going out tog	ether fo	six month	ıs.			
he her	him	she th	eir they w	re					
			d going out toge		di	dn't like	him, bu	t later 6	
her hers	his	its it's	our their	they	they're				
he her	hers	herself	him himsel	f its	it's sh	e's			
			a te e looks after it			sn't let 1	3		
each other	l r	ny they	them the	ir the	mselves	they're			
I like 16		. both very	much, and I thi	nk 17		good	for 18.		,
SO 19	h	ope 20	wil	l stay tog	jether.				
Internet exer	rcise. U	se a searc	:h engine (e.g.	Google). Which	of these	e three	expression	ons
gets most hit	ts? Can	you see v	why?						
"She broke her	arm."		***						
"She broke the	arm."								



"She broke his arm."

personal pronouns and possessives: revision test

1 Complete the table.

1	me	my	mine	myself
	you			,
he		his		
			hers	
	it			
		our		
				yourselves
they				

_	
	orrect the mistakes.
•	I him haven't seen today. haven't seen him
1	'Is the soup OK?' 'Yes, I like.'
2	There are 20 miles to the shopping centre.
3	We are Friday.
4	Peter and her sister are in Brazil.
5	I like our garden better than their.
6	Olivia and Karl are nice. But theirs children!
7	Who's is this bag?
8	Ann and I write to ourselves every week.
9	I really enjoyed at your party.
10	I'm teaching me to play the guitar.
11	Where's the my bike?
12	Is April 1st today.
13	James fell off his horse and broke the arm.
14	'What's Joe's phone number?' 'Have forgotten.'
15	I sat down, made me comfortable, and waited for her to say something.
5 0	
	ut in a personal pronoun (<i>me, you</i> etc), a possessive (<i>my, your</i> etc), a reflexive
	nyself, yourself etc), or each other.
	is five o'clock.
1	I don't like and he doesn't like
2	Don't help
3	Oliver and his girlfriend phone every day.
4	Thanks for yesterday evening. We really enjoyed
5	I like cooking for other people, but I don't much like cooking for
6	Let's work together: the work will go much faster if we help
7	Hi, Paul. Help to coffee. I'll be with in a minute.
8	'Will you teach the piano?' 'No, sorry, you'll have to teach
	'Who broke the cup?' 'It wasn't'
	'Which is your mother?' 'That's over there by the window.'
11	My parents don't understand, and my boyfriend doesn't understand, and sometimes I don't understand
12	That girl keeps losing shoes.
13	Bill's coming this evening with three sisters.
14	I don't like looking at photos of always look so old.
15	Mary's mother's really nice, but I don't like father much.

SECTION 14 nouns

grammar summary

Nouns are mostly words for things and people – for example house, tree, driver, child, water, idea, lesson. Most nouns can come after the.

English nouns can be countable (we can say two houses) or uncountable (we can't say two waters).

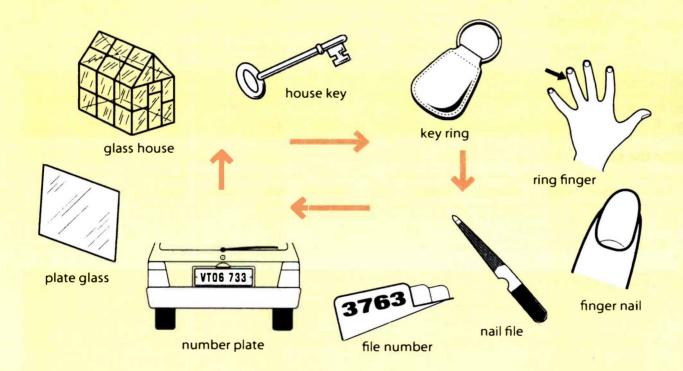
Countable nouns have plurals (houses), and we can use a/an with them (a house, an idea).

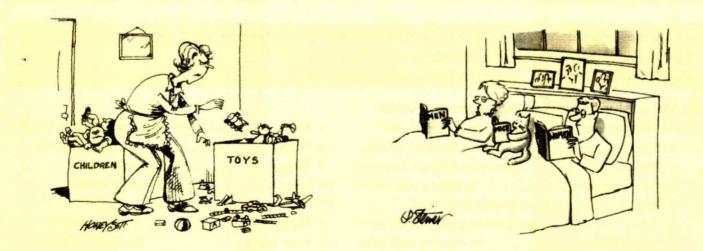
Uncountable nouns have no plurals, and we can't use a/an before them.

Some English uncountable nouns are countable in some other languages (like furniture).

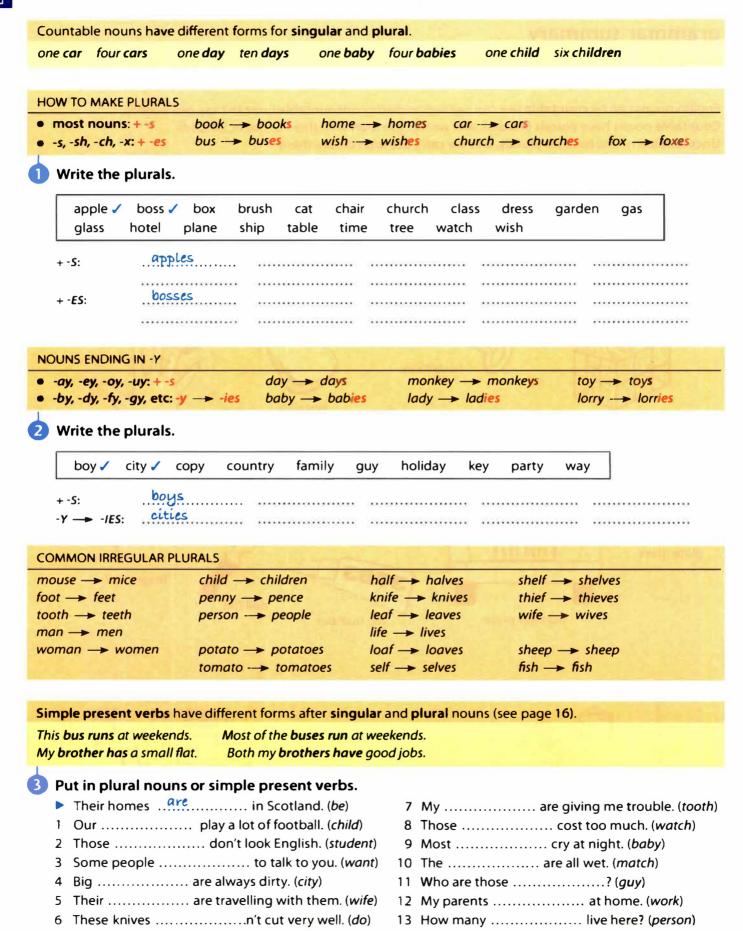
We can join two nouns:

- with a possessive 's or s' (for example my brother's wife, my parents' house).
- with a preposition (for example a piece of cake).
- directly one after the other (for example chocolate cake, a shoe shop).





singular and plural nouns cat, cats; box, boxes



singular/plural team, family; jeans, scissors

Words for groups of people can have singular or plural verbs in British English. We often use plural verbs when we talk about personal actions (for example play, want, think).
The team is/are playing badly. My family want/wants me to study. The government think/thinks taxes are too low.
Note the difference between England (the country) and England (the football team).
England has got a new prime minister. England have got a new manager.
Police is always plural.
The police are looking for a tall 30-year-old woman. (NOT The police is looking)
① Group nouns (✓) or not (✗)?
army audience beach class club Communist Party company crowd idea lunch question room school train

Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in plural verbs from the box.

play

need 🗸

0	The club	A her to go to university
1	The company	B only classical music
2	Her family	C scored a goal this year
3	The orchestra	D that they're losing money
4	This team	Eed a bigger room for their meetings
5	England	F asking for information about the accident
6	The police	G just lost against Germany

say

want

Some nouns are **always plural**. Some common examples: trousers jeans tights shorts pants pyjamas glasses scissors **Those** trousers **are** too short. (NOT That trouser ...) Where **are** my glasses?



3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box.

are

have

haven't

_							
	black trousers	blue jeans 🗸	dark glasses	scissors	shorts	silk pyjamas	tights
>	Every time I see	her she's wearii	ngbluejean	S.			
1	I can't see very well with these						
2	It's hot today. I'm going to put on						
3	These		don't cut	very well.			
4	You'd better put	on your best			for the	interview.	
5	She always sleep	ps in					
6	I've got a hole in	n my		again.			

We can also use the expression a pair of with these nouns.

There is a pair of scissors on your chair. (NOT ... a scissors ...)

three pairs of jeans (NOT three jeans) two pairs of pyjamas (NOT two pyjamas)



countable and uncountable nouns

Countable nouns are words like car, book, chair. They can be singular or plural.	
Uncountable nouns are words like petrol, rice, water. They are only singular.	

the uncountable nouns.
the uncountable noun

flower love oil river cup dog guitar meat music ear photo wool salt snow sugar women

The following words are uncountable in English (but countable in some other languages). They are normally only singular. We can use some with them, but not a/an. (NOT a travel, a furniture) advice baggage bread furniture hair information knowledge luck luggage news spaghetti (and macaroni etc) travel work

I need some advice. This furniture is too expensive. His hair is very long. Travel teaches you a lot.

Put d	a with the cou	ntable nouns and	d some with the	uncountable	nouns

 bread	cheque	e baggage	fridge	furniture
 handbag	holida	yknowledge	luck	
 newspaper	proble	m station	travel	work

Put in suitable uncountable nouns from the box.

	advice	baggage	turniture	hair	information 🗸	news	spagnetti	travei	work
>	Can you	give me som	ne inform	ation	abo	ut the sc	hool?		
1	'Have you got much?' 'No, just one small bag.'								
2	I live 50 k	kilometres fr	om my work	, so I sp	end a lot of mone	y on			
3	This			. isn't v	ery good. You've	cooked i	t for too long		
4	I've stop	ped reading	the papers.	Γhe			. is always ba	d.	
5	I don't kr	now what to	do. Can you	give m	e some		?		
5	All this			is f	rom my mother's	house.			
7	I've got t	oo much			and not e	enough f	ree time.		
8	l like you	r			when it's long like	e this.			

To give a countable meaning, we usually use a longer expression or a different word.

Can you give me a piece of advice? Did you have a good journey?

Put in words or expressions from the box.

a piece of advice a piece of baggage ✓ a piece of information a piece of news a job a journey

a suitcase	a piece of baggage
------------	--------------------

1 selling cars

- 2 driving from London to Edinburgh
- 3 'Don't marry him, dear.'
- 4 'The next train leaves at 10.15.'
- 5 'There has been a big train crash.'

[→] For articles with countable and uncountable nouns, see page 153.

Some words can be countable or uncountable, with different meanings.

A light was on in the house. (= 'a lamp')

Light travels at 300,000 km a second.

I've seen that film three times. Time goes fast when you're having fun.

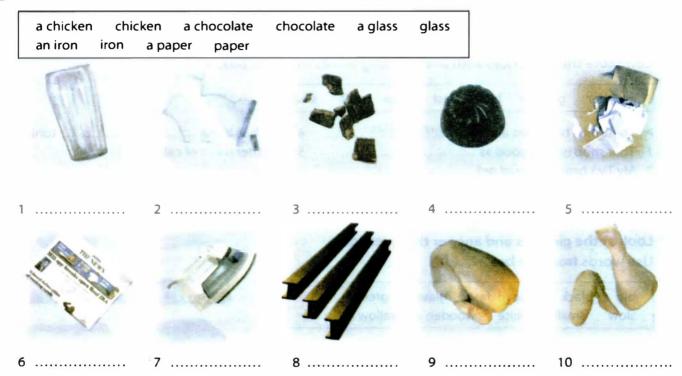
I had a strange experience yesterday.

We need a secretary with experience.

Three coffees, please. (= 'cups of coffee')

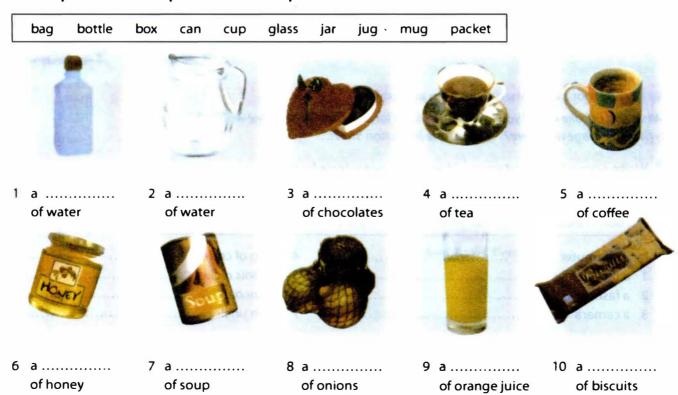
I drink too much coffee.

S Look at the pictures and put in descriptions from the box.



6 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: containers

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then use them to complete the descriptions under the pictures.



one and ones a big one; the ones on the chair

'What sort of car would you like?' 'A big one.' (= 'A big car.') (NOT 'A big.')

That was a great party. Let's have another one soon.

The plural is ones.

'Which are your gloves?' 'The ones on the chair.'

Complete the sentences with one(s), using words from the box.

another	green 🗸	blue	last	new	this	small

- I bought a blue shirt and two .. green ones.
- 1 That shop isn't as good as

.......

- 2 My TV's broken. I must get
- 3 She's finished her apple. She wants

- 4 That bus is the tonight.
- 5 'Another piece of cake?'
 'Just a'
- 6 I don't like the red shoes. I prefer the
- 2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use words from the box.

big black blue fast glass / green red slow small white wooden / yellow

- Which table do you prefer? The glass one.

 OR The wooden one.
- 1 Which house do you prefer?
- 2 Which sweater do you prefer?
- 3 Which car do you prefer?4 Which dog do you prefer?
- 5 Which flower do you prefer?

H	
CHÎ HÎ HÎ	
Con Contract of the Contract o	(BOB
maximum speed	maximum speed







We say one, not a one, when there is no adjective.

'What sort of cake would you like?' 'One with a lot of cream.' (NOT 'A one with') 'Is there a garage near here?' 'There's one in Weston Street.'

Write some true sentences. Use the expressions in the box.

I've already got one. I haven't got one. I need one. I need a new one.
I don't need one. I'd like one. I don't want one.

 4 a cup of coffee

5 a tennis racket

We only use one for countable nouns (see page 198).

'Would you like some coffee?' 'Yes, black (coffee), please.' (NOT 'Yes, black one...')

Level 1

's and s' possessive: forms son's, sons', men's

НО	w To	MAKE POSSES	SIVE FOR	MS			miles (Sp.		States grant come a security
• 9	singu	ılar nouns:	+'s	my son's car	John an	nd Iris's fla	t the cat's l	eg	e more entre
• 1	nost	plural nouns:	+'	those boys'	passports	the bab	ies' toys ou	r wives' stories	
• 1	olura	ils without s	+'s	most childre	n's poems	three m	en's names	the people's	voices
6	Mak	e possessive	forms	by adding 's	or '.				
	m	ny mother . 🤔	nose			10	my aunt and	d uncle s	hop
	m	ıy sisters r	names			11	Patrick	books	
	1 A	lice and John	hou	se		12	a photograp	oher job	
	2 ar	rtists idea	S			13	our postma	n cat	
	3 m	ıy dog eai	rs			14	postmen	uniforms	
	4 th	ose dogs	ears			15	Joyce	pen	
	5 th	nose men	faces			16	the thief	bag	
	6 hi	is girlfriend	piano			17	the thieves.	car	
		neir grandchild	-			18	that woman	brother	•
		neir grandchild		•		19	most wome	n desks	
		dies hats				20	your mum a	nd dad l	bedroom
2	C	ect the mista	-l				_		
		his is the childr		a write the is	the chil	dren's re	5.		
		_	_						
		•							
		-			_				
		•		-					
				-					
1	0 W	/hat's your wiv	e's job?	•••••			• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
		use more than						L -L	
JOI	nn's n	nother's cat	Helen	s boss's car	My fath	er's secre	t <mark>ary's sister's</mark>	oaby	
3		te the posses							
	M	ly son has a tea	acher. Sh	ne has a husba	and	y son's	teacher's h	usband	
	2 Ja	ane has childre	n. They	have bicycles					
			-						
		•							
					-				
		harlotte has a							

10 The Director has a husband. He has a friend. She has a mother. She has a cousin.

's and s' possessive: use lan's car; the boss's car

Possessive nouns with 's or s' take the place of the.
the car that belongs to lan → lan's car (NOT lan's the car) the shoes that belong to Jo → Jo's shoes
But a possessive noun can have its own article.
the car that belongs to the boss → the boss's car
the shoes that belong to the children → the children's shoes
Make 's or s' possessive structures.
► The dog belongs to Joe. Jee's dog.
► The dog belongs to the postmanthe postman's dog
1 The house belongs to Astrid.
2 The house belongs to the doctors.
3 The book belongs to Oliver and Carla
4 The car belongs to the teacher.
5 The money belongs to the girls.
6 The money belongs to Susan.
2 Change the sentences.
► The classes are using the new books. (the French teachers)
The French teachers' classes are using the new books.
1 The car is parked in front of the house. (the builder; Anna)
car is parked in front of house
2 Do you know the address? (the tall woman)
3 Their bedtime is eight o'clock. (the children)
4. The brothers are all in the army (Alice and Bat)
4 The brothers are all in the army. (Alice and Pat)
We use possessive 's and s' mostly to talk about people and animals, not things: for example their possessions,
experience, relationships (family, friends etc), parts of the body.
Ann's purse Ann's English lessons Ann's holiday Ann's husband Ann's friend
my dad's book (NOT the book of my dad) my horse's ears (NOT the ears of my horse)
BUT the roof of the house (NOT the house's roof) the top of my desk (NOT my desk's top)
Write two sentences for each item.
Is the door open? (Paul; the library)
is Paul's door open? is the door of the library open?
1 What's the name? (your brother; that book)
2 Is there anything in the pockets? (the children; that coat)
3 You can see the church from the window. (Emma; the living room)
4. Who are the group and district (John vary short)
4 Why are the arms so dirty? (John; your chair)

With some common time words, we add 's to say how long something takes.

a second's thought a minute's silence

	_
43	•

Choose a time expression for each sentence. Use the words in the box.

	second / minute hour day week year
•	'Who was it?' I asked. There was a pause before she answered a second's pause
1	After university, Les took a course to become a teacher.
2	Lin had <i>a holiday</i> with her mother earlier this year.
3	Oxford is nearly 600 km from Edinburgh – that's a journey.
4	Sita's new job will mean a drive to work every morning.
5	There was a wait while the computer started up.

We can use noun + 's or s' without another noun, if the meaning is clear.

'Whose coat is that?' 'Harry's.' My hair is dark, but my children's is fair.

We also use noun + 's or s' without another noun for offices, churches and some shops.

Ibought this at Sainsbury's. I hate going to the dentist's. She sings at St. John's.

Sook at the picture. There is some confusion. Complete the sentences as in the example.



	The rope is probably Texas Joe's
1	The handbag is probably
	The gun
	The crown
	The big shoes
	The document case

We often use noun + 's or s' without another noun to talk about people's homes.

I saw Monica at June and Barry's on Friday. Lee is going to his sister's next weekend.

6	Other people's homes: write about two or more things in your past. Use at's or ats'. I met my girlfriend at Judy's. I went to my grandparents' for Easter.

noun + noun Milk chocolate is a kind of chocolate.

			milk chocolate = a kind of chocolate, with milk in it chocolate milk = a kind of milk, with chocolate in it flower shop = shop that sells flowers (NOT flowers shop) corner shop = a shop on a corner hotel receptionist = a receptionist in a hotel history teacher = a teacher who teaches history					
words m	vords in the box to make r ore than once.	noun + noun stru	ctures. Y	ou can us	e some of	the		
army jazz	aspirin business corne kitchen milk opera j	er email flowe perfume police	er gard pop		e village			
▶ 3 kinds	of shop flower shop, con	rner_shopvillag	e shop					
1 3 kinds	of address							
2 3 kinds	of bottle							
3 3 kinds	of singer							
	of wall							
5 3 kinds								
	of uniform of chair he expressions in the box							
Change together	of chairhe expressions in the box Remember: don't make t for babies make-up for ey	to noun + noun the first noun plu	structure ral.	es, and pu	It the beg i			
Change together	of chairhe expressions in the box . Remember: don't make t	to noun + noun the first noun plu	structure ral.	es, and pu	It the beg i			
Change together clother engine	of chairhe expressions in the box Remember: don't make t for babies make-up for ey	to noun + noun the first noun plu tes / building wit school of langua	structure ral. th offices i	n it food	It the beg i	innings and e		
Change together clother engine	of chair	to noun + noun the first noun pludes building with school of languare to the office to noun to	structure ral. th offices i ges dra	n it food	I t the beg i	innings and e		
clother engine	of chair	to noun + noun the first noun pludes / building with school of language to the offi	structure ral. The offices in ges drawn ce A B	n it food wer for kni but he cou	of the begind for dogs lives	innings and e		
clother engine	of chair	to noun + noun the first noun pludes / building with school of language	structure ral. th offices i ges dra ce A B C	n it food awer for kni but he cou I want to le – does she	of the begind for dogs lives Juildn't repair earn Japane ethink she's	innings and e		
clother engine 0 Judy 1 The 2 Our 3 The	of chair the expressions in the box Remember: don't make to for babies make-up for eyer who works on computers wears too much wears too much works on computers for egoing to put a big	to noun + noun the first noun plu tes / building wit school of languar to the offi	structureral. ch offices i ges dra	n it food wer for kni but he cou I want to le does she he only wa	of the begind for dogs lives Juildn't repair earn Japane ethink she's	innings and e		
clothese engines 0 Judy 1 The 2 Our 3 The 4 Doy	of chair the expressions in the box. Remember: don't make to for babies make-up for eyer who works on computers wears too much	to noun + noun the first noun plu tes / building wit school of langua to the offi	structureral. ch offices i ges dra	but he could want to lead to easily want to lead to easily want when my lead to easily was to easily	of the begind for dogs lives Iddn't repair earn Japane think she's ants fresh m	rit ese at a party?		

W	rite noun + noun names for these.
	soup with chicken in it chicken soup
1	a box made of metal
2	cakes with chocolate in them
3	a fork made of plastic
4	soup made of vegetables
5	a jacket made of leather
6	shirts made of cotton
7	a plate made of paper
8	salad with tomatoes in it
9	a wall made of stones

We often use **noun** + **noun** structures when the second noun is made from a **verb** + **er**. a **truck** driver = a person who drives a **truck**a hair dryer = a machine for drying hair

What do we call these people or things?

	This person drives a bus a bus driver
	This person manages an office.
	This machine makes coffee.
3	This person drinks coffee.
4	This person loves animals.
5	This stuff cleans floors.
6	This person plays tennis.
7	This thing opens letters.

NOUN + NOUN STRUCTURE OR 'S / S' POSSESSIVE STRUCTURE

We mostly use 's or s' when the first noun possesses, experiences or has a relationship with the second noun. We use a noun + noun structure for other kinds of meaning. So things do not usually take 's / s'. Compare:

the dog's name (possession: the dog has a name) Rita's accident (experience: Rita had an accident)

Ed's brother (relationship: Ed has a brother) Annie's secretary is Ellen's best friend. (relationships)

BUT a shoe brush (the shoe doesn't possess or experience the brush; shoes don't have relationships)

Circle the correct answers.

- 1 Could I borrow your telephone's book / telephone book for a minute?
- 2 Is that your teacher's book / teacher book, or is it yours?
- 3 Elizabeth's journey / Elizabeth journey took her to five continents.
- 4 The train's journey / train journey from Huntsville to Victoria was very boring.
- 5 My aunt's home / aunt home is full of beautiful furniture.
- 6 Our holiday's home / holiday home is in the French Alps.
- 7 My brother's interview / brother interview with the president will be on the radio today.
- 8 I was very nervous about my job's interview / job interview.

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: one-word noun + noun structures

Some short **noun** + **noun** structures are so **common** that we write them as **one word**, for example: armchair bathroom bedroom bookshop businessman businesswoman hairbrush handbag raincoat postman postwoman schoolchild suitcase toothbrush toothpaste



nouns: more practice

-				
U		ountable or uncountable? Put in a/an or some.		
		We need new bed.	5	I've got difficult job to do today.
		We need new furniture.	6	Ann gave me good news.
		Can you give me advice?	7	I need a taxi, because I've got
	2	I found money in the street		heavy luggage.
		this morning.	8	Did you have good journey?
	3	Can you buy bread while you're out?	9	I've just had good idea.
	4	I've got work to do this evening.	10	I must give you important information.
2	Sr	pecial plurals. Put in three different plural noun	s w	hich have no singular.
		a pair of 2 a pair of		3 a pair of
				•
3	Si	ngular or plural? Correct (✓) or not (✗)?		
	1	The team are playing well	6	People are all different
	2	The police don't usually carry guns in Britain	7	Are those your pyjamas?
	3	My family have moved to Manchester	8	I need a new pair of glasses
		He buys too much clothes	9	I don't like that people very much
	5	I bought two new blue jeans yesterday	10	The government are in trouble again
4	Po	ossessive forms. Correct the mistakes.		
		What's your mothers' phone number? mother's		
	1	That's the Peter's house.		
	2	She writes childrens' books.		
	3	That building is a boy's school.		
	4	This is my fathers office.		
	5	I want to talk to the boss secretary's		
	6	We're going round to Jane's and Peter place		
	7	Here's a photo of my parent's wedding		
	8	Is this the teachers book?		
	9	Johns' friends are all here.		•
•	0	He only reads mens' magazines.		
a	N	num i maum Waita shautau dassuintians af thassa		anle and things
U	140	chocolate with fruit and nuts in it fruit and nut	e pe	opie and things.
	_	a person who makes toys	••••	
	1	· ·		
	1	a shop that sells shoes		
	2	juice taken from oranges		
	3	a jacket made of leather		
	4	a person who drives trains		
	5	a table where you can drink coffee		
	6	a person who cleans windows		
	7	people who read the news (on TV)a magazine about computers		
	8 9	a market in the street		
1	-	a watch made of gold		
	_	4 **4 C 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		

6 Noun + noun. What are these people? Put together words from the two boxes and write the descriptions.

bird bus butterfly computer dog glass hockey
maths mountain road tennis

blower climber collector driver player player programmer sweeper teacher trainer watcher









a hockey player







4



6







.. 9 10

Grammar in a text. Read the text and circle the correct forms.

In the centre of Mappleford/ Mappleford centre there's a large ancient covered market with all sorts of interesting shops: 1 shops of clothes / clothes shops, butchers, grocers, jewellers etc etc. But my favourite place in the market is Joe's Café. It's a real 2 business of family / family business: Joe, 3 the wife of Joe / Joe's wife, his sons, his 4 son's / sons' wives, his daughter and his 5 daughter's / daughters' boyfriend all work there at different times. It's not luxurious – there are 6 tables and chairs of plastic / plastic tables and chairs – but it's excellent value. Joe's café is the best place in town for a full English breakfast. For a few pounds, you get a big plate of eggs, bacon and sausages, as much toast and butter as you can eat, and an enormous cup of tea. All sorts of people 7 have / has breakfast at 8 Joe / Joe's, from professors to 9 drivers of buses / bus drivers / bus's drivers. When they've all gone off to work, Joe and his family have time for a short rest, and then the café starts filling up with tourists who have come to try Joe's famous 10 cake of chocolate / chocolate cake. If you're ever in Mappleford, take my advice and visit Joe's Café.

8 Internet exercise. Checking correctness. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of the following expressions get most hits? So which are correct?

"a heavy baggage" ⁸²²	"some heavy baggage" . 9200
"a coffee table"	"a table coffee "
"the President's birthday"	"the birthday of the President "
"a bus driver" "a bus's o	driver " "a driver of bus"
"a gold watch "	"a watch of gold"

nouns: revision test

-						
	rite the plurals.					
bı	us buses fox	jo	urney	match		book
ta	ble foot	ре	erson	knife		mouse
do	og day	fa	mily	woman		leaf
m	an child	са	r	wife		baby
2 W	hich nouns can be plural? Writ	te the pl	ural or x.			
The second secon	note notes			7	furniture	
•	money	4 duck		8		ent
1	information	5 knov	vledge	9	class	
2	bread		ney		traffic	
00	ircle the correct forms.					
		r of tanni	/tannis's player			
1	My cousin is a tennis player / playe					
2	3					
3	I'm going to have a sleep of an hou			-		
4 5	Do you read woman's / womans' / I like travelling to other countries /			25!		
6	'Coffee?' 'Yes, please. One large / L	•	•	·a'		
7	Could you give me some information	_	-	c.		
8	England is / are leading by 4 goals		mations.			
9	My sister works in a flower shop / f		on /shon flower /sh	on's flower		
	I can't find her number in the pho			-	ok of the nh	one
	rearretina nel mamber in ene prio	ne ooon,	priories doon / doon	or priorite / oc	on or the pri	ione.
Company	orrect the mistakes.					
>	He's bought two new trousers	pairs of	trousers			
1	I like eating chocolate milk					
2	My parents lived all their lifes in D	ublin				
3	I like looking round books shops.					
4	Who was the people who came to	see you	?			
5	Peter is my son's sister					
6	I like those gloves. How much are	the blue?				
7	It's a nice jacket, but I'd like a one	with pocl	kets			
8	You will never be a player of footb	oall				
9	Marco Polo wrote a book about h	is journie	s			
10	'Where did you buy it?' 'In the ma	rket of st	reet.'			
11	We spent the weekend at my brot	her				
12	A vet is a doctor of animals					
13	The mother of Anna speaks good	Spanish.			• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	
14	My father gave me earrings of silv	er for my	birthday			
15	Can I have some oranges juice?				•••	
16	Birmingham, Liverpool and Manc			-		
17	I couldn't open the house's door					
18	There's the Peter's house					
19	Do you have the address of Emma					
20	I've got a big work to do today					

SECTION 15 adjectives and adverbs

grammar summary

Adjectives are words like *easy, slow, sorry, important*. They usually tell you more about **people** or **things**. They can go **before nouns**, or **after some verbs** (e.g. *be, seem, look*).

an easy job

a slow train

I'm sorry.

This letter looks important.

Adverbs are words like *easily, slowly, yesterday, there*. Adverbs tell you, for example, how, when or where something happens.

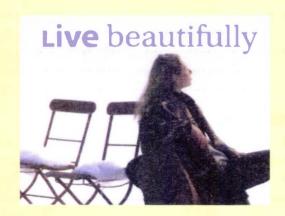
I won the game easily.

Please speak slowly.

She arrived yesterday.



Great books for young readers!





'AN UNFORGETTABLE NOVEL'

'A wonderfully funny and moving book'

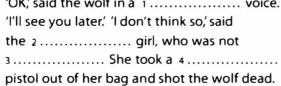
Hot socks:

the perfect way to warm cold feet and make you feel good



adjectives a beautiful little girl who was not stupid

Adjectives go before, not after nouns.	
1 2	1 2
a long journey (NOT a journey long)	loud music (NOT music-loud)
Adjectives don't change for singular and ple	ural.
a fast car fast cars (NOT fasts-cars)	
Before nouns, we don't usually put and betw	veen adjectives.
a big bad wolf (NOT a big and bad wolf)	
Colour adjectives usually come after others.	
beautiful red apples (NOT red beautiful apples	
Put in the adjectives and write the st	
One day, a time ago, (long fine)	one fine day, a long time ago
a girl (beautiful little)	1
in a coat (<i>red</i>)	2
was walking through a forest (dark)	3
with a bag (<i>big</i>)	4
of apples (red wonderful)	5
to see her grandmother. (old)	6
Under a tree (tall green)	7
she saw a wolf (big bad)	8
with teeth. (white long)	9
2 Put the words in the correct order ar	nd continue the story.
'good little , girl morning', said	1 'Good
big the bad wolf.	2
'going you where are	3
that with bag heavy	4
day this fine on?'	5
'going my see to grandmother I'm old'	6
girl the said little.	7
'lives small she in house a	8
new the supermarket near.'	9
new the supermarket near.	<i>y</i>
Put in adjectives from the box to finition	ish the story.
big friendly stupid little	The work of the second
1011	Sold of the state of the
'OK,' said the wolf in a 1	oice.



(from an idea by James Thurber)



'I don't think so,' said the little girl.



Adjectives can go after be, become, get, seem, look (='seem') and feel.

The water is cold.

Everything became clear.

It's getting late.

You seem tired.

She looks happy.

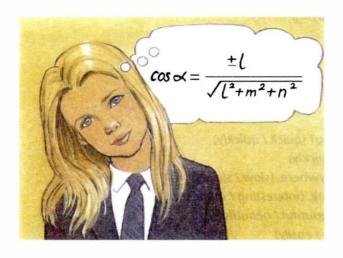
I feel hot.

After these verbs, we put and before the last of two or more adjectives.

He was tall, dark and handsome. (NOT He was tall, dark, handsome.) You look well and happy.

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences, using words from the box.

beautiful and and cold hungry intelligent tired





1 She is 2 He looks

Make sentences.

- ► 'Jack / very / tall / be' . Jack's very tall.' 'Yes, he's nearly 2 metres.'
- 2 'seem / happy / Adele''She's in love again.'
- 3 'ill/tired/and/feel/I''Shall I call the doctor?' 4 dark / very early here in winter / get / it
- 5 getting / my parents / old
- Make sentences with adjectives from the box.

Australian bad beautiful hot ✓ late rich

- This water / not be very / This water isn't very hot.
- 1 'The train / be /' 'No, it's on time.'
- 2 'He / look /' 'No, he's American.'
- 3 'Your hair / look /' 'Oh, thanks.'
- 4 My memory / getting very /
- 5 I want / become / and famous

We don't usually use adjectives without nouns.

'Polly's ill.' 'The poor girl.' (NOT 'The poor.')

مرحوزبان الرانيان

adverbs of manner He ate quickly.

ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

Adjectives are connected with nouns and pronouns. They usually tell you more about people or things.

They can go before nouns, or after be, seem, look etc (see pages 210-211).

Adverbs are connected with other words - for example verbs.

Some adverbs tell you how something happens. These often end in -ly.

It's an easy language.

You can learn this language easily.

The music is slow.

The pianist is playing slowly.

Her ideas are interesting.

She spoke interestingly about her ideas.

Joe looked hungry.

Joe ate hungrily.

Choose an adjective or an adverb.

- ► Could I have a ...quick word with you? (quick / quickly)
- ► She walked away ...quickly...... (quick / quickly)
- 1 This is a train it stops everywhere. (slow / slowly)
- 2 He talked very about his work. (interesting / interestingly)
- 3 You've cooked the meat(beautiful / beautifully)
- 4 I've got an job for you. (easy / easily)
- 5 She writes in English. (perfect / perfectly)
- 6 I sing very(bad / badly)
- 7 | feel today. (happy / happily)
- 8 You seem very (angry / angrily)
- 9 Anne's a swimmer. (strong / strongly)
- 10 Could you talk more please? (quiet / quietly)

HOW TO MAKE -LY ADVERBS

- usually: adjective + -ly quick → quickly -y → -ily easy → easily
 - real → really (NOT realy)
 - happy -> happily

- -ble → -bly
- possible -> possibly

Write the adverbs.

wrong wrongly.	4 thirsty	8 wonderful
1 final	5 probable	9 cold
2 sincere	6 usual	10 unhappy
3 loud	7 nico	11 comfortable





complete -> completely

other adverbs I like sport very much.

Some	adverbs tell you w	hen, where or how	much some	thing happe	ns.						
I'm q	oing away tomorrow	. We ran downh	ill. The d	ccident hap	pened there	e.					
_	on't go out much .	I watch TV a lot.		uitar a bit .		s a little.					
These	adverbs often com	ie at the end of a se	ntence. The	do not con	ne betwee	n the verb	and the obj	ect.			
	VERB	OBJECT	ADVERB								
She	speaks	English	well	(NOT S	ha chaake-	well-English	A				
		_									
They		very good bread	here.		,	here very go					
1		a lot of clothes	yesterday.		,		of clothes.)				
We	didn't enjoy	the holiday	much.	(NOT ₩	Ne didn't er	njoy much ti	he holiday.)				
1	like	sport	very much	(NOT+	like very m	uch-sport:)					
1											
1 M	1) Make sentences with adverbs from the box. (Different answers are possible.)										
_											
	carefully clearly	correctly perf	ectly slov	vly tomo	rrow m	uch yest	erday				
	carcially cically	conceas pen	ectly slot	viy torrio	11000	uch yes	crudy				
	soup / cook / the	Cook the soups	LOWLU. OI	Cook th	ne soud co	refully.					
							-				
1		r									
2	computer / bought	t/a/l									
3	name / your / write										
4	see / must / the / d										
_		•									
5		s / he / four									
6	•	nddress / didn't						•••••			
7	skiing / don't like /	I									
8	speak / and / pleas	e (two adverbs)									
2 W	rite about six thir	ngs that you like v	erv much.								
	l like	-	•	4							
			•								
3				6							
Adva	rbs can go before a	diactives and before	o pact parti	ciples (for or	vample bro	kan faisha	d	1200			
						ikeri, iiriisrie	u).				
terrib	oly sorry (NOT terrible	e- sorry) nearly re	eady cor	npletely finis	shed						
3 C	omplete the sente	ences with words	from the b	ox. (Differe	ent answe	rs are pos	ssible.)				
							2				
	badly beautifull	y completely	extremely	happily 🗸	nearly	terribly	very well				
L	,	,	,	7				ı			
	Joe and Ann have I	heen happily	ma	ried for twe	ntv-five ve	ars					
_						ars.					
1		sorry to tell									
2	There's nothing to	eat – the fridge is		em	pty.						
3	The book's	writ	ten but it's n	ot very inter	resting.						
4		ay, David was			-						
5	-				aive vou c	nough					
_					-	_					
6		ready yet?' 'No, but									
7	Languages were		. taught at r	ny school, so	o l didn't le	arn much f	rench.				
8	I'm	pleased to t	ell you that	ou've passe	d your exa	ım.					



adverbs with the verb often, certainly etc

Some	e adverbs, f	or example	always or	certain	ly, usua	lly go wit	h the ve	rb.	
how	-	always certainly	definitel		robably	netimes	ever	hardly ever (= 'almost never')	never
othe	r:	already	also	just	still	even	only		
			ost verbs,	but afte	er auxili	ary verb	s (have, v	will, can, must etc) and after	
am/a	re/is/was/v	were.							
BEFO	RE MOST VE	RBS		AFTE	R AUXIL	IARY VER	BS AND A	M ETC	
		the evening				ys enjoyed	_		
-		to New Yor	k.			n get chec			
	ardly ever					ever at h			
	ainly like Lo					nly rain to			
		see Barbar	7.		_	here to se		a.	
Jack	aireaay kno	ows Sophie.		Jack	nas aire	eady met	Sopnie.		
P	ut the adv	erbs in th	e correct i	olaces					
		ench, but p				sh (often	always)		
								English.	
1		fish. He eat			_		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		
	Jake eats	iisii. He eat	5 11511 101 01	cakiasi	(uiway:	s, everi			
2	Ann plays	tennis, but	she plays i	n the e	veninas	(often: o	n(v)		
2					_		-	***************************************	
3								n. (usually; probably)	
,	Lawarap	ats torriato	sauce on e	ver y erm	ing. The p				
4	I forget na	mes. I forg	et faces (so	metime	s: never		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	***************************************	
-	riorgetha	arries. Florg	et 1aces. (50	,,,,etii,,	3, 11EVE1	,			
5	lane gets	angry, and	cha chaute	at neo	ole (hai	rdly ever	never)	***************************************	
,	_								
6		e station o							
U	rgertotii	e station of	i time, and	trie trai	iii is iate	. (uiways,	uiways)		
7	Lwill phor	ne you tom	orrow and	Lavillav	rite nev	twook (c	lefinitely:	probably)	
,	i wiii piioi	ie you toili	oriow, arid		inte nex	t week. (c	iemmery,	producty	
8	I drink too	. I drink cof	foo lucually	r some	timas)				
0									
0									
9	tour siste	r is a good	_			•			
10	My moth	er is asleep.							
10	Wiy IIIOtile	er is asieep.	I tillik sile	15 111. (31	III, prooc				
	**********	***********	**********			*******		***********************************	
THE RES			Contraction of				CLOW DAY		
		ese adverb							
Do yo	o u ever writ	te poems?	Has Mai	y alway	s lived i	here?	Are you	often in London?	
D.	ıt the adv	erbs in th	o corroct i	alacos					
1		•							
	•		•						
_			-						
5			ants? (usua	lly)					
6	Is Bethany	/ ill? (still)							

i	onger expressions	usually or	at the	end of a	sentence (Omnare.
L	Unider expressions	usuany u	Jal lile	enu or a	sentence.	compare.

She often plays tennis.

She plays tennis two or three times a week.

She hardly ever wins a game.

She wins a game once or twice a month.

She always practises.

Does she practise every afternoon?

3	Look at the table	e and make	some senten	ces with <i>often, once a day</i> etc.
				Eva often goes swimming

ACTIVITY	EVA	TOM
goes swimming	1/d*	1/m
plays football	-1	3/w
plays tennis	1/w	1/y
goes skiing	5-6/y	-
goes to the theatre	1/w	2-3/y
goes to the cinema	3-4/y	2/m
goes to concerts	-	1/w

*1/d	= c	nce	a	day;
------	-----	-----	---	------

2/m = twice a month; etc

Eva goes swimming once a day / every day.
Tom goes to the theatre two or three times a year.

• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	 		
*******	 		**************
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	 	******	

4 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: go with spare-time activities

Look at the pictures, and put the correct numbers with the activities.

Use a dictionary if necessary.

IN YOUR SPARE TIME YOU CAN:

go walking go climbing

go swimming

go sailing

go wind-surfing

go skiing

go skating

go fishing

go shopping go to the opera

go to the theatre

go to concerts

	2	3	4	
5		, ,	8	
0000000				

S Write some sentences about your spare-time activities. Use words from Exercises 1–	5	5	Write some sentences al	bout your spare-time	activities. Use words	from Exercises 1–4
--	---	---	-------------------------	----------------------	-----------------------	--------------------

>	I never go climbing.	4
>	1 go swimming every day	5
1		6
2		7
3		8



interested and interesting etc

Interested, bored, excited etc say how people feel.
Interesting, boring, exciting etc describe the things (or people) that cause the feelings.

She's very interested in the lessons. (NOT She's very interesting in the lessons.)
The lessons are always interesting. (NOT The lessons are always interested.)
I'm often bored at work, because I've and a boring job.

1 w	drite these words under the pictures: interested, interesting, bored, boring.
1	
2 P	ut in words from the box.
	annoyed (= 'a little angry') ✓ annoying excited exciting frightened frightening surprised surprising
1 2 3 4	Somebody phones you late at night. You are
	ere are the beginnings of five books. Write what you think of the books. Use very interesting, uite interesting, not very interesting, quite boring or very boring.
1	
2	I think this book is probably
3	Since the beginning of history, cats
4	The man in black had already killed five people that morning. The sixth
5	Four billion years ago, our world
M	RAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: adverbs of degree; subjects of study lake sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then write how sterested you are in some of the subjects. You can use extremely $(= +++)$, very, quite, not or not at all $(=)$.

T a	art	biology	economics	history	literature	mathematics	philosophy	physics	politics	
I'm extremely interested in			l'm							
I'm very bored by										
ľm	not a	at all				********		*****		÷

fast, hard, hardly, well, friendly, ...

Fast, hard, late, early, daily, weekly and monthly are adjectives and adverbs. He's got a fast car. He drives fast. laot an early flight. I went home early. It's hard work. She works hard. It's a weekly paper. I buy it weekly. The train was late. Trains are running late. Hardly and lately have different meanings from hard and late. Hardly = 'almost not'; lately = 'recently', 'not long ago' He hardly works these days - maybe one day a week. Have you heard from John lately? Well can be an adjective (the opposite of ill) or an adverb (the opposite of badly). 'How are you?' 'Very well, thanks.' The team are playing well.

These are sentences from real conversations. Put in words from the boxes.

	early	hard	hardly	weekly	well			
1	Andlr	eally un	derstand I	talian quite	e			
2	You've got no playschool tomorrow so you haven't got to get up, have you?							
3	Why should I work when you never do anything?							
4	Depar	tures fro	m the UK	are		mid-morning on Sundays from Dover.		
5	She was really, you know, nervous, and came out of her flat at all.							

CI	Choose the best answer.									
	You look, Mike. (early / lately / well)									
1	Your father read the Express when he was alive. (hardly / Daily / lately)									
2	You haven't seen the window cleaner, have you? (lately / hard / weekly)									
3	I ran as as I could, along the Tottenham Court Road. (early / fast / hardly)									
4	I sleep – an hour at a time. (well / hard / hardly)									
5	I got up to finish some work. (well / hardly / early)									
6	My daughter cooks really(hardly / well / lately)									
7	I went to bed very last night. (late / lately / hardly)									
8	I go to Cambridge for a business meeting. (well / hardly / weekly)									
9	I need a rest. I've been working all week. (lately / hard / hardly)									
10	My grandfather hasn't been very well(early / lately / daily)									

Friendly, lonely, lovely, silly are adjectives, not adverbs.

She gave me a friendly smile. (BUT NOT She smiled friendly.)

He was very lonely. (BUT NOT He-walked-lonely-through the streets.)

Her voice is lovely. (BUT NOT She sings lovely.) Don't be silly.

There are no adverbs friendlily, lovelily etc. Instead, we use other words or expressions.

She spoke in a friendly way. She sings beautifully.

Correct (\checkmark) or not (x)?

- 1 He spoke very friendly, but I didn't like him.
- 2 You have a lovely smile.
- 3 He's not stupid, but he sometimes talks really silly.
- 4 He doesn't speak English very well, but he writes it lovely.
- 5 I gave her a friendly look, but she turned away.

adjectives and adverbs: more practice

1 Word order.

Where do the adjectives and adverbs go?

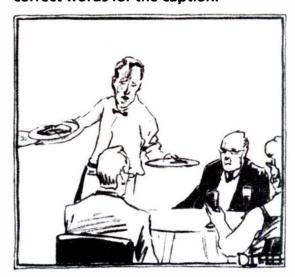
- ► She's a (cook. (good)
- 1 She was driving a fast car. (red)
- 2 She speaks Chinese. (perfect)
- 3 She speaks Chinese. (perfectly)
- 4 I lost my keys. (yesterday)
- 5 I've got a meeting tomorrow. (very important)
- 6 Anna read Peter's letter. (slowly)
- 7 Tim plays the piano. (brilliantly)
- 8 Lucy is unhappy. (terribly)
- 9 They make very good ice cream. (here)
- 10 She's been unmarried for 15 years. (happily)

2 Adjective or adverb?

Circle the correct answers.

- 1 You are making a terrible / terribly mistake.
- 2 She walked up the steps slow / slowly.
- 3 It was raining very hard / hardly when I got up.
- 4 The boss is a really friend / friendly person.
- 5 | cook very bad / badly.
- 6 Amelia looks very unhappy / unhappily.
- 7 I'm extreme / extremely sorry I arrived so late / lately.
- 8 I drove very careful / carefully on the snow.
- 9 I was late / lately because of a problem with the trains.
- 10 I've complete / completely forgotten his name.
- 11 Your hair looks beautiful / beautifully.
- 12 He doesn't work very hard / hardly.
- 13 I can't understand her. She talks very unclear / unclearly.
- 14 The President spoke in *perfect / perfectly* French.
- 15 This letter isn't very good / well written.

4 Adjective or adverb? Choose the correct words for the caption.



'Be careful / Be carefully, these plates are extreme / extremely dirty.'

Adverbs with the verb. Write sentences about yourself.

1	Loften
2	I never
3	I am sometimes
4	l usually
	I have often
6	I have never
7	I have always
	I am certainly
	I will probably
	I will definitely

1

	lixed structures. These sentences are all wrong. Can you correct the mistakes?
	She was wearing a red beautiful coat. a beautiful red coat
1	There are films interestings on TV tonight.
2	There's a good and cheap restaurant in Dover St.
3	He's tall, dark, good-looking.
4	I am very interesting in the lessons.
5	l like very much this music.
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	
11	There were some difficults questions in the test.
12	
13	
14	
15	You're walking too fastly for me.
16	
17	The manager welcomed us in perfectly English.
18	
19	
20	
	The first state of the examination of the examinati
6 G	irammar in a text. Put in adjectives or adverbs from the box.
	daily early fast friendly hard hardly late lonely silly
	and a second sec
	don't like getting up so I usually stay in bed too long, and then have to eat breakfast very
	and run for my train. On the train I read the 2 paper, because after I get
	o work there's no more time for reading. The boss is nice, but she makes us work very 3,
	nd I often have to stay 4 to finish everything. There's a nice new secretary in the office.
	5 know her, but she always gives me a 6 smile when I arrive. She hasn't lived
he	ere long. Perhaps it's a 7 idea, but I wonder if she's 8 I think I'll ask her out.
7	RAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: nouns and adjectives. Find the answers. Use a dictionary to help
y	ou. Different answers are possible.
ſ	a bed a light apples children coffee hair holidays milk skin water ✓ water
	a bear a light apples emiliately conce than monadys think shift water water
	It can be cold, warm or hot
1	It can be strong or weak
2	It can be deep or shallow
3	They can be long or short 9 They can be sweet or sour
4	It can be dark or fair
5	It can be bright or dim.
8 Ir	nternet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find some simple sentences with hard
aı	nd some with <i>hardly</i> . Write three of each.
1	4
2	5
3	

adjectives and adverbs: revision test

0		rite the adverbs.			
	qu	iick guickly real	comple	te	possible
	ha	ppy nice	easy	bea	nutiful
	pr	obable usual	in	credible	
	un	nhappy right	sin	cere	hungry
		reful perfect		varm	
	co	mprehensible slow			3,
		·			
2		here do the adjectives and adverbs go?			
		It's a day. (nice)	8	Karl plays the violin. (v	ery badly)
	1	I saw a good film. (yesterday)	9	I have paid. (already)	
	2	Andy can help you. (definitely)	10	He was wearing a new	suit. (blue)
	3	You speak Russian. (very well)	11	We see Annie and Seb.	. (often)
	4	She smiles. (never)	12	Emma read the report.	(slowly)
	5	Alice had some ideas. (really interesting)	13	Judy and Simon are lat	te. (always)
	6	They sell very good clothes. (here)	14	You are right. (probably	y)
	7	I have been to Norway. (never)	15	I go to the cinema. (ha	rdly ever)
	_				
3		orrect (✓) or not (✗)?			
		I had a headache very bad		Fill in this form very ca	
		Read this now		I complete forgot to pl	
	1	She makes wonderfully soup		She studied very hardl	-
		I spoke to them very slow and clear		Everybody spoke perfe	_
		It snowed very hard yesterday		This fish isn't very well	
		That secretary isn't very friendly		They asked some diffic	-
		I sing terribly bad		Do you know a hotel g	
		Your baby looks really happy I'm sorry I got here so lately	13	i never nave understoc	ou maths
	,	This sorry i got here so lately			
4	Th	nese sentences are all wrong. Can you correc		nistakes?	
		He was wearing black old boots. old black be	oots		
	1	He's short, fat, stupid-looking.			
	2	We usually are at home on Saturdays			
	3	I am boring in the science lessons			
	4	People never will stop fighting			
	5	I listen always to the news at breakfast			
	6	'Jenny's in hospital.' 'The poor!'			
	7	We often have been to India			
	8	We're terrible late.			
	9	They stood up slow when we walked in			
	10	The weather already is getting better			
	11	Never you tell me what you are thinking			
	12	Your hair looks beautifully today.			
	13	John probably has forgotten my name again			
	14	I don't like you driving so fastly.			

SECTION 16 comparison

grammar summary

We can compare people and things with each other using as ... as, -er than or more ... than.

Joe's as tall as me. Jane's taller than me. She works more carefully than me.

We can use -est or most to compare people and things with all of their group.

John is the oldest of Mary's children. Nasima's the most intelligent person in the class.

We use -er and -est with shorter adjectives and some short adverbs; we use more and most with other adjectives and adverbs.

London's wildest nightclub

'Best sports car of the year'

- it's bigger, lighter, stronger and faster.

100% Organic Soup

Nothing could be more comforting

The world's longest running musical:

Les Misérables

The sooner you come to us, the sooner you'll find the job you want.







The finest vegetables you've ever tasted

30% CHEAPER

20% FASTER

50% BETTER

comparative and superlative adjectives: forms

Comparative adjectives are forms like colder, more famous. Superlative adjectives are forms like coldest, most famous.

•		ld → older, oldest ice → nicer, nicest
•	 cold colder, coldest late later, latest green safe rich 	5 strange
•	short adjectives ending in one vowel + one consonant: double consonant + -er, -est BUT don't double w: fat → fatter, fattest low → lower, lowes	
2	 red redder, reddest slow slower, slowest 	3 new
•	two-syllable adjectives ending in -y: $y \rightarrow i + -er$, -est	happy → happier, happiest
3	► friendly friendlier friendliest 1 lazy	3 sleepy
•	most other longer adjectives: + more, most hop	peful → more hopeful, most hopeful
4	► famous more famous, most famous 1 careful 2 beautiful	4 dangerous
•	irregular adjectives: $good \rightarrow better, best bad - far \rightarrow further, furthest OR for the second s$	
6	Put in irregular comparative adjectives. I know that my handwriting is bad, but Jenny's is? I'm so tired. Is the bus stop much? I don't enjoy train travel here, but I do in France – the train 'How's your toothache today?' 'It's	ains are there.

comparative or superlative?

We use comparatives to compare people and things with other people and things.

A is bigger than B.

A is bigger than B and c.

John is a more careful driver than Robin.



Dawn is tall.



Dawn is taller than Leah.





Dawn is taller than all the other players.



We use superlatives (usually with the) to compare people and things with all of the group that they are in.

A is the biggest of the three letters A, B and c.

John is the most careful driver in the family.



Dawn is the tallest player in the team.

1 Circle the correct answer.

- Dawn is older the oldest than all of her sisters.
- Leah is taller / the tallest person in her family.
- 1 All of the players are nice, but Sarah is certainly the nicer / the nicest.
- 2 This is the better / the best women's basketball team in the country.
- 3 Basketballs are more expensive / the most expensive than footballs.
- 4 Ice hockey is a more dangerous / most dangerous sport than basketball or tennis.
- 5 Of all the sports in the Olympics, which sport is more dangerous? / the most dangerous?
- 6 A basketball court is usually bigger / the biggest than a tennis court.
- 7 Which is the faster / the fastest game? Not chess.
- 8 Which is the more / most expensive game? Poker?

2 Choose a comparative or a superlative. Remember to use *the* before the superlatives.

- ➤ 'The Marriage of Figaro' is ...the most beautiful of all Mozart's operas. (beautiful)
- My new car is .. faster than my old one. (fast)
- 1 My mother and her sisters are all than their children. (short)
- 2 I think Annie is person in our class. (intelligent)
- 3 Let's meet in the library it's than all the other rooms. (quiet)
- 4 My bedroom is room in the house. (cold)
- 5 A 3-year-old's voice is than 200 people in a busy restaurant. (loud)
- 6 Brazil is South American country. (big)
- 7 My computer is much than me. (intelligent)
- 8 Which is thing to study? (boring)



comparatives: use brighter than the moon

We use than after comparative adjectives.

Russia is bigger than China. (NOT ... that China:) Rob and Tina are older than Emma.

Compare each pair of things in the box. Write two sentences for each pair. More than one answer may be possible.

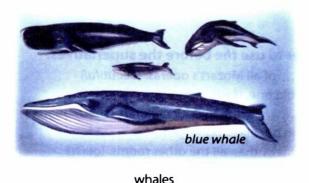
COMPARE: the sun and the moon ✓ dogs and cats train travel and air travel Canada and Ireland the Sahara and the Himalayas **English and Chinese** ADJECTIVES: big cheap cold difficult fast friendly bright 🗸 easy hot intelligent small 🗸 small

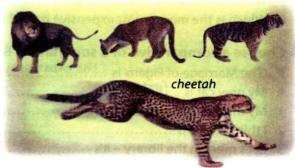
	The sun is brighter than the moon.	5	
	The moon is smaller than the sun		
1		7	
2		8	
3		9	
4		10	

.....

- Use comparative adjectives with ... than all the other ...
 - ► Alaska's area is 1,518,700km². No other US state is so large.

 Alaska is larger than all the other US states.
 - 1 The Amazon is 6,670km long. No other river in South America is so long.
 - 2 Blue whales can weigh 120 tonnes. No other whales are so heavy.
 - 3 Mont Blanc is 4,807m high. No other mountain in the Alps is so high.
 - 4 Cheetahs can run at 110km/h. No other big cats are so fast.
 - 5 The Atacama desert has no rain. No other deserts are so dry.
 - 6 Redwoods can grow up to 110 metres. No other trees are so tall.





big cats

With comparatives, we can say ... than I am / than you are / than John is etc. But in informal spoken English, we usually prefer ... than me/you/him/her/it/us/them.

3	Write two endings for each sentence: one with than me, than you etc and one with
	than I am, than you are etc.

	Tariq was angry, but I was angrier than him / than he was.
1	John's very careful with money, but Maria

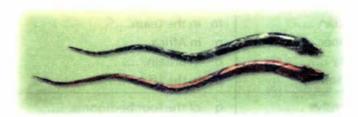
2 I'm hungry, but you must be

3 You're not very short. Tony's 4 We're excited, but our children

5 My girlfriend is so beautiful. No other woman

We can use a lot / a bit (more conversational) or much / a little before comparatives.

Your cooking is much better than my sister's. (NOT ... very better ... AND NOT ... too better ...) This book is a lot more interesting than that one. You sound a bit happier today.





a bit longer

much longer

4 Use the table. Write sentences about Mark and Simon with a bit / a little and a lot / much with the adjectives from the box.

Г						
l	short 🗸/ tall	old / young	rich	fast / slow	comfortable	quiet / noisy

	How	How	How
	tall?	old?	rich?
Mark	1m95	35	€900,000/year
Simon	1m85	36	€250,000/year

	How	How	How
	fast?	comfortable?	quiet?
Mark's car	190km/h	***	**
Simon's car	130km/h	**	****

>	Simon is a bit (OR a little) shorter than Mark.	
1		
2		
	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	
9		Simon





We can use more than and less than without adjectives.

Liz spent more than a week's pay on that dress. It took us less than ten minutes to get home.



superlatives the highest mountain in the world

After superlatives, we normally use in before the names of places.

Everest is the highest mountain in the world. (NOT ... of the world.)

Jamal is the most intelligent person in the office.

Sirius is the brightest star in the sky.

After superlatives, we also use in before singular words for groups of people.

Sam is the youngest player in the orchestra.

Wilkins is the oldest minister in this government.

In most other cases, we use of after superlatives.

Anna's the tallest of the three sisters.

This is the shortest day of the year.

Put the beginnings, middles and ends together.

0	Jonathan is My great-great-aunt is	A the biggest state B the longest river		k 1	in the group in my family
2	London is	C	the best musician	m	in the team. \dots .
3	Alaska is	D	the fastest runner $$.	n	in Africa
4	The guitar player is	E	the biggest city	0	in Britain
5	The Nile is	F	the oldest person	р	in the USA
6	My parents' room is	G	the most expensive	q	of the four bedrooms
7	The Mercedes is	н	the longest day	r	of the five girls
8	Sarah is		the youngest	s	of the three cars
9	June 21st is	J	the biggest	t	of the year

Write sentences with superlatives.

	In my job, Friday / busy day / week In my job, Friday is the busiest day of the week.
1	In the 1970s, the Beatles / rich musicians / world
2	Eric says that Eleanor / good singer / group
3	When I was a child, my father / tall man / our town
4	In this country, February / cold month / year
5	Who / old / your three aunts?
6	Helen is very intelligent, but she / quiet person / my class
7	Which / good / these three bikes / ?
8	Which / big city / Argentina / ?

There is so much good in the worst of us, and so much bad in the best of us.

(Author unknown)

comparison of adverbs More slowly, please.

u speak more quietly , please? I'm working more slowly today than yesterday. writes more clearly than Ellie.					
ite sentences with comparative adverbs and <i>than</i> .					
Jacob drives / dangerously / Sam Jacob drives more dangerously than Sam.					
Lee talks to people / politely / Ben					
Liam works / carefully / John					
Simon goes swimming / often / Karen					
My car runs / quietly / my sister's car					
Annie talks / slowly / Rob					
Olivia thinks / clearly / most people					
Jack dresses / expensively / me					
live / cheaply / my friends					
short adverbs have comparatives with -er, like adjectives. Examples: early, late, fast, hard, high,					
the station earlier than Mary Rill lives nearer to school than Pete, so he gets up later					
ar comparatives: $well \rightarrow better$ $badly \rightarrow worse$ $far \rightarrow further/farther$					
little → less a lot/much → more					
My mother drives better than my father. He sings badly, but I sing worse . She talks less than he does, but she thinks more . I live further from the centre than you.					
Use the comparatives of the adverbs in the box to complete the advice.					
early fast hard 🗸 high late little long much near					
I want to earn more money. 'Work harder.					
want to eat my breakfast slowly in the morning.' 'Get up'					
I want to get more sleep.' 'Get up'					
I want to be stronger.' 'Exercise' I hate driving to work.' 'Live to your work and walk.'					
the station earlier than Mary. Bill lives nearer to school than Pete, so he gets up later. ar comparatives: well better badly worse far further/farther little less a lot/much more ther drives better than my father. He sings badly, but I sing worse. ks less than he does, but she thinks more. I live further from the centre than you. the comparatives of the adverbs in the box to complete the advice.					

Sentences with superlative adverbs (for example John drives the most dangerously) are not very common.

6 'I'm afraid I'm going to miss the train: 'Walk'
7 'I'm no good at basketball.' 'Practise jumping'
8 'I want to learn everything there is: 'Live'



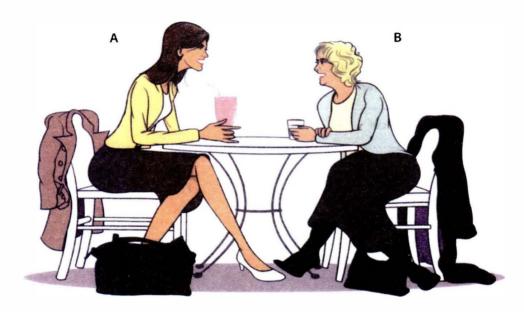
(not) as ... as Your hands are as cold as ice.

We use (not) as ... as to say that people and things are (not) the same in some way.

I don't think Tom is going to be **as tall as** his sister. Your hands are **as cold as** ice. Can you read this for me? My eyes are**n't as good as** yours.

Read the sentences and decide: which picture is Jenny and which picture is Cassie?

Jenny isn't as old as Cassie. Jenny's hands aren't as small as Cassie's. Cassie's hair isn't as long as Jenny's. Jenny isn't as fair as Cassie.



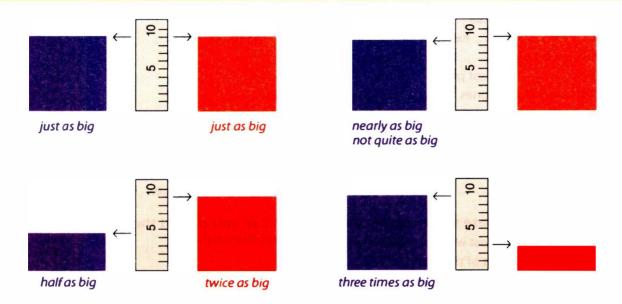
- 1	Picture A is	Picture B is					
Now write some more sentences about Jenny and Cassie with not as as.							
	1 slim						
:	2 tall						
	3 skirt / long	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					
4	4 bag / big						
	5 coat / heavy						
(6 glass / big						

With as ... as, we can say ... as I am / as you are / as John is etc. But in informal spoken English, we usually prefer ... as me/you/him/her/it/us/them.

1 You're nicer than the other doctor. The other doctor		
Nicole's sister isn't as pretty as she is. 1 You're nicer than the other doctor. The other doctor. 2 He's more interesting than his boss.		
2 He's more interesting than his boss.	•	Nicole's prettier than her sister. Nicole's sister isn't as pretty as her Nicole's sister isn't as pretty as she is.
	1	
77714,1177,7714,4174,774,774,744,417,774,444,44	2	He's more interesting than his boss.
3 I'm slimmer than my mother.	3	
4 We're more careful than the Browns.	4	We're more careful than the Browns.

We can put just, nearly, not quite and half, twice, three times etc before as ... as.

He's **just as** handsome **as** his brother. My hair is **not quite as** fair **as** my sister's hair. The twins are **nearly as** tall **as** their mother. Brazil is **half as** big **as** Russia.



3 Think of a member of your family. Compare yourself to him or her, using as ... as and some of the words and expressions from the box. Write five sentences.

half

	ADJECTIVES: da	dark	dark fair	friendly hand	hands	ome	happy	intelligent	kind	nice	
		old	pretty	quiet	short	slim	tall				
	I'm nearl	u as	tall as	Grace.			2				
	I'm not a						4				
1							5				
2							6				

twice

three times

etc

We can use as much as and as many as with nouns.

nearly

BEFORE AS: just

Deborah doesn't work as many hours as I do, but she makes just as much money as me.

not quite

	Alice has \$200 and Matt has \$100. Alice has twice as much money as Matt. Eric has 20 cousins, and Tony has 10. Eric
2	Ben eats 3 sandwiches every day; Jo eats 1.
3	Helen has 23 computer games and Adrian has 25.
4	Liz drinks 6 cups of coffee a day; Chris drinks 12.
5	
6	Rebecca only has a little free time; Fred has a lot.

comparison: more practice

1 M	ixed structures. Put in the correct words.
1	I'm not tall my sister.
2	This is the expensive restaurant the town.
3	Anna is a bit older her husband.
4	Who's best player the family?
5	Smith is good, but Jones is and Ericsson is the
6	Please drive slowly.
7	How much fruit can I have? Take much you want.
8	Texas is bigger France.
9	You're beautiful than I
10	A metre is more a centimetre and than a kilometre.
2 M	ixed structures. These sentences are all wrong (x). Can you correct the mistakes?
•	You're the beautifullest woman I have ever seen. most beautiful
1	She's the best pianist of the world.
2	My sister is much taller that me.
3	Katie is the more beautiful person here.
4	Please drive slowlier.
5	This is the more expensive hotel in London.
6	You drive much faster of me.
7	My hands are cold like ice.
8	James is much older as his wife.
9	Everest is more high than Mount Fuji.
10	We all sing badly, but I'm the worse.
11	My sister is the intelligentest person in the family.
	I'm happyer this year than last year.
	Tokyo is the biggest city of Japan.
	Robert is the youngest from the three children.
15	Sunday is best day of the week.
3 Mi	ixed structures. Look at the pictures and make sentences.
(
А	£17, 999 B £62, 999 C £24, 300
	Maximum speed 120km/h Maximum speed 200km/h Maximum speed 150km/h
•	B/fast/A Bis faster than A.
	B / fast / C
2	A / fast / B A is not as
	C / fast / B
	B / fast B is the
	C / expensive / A
	A / expensive / B
	B / expensive B is the
8	B / big / C
9	C / big / A
1.0	C / Lie

4 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: time. Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then answer the questions, using *more* and *less*.

	century	day	decade	hour	minute	month	second	week	year
>	How muc	h is a n	ninute?	More th	an a seco	nd and L	ess than i	an hour	
1	How muc	h is a d	lecade?						
2	How muc	h is a n	nonth?						
3	How muc	h is a w	veek?						
4	How muc	h is an	hour?						
5	How muc	h is a d	lay?						
6	How muc	h is a y	ear?						

Grammar in a text. Read the text carefully, and then answer the questions.

John lives in Birmingham. He is a bus driver. He is very interested in history. He is taller than Tom, and better-looking, but he doesn't have as much money as Tom. Tom works in an import-export firm in Liverpool. He collects antique furniture. He is deeply in love with Julia. He's much older than she is, but not as tall as she is, and he's really not very good-looking. Julia's friend Hannah lives in Birmingham, near her cousin Pete. She's exactly as old as he is, and they're both very interested in information technology. Pete runs a very successful computer business. He has much more money than Tom, but not nearly as much as Hannah. He has dark hair and blue eyes, and he's better looking than Tom, but not as tall as Tom. Pete and John are old friends. They often play tennis together. John is twice as old as Pete (he's nearly as old as Tom), but he usually wins when he and Pete play. They are both deeply in love with Julia. Julia works in a travel agency. She likes fast cars, travel, horse-riding and fashionable clothes. She often goes on holiday with Hannah. Hannah usually pays for the holidays, because Julia doesn't have as much money as Hannah. Hannah is taller than Julia, (but not as tall as John) and very beautiful. Hannah is deeply in love with the tallest of the three men. Julia is deeply in love with the oldest.

1	Who is Hannah in love with?
2	Who is Julia in love with?
3	Who is the richest of the five people?

6 Than, that or as? Complete the caption.



'There, dear! I think we've left the world a better place we found it!'

Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of the following gets most hits?

"beautifuller"8,100
"more beautiful"5,880,000
"more happy"
"happier"
"older that"
"older than"
"the highest mountain of Britain"
"the highest mountain in Britain"
"the best player of the team"
"the best player in the team"

comparison: revision test

	Vrite the comparatives and superlatives.		
•	tall taller, tallest	11	fat
1	interesting	12	happy
2	thin	13	late
3	cheap	14	hot
4	easy	15	slow
5	bad	16	big
6	beautiful	17	expensive
7	lazy	18	dirty
8	far	19	important
9	good	20	strong
10	old		
2 P	ut in as, than or that.		
1	My feet are cold ice.	6	He's as funny toothache.
2	She looks older her sister.	7	The car I saw was too small.
3	I think he's Chinese.	8	The cat seems worse yesterday.
4	Alice is much stronger her brother.	9	It's not as cold last week.
5	Can't you eat faster that?	10	She's got a more interesting job me
3 Pt	ut in the correct words.		
1	A kilogram is less a tonne and		than a gram.
	Jake is bad at languages, but he's not as bad as I		
3	I get up early, at 6.30; George gets up	, at	6.15, and Pam is the, at 6.00.
	Please speak slowly.		
5	Karl is oldest player	the t	eam.
6	'How many people can I invite?' ' ma		
7			
8	She's not nice her br	othe	er.
9	Siberia is bigger Europe.		
10	Phil is a bad teacher, and Annie is an	nd Do	ouglas is the
4 TI	hese sentences are all wrong. Can you correct t	he n	nistakes?
•	He's the intelligentest man I have ever met wost	tint	telligent
1	Which is the highest mountain of Europe?		
2			
3	Julie has the more interesting job in our office		
4	Your house is much nicer as ours.		
5	Please walk quicklier.		
6	His eyes are hard like stones.		
7	London is more big than Paris.		
8	My sister is the beautifullest of the three girls		
9	Paul is the oldest from the three children		
10	Monday is worst day of the week.		

SECTION 17 conjunctions

grammar summary

before while after although as soon as but until when and because so neither ... nor (For if, see Section 18.) both ... and either ... or (If necessary, use a dictionary to check the meanings of these conjunctions.)

We use conjunctions to join sentences together.

I went to Germany **because** Emma was there. We went home **after** the concert finished. I phoned **as soon as** I got the news.

Some conjunctions (and the words that follow them) can go in two places.

I cleaned my room before I went out. Before I went out, I cleaned my room.

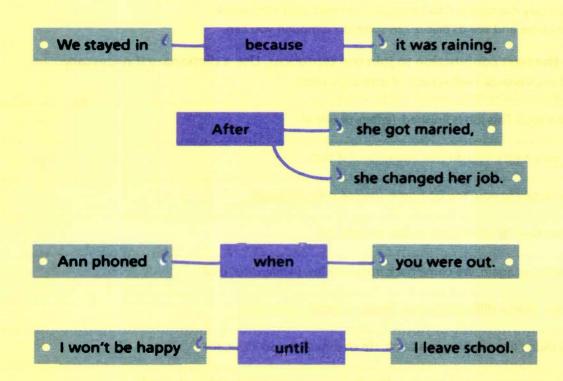
We use present tenses to talk about the future with time-conjunctions.

I'll phone you when I arrive. Let's wait here until somebody comes.

She'll pay you as soon as she has the money.

We can use *and* to join sentences, shorter expressions or single words. We **don't** need to repeat unnecessary words with *and*.

I went downstairs **and** (I) opened the door. I've got friends in Canada **and** (in) Australia. Could I have a knife **and** (a) fork?





conjunctions: introduction and, but, because ...

Conjunctions are words like *and, but, because, although, if, while, so, until.*We use conjunctions to join sentences together.

It was cold and I wanted to go home. I like him but I don't like her. He got up although he was ill. I didn't buy it because it was too expensive. if the train is late. I'll phone you Andrew called while you were out. It was raining I took my umbrella. I waited Mary was ready. until Let's go out as soon as Peter arrives.

Circle the best conjunction.

- ▶ I'll phone you although / so / when arrive.
- 1 The party was boring, although / because / so I went home.
- 2 The weather was nice, although / or / until it was a bit cold.
- 3 She speaks good French, after / because / but she has a strong English accent.
- 4 I enjoyed my month in Argentina, although / and / but I learnt a lot of Spanish.
- 5 I'll tell you my plans because / so / while we're having lunch.
- 6 I helped him after / because / or he was a good friend.
- 7 I'll wait here with you as soon as / until your train leaves.
- 8 Let's talk about the future while / because / or we're walking.
- 9 You can pay me now or / so / because I can wait until next week.
- 10 Please come and see us before / as soon as / although you can.

E	2	Choose the best conjunction to	join the sentences. Use a dic	tionary if necessary.
_		•		,

	I lived in Liverpool antil I left school.
1	We'll be glad. This job is finished. (when, or, while)
2	I'll be very angry. You do that again. (and, if, but)
3	I'd like to talk to you. You go home. (before, and, although)
4	Sue watched TV. John came home. (if, until, or)
5	We'll see you again. We come back from holiday. (while, after, and)
6	I like her. She's a difficult person. (because, before, although)
7	Henry didn't like working in a bank. He changed his job. (if, or, so)
8	They think they can do what they like. They're rich. (because, although, until)
9	I want to stop working. I'm 50. (if, before, and)
10	You look beautiful. You're smiling. (or, so, when)

position of conjunctions If you need help, ask me.

When we use conjunctions , there are often two possil 1 Start with the conjunction (and the part that follows it).	bilities. 2 Put the conjunction between the two parts of the sentence.			
CONJUNCTION bbbbb, aaaaa	Aaaaa(,) CONJUNCTION bbbbb			
IF you need help, please ask me. WHEN you are in London, phone us.	Please ask me IF you need help. Phone us WHEN you are in London.			
ALTHOUGH it was raining, I went out. AS SOON AS she could, she went to bed.	I went out, ALTHOUGH it was raining hard. She went to bed AS SOON AS she could.			
Note that we often put commas (,) in sentences with conjunctions, especially in longer sentences.				

Ne u	usually use a comma if we start with the conjunction.
P	Out these sentences together in two ways.
	I enjoyed the film. The beginning was boring. (although) I enjoyed the film, although the beginning was boring. Although the beginning was boring, I enjoyed the film.
1	I put on two sweaters. It was very cold. (because)
2	I'm going to work in Australia. I leave school. (when)
3	I go and see Felix. I want to talk to somebody. (if)
4	Ann made coffee. Bill fried some eggs. (while)
5	I was interested in the conversation. I didn't understand everything. (although)
6	We went to a restaurant. There was no food in the house. (because)
	$\cdots \cdots $
7	We'll have a big party. John comes home. (when)
8	I stayed with friends. My parents were travelling. (while)
9	I go for long walks at the weekend. The weather's fine. (if)
10	Come and see us. You arrive in Scotland. (as soon as)

NOTE: and, but, or and so always come between the two parts of the sentence.

tenses with time conjunctions I'll see you before you go.

We u	se the simple present with a future meaning after before, after, while, until, when and as soon as.
l'll see	e you before you go . (NOT before you will go.) We'll talk about it after I get back.
ou c	an use my car while I'm in Ireland. Don't move until I tell you.
	phone when he gets home . (NOT when he will get home.)
le'll .	start the party as soon as Alice arrives.
Pı	ut in verbs from the box. Use the simple present.
	arrive be finish get go hear leave make open ✓ stop write
-	M :- 1
	Wait here until Jane the door. 5 I'll cook supper after I back from
1	Call me as soon as you about the the gym.
_	exam. 6 I'm going to travel round the world before I
2	Can you hold the baby while I
_	coffee? 7 I'm not going out until the rain
3	What's John going to do when he
	school? 9 We'll call you as soon as we in Paris.
4	Give my love to Sue when you to her. 10 We'll go for a drink after the class
Pu	ut in verbs from the box (simple present or will).
	come find get give ✓ help look after look start stop tell travel
	I'll give you my address before I say goodbye.
1	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
1	Lisa's going to live here until she a job.
2	We're going to look after Sue's flat while she round America.
3	I
4	We're early – we've got half an hour before the lesson
5	I
6	Can I go and see Maggie while you the kids?
7	When I get time, I for a new place to live.
8	Mum's going to move to Scotland after she work.
9	I'll bring you a present when I home.
10	Things worse before they get better.
W	rite five or more sentences about yourself, using some of the beginnings in the box.
	When I leave school, I'll When I finish university, I'll When I get married, I'll
	When I have children, I'll When my children leave home, I'll When I stop work, I'll
	When I have time, I'll When I'm 20/30/40/50/60/70/80/90/100, I'll
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	

because and so; although and but

We can say why things happen with because or so (but not both). Because Sue was tired, she went to bed. / Sue went to bed because she was tired. OR Sue was tired, so she went to bed. (BUT NOT Because Sue was tired, so she went to bed.) We usually put a comma (,) before so. For more about commas with conjunctions, see page 235. Join the sentences with because (twice) and with so. ▶ He passed the exam. He had a good teacher. Because he had a good teacher, he passed the exam. He passed the exam because he had a good teacher. He had a good teacher, so he passed the exam. 1 I changed my hotel. The rooms were dirty. 2 The taxi was late. We missed the train. 3 I didn't like the film. I walked out of the cinema. We can say that things are not as we expect with although or but (but not both). Although Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired. OR Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't go to bed.) We usually put commas before although and but. Join the sentences with although (twice) and with but. She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher. She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam. 1 I felt ill. I went on working. 2 She was very kind. I didn't like her. 3 He's a big man. He doesn't eat much.

and I speak Russian, English and Swahili.

We can use and to join sentences, shorter expressions or single words.

Sylvia won the first game and Pete won the second.

'What's she interested in?' 'Scottish dancing and mountain climbing.'

'What shall we have for supper?' 'Fish and chips.'

In lists, we usually put and between the last two things, and commas (,) between the others.

We need soap, bread, orange juice, tomatoes and sugar.

She was beautiful, intelligent and kind. (NOT ... beautiful, intelligent, kind.)

write the sentences using and and commas.

► She speaks (French German Japanese Arabic).

She speaks French, German, Japanese and Arabic.

1 My company has offices in (London Tokyo New York Cairo).

2 I've invited (Paul Alexandra Eric Luke Janet).

3 I'll be here on (Tuesday Thursday Friday Sunday).

4 She's got (five cats two dogs a horse a rabbit).

5 He plays (golf rugby hockey badminton).

6 She (addressed stamped posted) the letter.

When we use and, we do not usually repeat unnecessary words.

She sings and **she** plays the violin.

He plays tennis and **he plays** badminton.

They have offices in Britain and in America.

We stayed with my brother and my sister.

The house and the garden were full of people.

I've been to Greece and I've been to Turkey.

I washed my shirt and I dried my shirt.

- She sings and plays the violin.
- He plays tennis and badminton.
- They have offices in Britain and America.
- → We stayed with my brother and sister.
- → The house and garden were full of people.
- → I've been to Greece and Turkey.
- → I washed and dried my shirt.

Cross out the unnecessary words, and put in commas if necessary.

- I speak Russian, and + speak English and + speak Swahili.
- 1 She has painted the kitchen and she has painted the living room and she has painted the dining room.

.....

.....

- 2 Bob was wearing a pink shirt and Bob was wearing blue jeans and Bob was wearing white trainers.
- 3 Can you give me a knife and can you give me a fork and can you give me a spoon, please?
- 4 Many people speak English in India and many people speak English in Singapore and many people speak English in South Africa.
- 5 I've written six letters and I've posted six letters this morning.

We use or in similar ways.

You can come with me or wait here. I don't speak German, French or Spanish.

double conjunctions both ... and; (n)either ... (n)or

We can make and more emphatic ('stronger') by using both and.		
He's b	oth a top sportsman and a famous writer. She both sings and dances.	
We ca	on make or more emphatic by using either or.	
You can either come with me now or find your own way home. We have time to see either the museum or the cathedral, but not both.		
Neither nor means not one and not the other.		
The le	ssons were neither interesting nor useful. He speaks neither English nor French.	
	ake sentences with both and, either or or neither nor.	
•	She speaks (Chinese + Japanese +) She speaks both Chinese and Japanese.	
	You can have either coffee or tea.	
•	I can (draw = sing =) I can neither draw nor sing.	
1	I think that she's (Scottish / Irish)	
2	I'd like to work with (animals / children)	
3	He did well in (mathematics	
4	This car is (fast — comfortable —)	
5	She (looked at me 🖃 said anything 🖃)	
6	I've got problems (at home	
7	You can (stay here / go home)	
8	│ like (theatre + cinema +)	
9	She speaks (English French)	
10	I don't understand (politics / economics)	
	······································	
2 Write some true sentences about yourself.		
1	I can both	
2	I can neither	
3	l like both	
4	I don't like either	
5	I haven't got either	
6		

conjunctions: more practice

U	Tenses with time conjunctions. Put in the simple present or will
	Ill phone you when I arrive (phone; arrive)
1	I think I some tea before I to bed. (<i>have</i> ; <i>go</i>)
2	? I here until your father (wait; arrive)
3	3 When you again, Ann here. (<i>come</i> ; <i>be</i>)
4	We sorry when Rachel back home. (<i>be</i> ; <i>go</i>)
5	After we home I something for supper. (<i>get</i> ; <i>cook</i>)
6	We your tickets as soon as we the money. (send; receive)
7	' I very busy until the exams over. (be; be)
8	Before I to Tokyo, I some Japanese lessons. (go; take)
9	As soon as the rain, I shopping. (stop; go)
10	We breakfast after Luke (have; get up)
	Position of conjunctions. Put these sentences together in two ways.
	The weather's good. I go fishing at weekends. (if) If the weather's good, I go fishing at weekends.
	I go fishing at weekends if the weather's good.
1	The teacher was ill. The children had a holiday. (because)
,	Notice in China I manda a lab afficienda (coban)
2	! I was in China. I made a lot of friends. (<i>when</i>)
2	The physic the party good it was difficult to get to any village (wet)
3	,
1	Jessica wrote three letters. Dylan never answered. (although)
4	•
5	
	Tphoned him. The work was infished. (ds 300/rds)
3	Double conjunctions. Make sentences with both and, either or or neither nor.
1	I (swim ∓ play tennis +)
2	He (<i>lives / works</i>) in Birmingham.
3	My father speaks (Greek 🗖 French 🗖).
4	She likes (pop music 🖃 jazz 🖃).
5	You can have (orange juice / water).
6	I can (sing 🗖 dance 🗖).
7	He's (Scottish / Irish).
8	
9	
10	Anna (looked at Henry 🗖 spoke to him 🗐).

ndy Prohe	art was hore	d at school	1	he left	2	he was	civtoen 3	
			not stay there					
-	_	-	vas very low					
vas in an in	nport-expor	t company. H	He liked that	much bette	r 7	he tra	velled to An	nerica a
was in an import-export company. He liked that much better 7 he travelled to America a lot 8 the work was very well paid. He worked there for three years, 9 he r							he re	
			arted his ow					
	sometimes	very hard. He	e says he wan	its to make 6	enough mor	ney to stop w	orking 11	
e is 50.								
RAMMAR	AND VOCAE	BULARY: mu	sical instru	ments. Loc	ok at the ta	ble and ma	ike sure yo	u know
			n make sent				f the instru	uments.
_	uitar, piano)		ays both th					
	David, cello		Joanna no					
	3							
	•							
6 (Sophie, guitar, trumpet) 7 (Charles, Steve, saxophone) 8 (Sophie, Steve, trumpet)								
	Steve, trump	et)	PH P				15	
S (Sophie, :								
Joanna	Steve, trump	drums	trombone	guitar	piano	saxophone	trumpet	violi
S (Sophie, :	Steve, trump cello	drums	trombone	guitar	piano	saxophone	trumpet	violii
Joanna Karl	cello	drums	trombone	guitar	piano	saxophone	trumpet	violi
Joanna Karl David	cello	drums	trombone /	guitar	piano	saxophone	trumpet	violi
Joanna Karl David Steve	cello x	drums	trombone x	guitar / / /	piano / / /	saxophone x y	trumpet	violi
Joanna Karl David Steve Melanie	cello x	drums X V	trombone / x / / x	guitar / / / / /	piano / / / / X	saxophone x y	trumpet / / / / /	violin
Joanna Karl David Steve Melanie Sophie	cello x y	drums X V	trombone / x / / /	guitar	piano / / / / / / / / /	saxophone	trumpet / / / X	violin
Joanna Karl David Steve Melanie Sophie Karen	cello x y	drums X V V	trombone / x / / / / /	guitar / / / X / / / / / / / / /	piano / / / / / / / / / / / / /	saxophone	trumpet / / / X /	violii
Joanna Karl David Steve Melanie Sophie Karen Charles	cello X / / / / / / / / / / / /	drums X / / / / / / / / / / / /	trombone / x / / / / /	guitar	piano / / / / X / X	saxophone / X / / / / / / / / / / /	trumpet / / / X / X	violi

"while I will be there"

"while I am there"

conjunctions: revision test

	Choose the right conjunctions and put the sentences together.
	I was tired. I went to bed. (while, so, after) I was tired, so I went to bed.
1	I'm going to do some gardening. It gets dark. (because, but, until)
Z	2 couldn't read. It was too dark. (although, because, so)
3	The food wasn't very good. He ate everything. (so, but, because)
4	The lesson finished early. We went for a walk. (but, until, so)
5	
6	
7	You can't have any more coffee. There isn't any more. (so, because, why)
8	I didn't go to work. The buses weren't running. (<i>because, although, as soon as</i>)
ç	The buses weren't running. I didn't go to work. (<i>until, so, as soon as</i>)
10) The phone always rings. I'm having a bath. (<i>while, until, so</i>)
11	I can't tell you the decision. I know myself. (as soon as, while, until)
12	P. He didn't work very hard. He passed all his exams. (so, but, because)
13	The holiday was over. I had to start working very hard. (<i>when, until</i>)
14	Andrew saw Zoë. He fell madly in love with her. (as soon as, until, but)
15	l left school. I worked as a taxi driver. (until, after, while)
	Correct the mistakes.
2	
1	You can either stay here either come with me. $0^{\prime\prime}$
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	You can either come in my car or either walk home.
8	I need a knife and I need a fork.
9	Although I would like to help you, but I don't have time.
10	I play both classical music and I play jazz.
11	I'll change my job as soon as I'll find another one.
12	Will you still love me when I'll be old?

grammar summary

Most tenses are possible in sentences with if.

He won't come tomorrow if he came yesterday.

If that was Mary, why didn't she stop and say hello?

If you've been to Paris, you've seen the Eiffel Tower.

Oil floats if you pour it on water.

If you're happy, I'm happy.

Note the following three important structures:

present tenses for future:

With if, we use present tenses to talk about the future.

I'll phone you if I have time. (NOT ... if I will have time.)

• if + past, ... would ...

We can use past tenses with if to show that something is not real or not probable now. (We normally use would in the other part of the sentence.)

If I had more money, I would buy a car now.

• if + past perfect, ... would have ...

To talk about unreal past events – things that did not happen – we use if + past perfect. (We normally use would have + past participle in the other part of the sentence.)

I'm sorry you had all those problems. If you had asked me, I would have helped you.

These three structures are often called 'first', 'second' and 'third conditional'.

The structure with two present tenses (e.g. *If you're happy, I'm happy*) is sometimes called 'zero conditional', for no very good reason.

We can use unless to mean 'if not', 'except if'.

You can't come in unless you have a ticket. (=' if you don't have a ticket.')

مجعزبانايرانيان

If you were the only girl in the world, and I were the only boy . . .

(Song by Clifford Grey, British songwriter, born 1937)

If you can find something that everyone agrees on, it's wrong.

(Mo Udall, American politician, 1922-1998)

If God did not exist, it would be necessary to invent him.

(Voltaire, French writer, 1694-1788)

If the automobile had followed the same development cycle as the computer, a Rolls-Royce would today cost \$100, get a million miles per gallon, and explode once a year, killing everyone inside.

(Robert X. Cringely, InfoWorld magazine)

If you can keep your head when all about you are losing theirs, . . . you'll be a man, my son. (Rudyard Kipling, British short-story writer, novelist and poet, 1865-1936)

If you can keep your head when all about you are losing theirs, you just don't know what's going on.

(British Army saying)

If one morning I walked on top of the water across Potomac River, the headline that afternoon would read "President Can't Swim". (Lyndon B. Johnson, American politician, 1908–1973 – President 1963–1969)

If the human mind was simple enough to understand, we'd be too simple to understand it.

(Emerson Pugh, American writer on technology)

if: position; unless

An *if*-clause can come at the beginning or end of a sentence. When it comes first, it is often separated by a comma (,).

If I have time, I'll clean up the garden.

I'll clean up the garden if I have time.

	Us	se <i>if</i> to put these sentences together in two ways.
	•	Joe works at Brown's. He probably knows Annie. If Joe works at Brown's, he probably knows Annie.
		Joe probably knows Annie if he works at Brown's.
	1	I can't sleep. I get up and read.
	2	You take books from my room. Please tell me.
	2	Variable was Mike day's variable and a same and a
	3	You're hungry. Why don't you cook some soup?
	4	She's been travelling all day. She must be tired
	5	We catch the first train. We can be in London by 9.00.
	•	
		an use <i>unless</i> to mean 'if not', 'except if'.
		an't come in unless you have a ticket. (= 'You can't come in if you don't have a ticket.') ss I'm very tired, I go to bed about midnight. (= 'Except if I'm very tired')
T		
		ewrite these sentences with <i>unless</i> .
		Children can't go in if they are not with an adult. Children can't go in unless they are with an adult.
		If you don't give me my money, I'm going to the police. unless you give me my money, I'm going to the police.
	1	You can't park here if you don't live in this street.
	2	If you are not over 15, you can't see this film.
	3	I don't drive fast except if I'm really late.
	4	If I'm not going fishing, I get up late on Sundays.
	5	We usually go for a walk after supper if there isn't a good film on TV.
	6	I see my mother at weekends if I'm not travelling.
	7	If it's not raining, I play tennis most evenings.
	•	Ti its not raining, i piay termis most evenings.
	8	I can't help you if you don't tell me the truth.

if: future I'll phone you if I hear from Alice.

Most tenses are possible in sentences with if. But after if, we normally use a present tense to talk about the future.

If it is sunny tomorrow, we'll eat in the garden. I'll phone you if I hearfrom Alice. I'll be sorry if I don't pass this exam.

	Thoose the best verb to complete the sentence.
	I'll buy you a sweater if Ifind a nice one. (find, hold, pay)
	If it rains, we 'll have the party indoors. (think, play, have)
1	I'll be glad if I a letter from Jack tomorrow. (expect, get, decide)
2	Olivia back your bike if she remembers. (come, bring, sell)
3	If you like, I you Japanese lessons. (bring, hold, give)
4	If Alex, tell him I'm out. (phone, stop, write)
5	We'll stop and see you in Dublin if we time. (give, think, have)
6	I'll give you £100 if you smoking. (stay, stop, break)
7	1 very surprised if Angela marries Jack. (be, stand, find)
8	If you sing, I, I promise. (not learn, not laugh, not drive)
9	If you cook lunch, I supper. (eat, drink, cook)
10	The government will do what it likes if nobody it. (stop, speak, find)
2 P	Put in the correct verb forms.
	If it <u>rains</u> , we'll have the party inside. (rain; have)
	1 happy if 1 my exam. (be; pass)
	! If you now, you the train. (<i>leave</i> ; <i>catch</i>)
	3 John says he
	If I
	Mary Chinese next year if she time. (study; have)
	you to the station if I
	If he
	you
9	If you to your father very politely, he us his car? (talk; lend)
3 1	Make sentences with <i>if</i> .
	m afraid the bus will be late.
	> (→ get to work late again) If the bus is late, I'll get to work late again.
	> (→ lose my job) !f! get to work late again, I'll lose my job.
1	(→ not find another job) If I lose my job,
2	? (→ lose my flat)
	B (→ move back to my parents' house)
	(→ get very bored)
	5 (→ go swimming every day)
6	io (→ look very good)
7	/ (→ meet interesting people)
	3 (→ go to lots of parties)
9) (→ have a wonderful time)



not real / not probable If dogs could talk, ...

We use if + past tense + would t	to talk about things that are not real or not probable now.						
IF + PAST TENSE	WOULD + INFINITIVE (WITHOUT 70)						
If I had a million dollars,	I would build a big swimming pool.						
If you were the President,	what would you do?						
If dogs could talk, they would tell some interesting stories.							
If he didn't travel so much, he'd have more money.							
Contractions (see page 301): / w	Contractions (see page 301): I would → I'd, you would → you'd etc						
Dut in the sourcet forms	f the serve of works						
Put in the correct forms o	four arms, life						
	nice country if it						
	•						
	open the fridge, it all my food. (can; eat)						
_ 1	here, they what to do. (know; be)						
	answer, I you. (<i>know</i> ; <i>tell</i>)						
•	you to work on Sunday, you it? (<i>do</i> ; <i>ask</i>)						
	read people's thoughts, what you? (can; do)						
	if I enough money. (<i>buy; have</i>)						
7 If I you	to marry me, what you? (say; ask)						
8 Alexh	is work on time if he so much. (finish; not talk)						
9 1 Chine	ese if I more time. (have; study)						
10 If the programmes	better, I more TV. (<i>be; watch</i>)						
2 Make sentences beginning							
If my parents lived n	here, so I don't see them at weekends. Lear here, I would see them at weekends.						
	use Jane and Peter aren't here.						
3 3	oney, so we won't buy a new car.						
3 Fred doesn't answer letter							
	ecause I can't find my camera.						
F. I don't aniou anara hagay	en Lande understand the words						
	se I can't understand the words.						
	she talks about herself all the time.						
7 I haven't got a dog, so I do	7 I haven't got a dog, so I don't go for walks.						
******************************	- 						
3 What would you do if you	had a free year and a lot of money? Write three or more sentences.						
travel round the world	study go to (other answers)						
1 Ifi							
2							
3	3						

If I were you, ...

We sometimes use were instead of was after if. This is usually rather formal.

If I were taller I would play basketball. If John were here, he would know what to do.

We often say If I were you, I would / I'd ..., when we want to give people advice.

If I were you, I'd get a new car. I wouldn't stand there if I were you.

Write sentences with *if I were you*, using the expressions in the box.

	call the police at once fly	not sell it	join a club	see a doctor 🗸	take a holiday
•	I feel ill! If I were you, I'd s	ee a doct	or.		
	'I'm really tired.'				
2	'I haven't got any friends.'				
3	'Shall I take the train to Scotland	l?'			
4	'Somebody has stolen my car.'				
5	'Otto wants to buy my motorbik	œ.'			

2 John Baker has won a lot of money in the lottery. His family and friends are giving him advice. Look at the pictures and use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

buy a sports car buy a house ✓ give the money away have a big party put the money in the bank start a business stop work travel round the world

	JOHN'S GIRLFRIEND: If I were you, I'd buy a house.
	HIS MOTHER:
	HIS FATHER:
	HIS BROTHER:
	HIS GRANDMOTHER:
	HIS SISTER:
	HIS FRIEND JOE:
	HIS FRIEND STEPHANIE:
/	MID PKIENU DIEPHANIE.





If I go ..., I will ...; If I went ..., I would ...

The difference between *if I go* and *if I went* (for example) is **not** a difference of **time**. We can use both *if I go/see* etc and *if I went/saw* etc to talk about the **present or future**. With *if*, a past tense does not mean 'past time'; it means 'not real' or 'not probable'.

PROBABLE/POSSIBLE	NOT REAL/NOT PROBABLE
If I go to London, I'll visit Tony.	If I went to the moon, I would take a lot of photos.
If I see Ann, I'll give her your address.	If I saw the Prime Minister, I would say 'hello'.

Choose the best sentence-beginning.

- ▶ If I(live)/lived to be 75, ...
- 1 If I live / lived to be 175, ...
- 2 If dogs can / could talk, ...
- 3 If I go / went shopping next week, ...
- 4 If Switzerland starts / started a war against Australia, ...
- 5 If the government gives / gave everybody a month's holiday with pay, ...
- 6 If you need / needed help one day, ...
- 7 If everybody gives / gave 10% of their money to poor countries, ...
- 8 If everybody thinks / thought the same as me, ...
- 9 If I am/was the most intelligent person in the world, ...
- 10 If prices go / went up next year, ...

Choose the best way to continue the sentences.

- I'm not going to open the window. If I open / opened the window, it will / would be too noisy.
- Maybe I'll open a window. But if I open opened a window, it will would be very noisy.
- 1 I'm going to get up early tomorrow. If I have / had time, I'll / 'd walk to work.
- 2 If I have / had time, I'll / d walk to work, but it's just not possible.
- 3 'I may get a job in Germany.' 'If you get/got it, what will/would your boyfriend say?'
- 4 'There's a job in Germany, but I don't think I'll get it.' 'If you *get / got* it, what *will / would* your boyfriend say?'
- 5 We never leave food on the table. If we do / did, the cat will / would eat it.
- 6 'Shall I put this on the table?' 'If you do / did, the cat will / would eat it.'
- 7 I'll probably go to university. But if I go / went, I won't / wouldn't earn any money for three years.
- 8 I'm not going to go to university. If I go / went to university, I won't / wouldn't earn any money for three years.
- 9 Maybe Jenny will marry Phil. But if she does / did, I'm afraid she won't / wouldn't be happy.
- 10 Phil isn't going to marry Jenny. Because if he does / did, he will / would have a terrible time with her.

Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

1	If I live to be 90,
2	If I lived to be 190,
	If I learn more English,
	If I learnt 20 languages,
	If I go to New York,
6	If I went to the meen

unreal past If A had happened, B would have happened.

We c	an use if to talk about unrea	I past events – things that didn't happen.
	ise the past perfect and wou	
IF + P	AST PERFECT	WOULD HAVE + PAST PARTICIPLE
If the	weather had been better,	we would have gone to the sea. (But it wasn't, so we didn't.)
	u had asked me,	I would have helped you. (But you didn't, so I didn't.)
•	ary had seen you,	what would you have said? (But she didn't.)
	hadn't gone skiing,	she wouldn't have fallen and broken her leg. (But she did.)
L 0		
	ut in the correct verb for	
		here yesterday, I would have come to see you. (be)
		harder, he would have passed his exams. (work)
		a map with you, you wouldn't have got lost. (take)
4		ame if we so badly. (not play)
5	If I had gone to university,	I medicine and become a doctor. (study)
6		you if you had driven more slowly? (<i>crash</i>)
7	You	badly if you hadn't drunk all that coffee. (not sleep)
8	If you	on holiday with us, you a wonderful
	time. (come; have)	
9	If my car	here at 8 o'clock.
	(not break down; be)	
10		you harder at school last year if you
		the teachers? (study; like)
11	She	married if she to leave home.
11		married if she to leave home.
	(not get; not want)	
	(not get; not want)	married if she to leave home you me if I you?
	(not get; not want)	
12	(not get; not want) (help; ask)	
12	(not get; not want) (help; ask) setting up early is bad for	you. Read the text in the box and make sentences.
12	(not get; not want) (help; ask) setting up early is bad for get up early → catch the	you. Read the text in the box and make sentences. 8.15 train -> sit by a beautiful foreign woman
12	(not get; not want) (help; ask) setting up early is bad for get up early → catch the → fall in love and marry	you. Read the text in the box and make sentences. 2.8.15 train → sit by a beautiful foreign woman ther → go to live in her country → work in her father's diamond business
12	(not get; not want) (help; ask) setting up early is bad for get up early → catch the → fall in love and marry	you. Read the text in the box and make sentences. 8.15 train -> sit by a beautiful foreign woman
12 2 G	(not get; not want) (help; ask) Setting up early is bad for get up early → catch the → fall in love and marry l → become very rich →	you. Read the text in the box and make sentences. 2.8.15 train → sit by a beautiful foreign woman ther → go to live in her country → work in her father's diamond business
12 2 G	(not get; not want) (help; ask) setting up early is bad for get up early → catch the → fall in love and marry low become very rich → lf I had got up early.	you. Read the text in the box and make sentences. 8.15 train → sit by a beautiful foreign woman her → go to live in her country → work in her father's diamond business go into politics → die in a revolution
12 2 G	(not get; not want) (help; ask) setting up early is bad for get up early → catch the → fall in love and marry! → become very rich → If I had got up early. If I had caught	me if I you? you. Read the text in the box and make sentences. 8.15 train → sit by a beautiful foreign woman her → go to live in her country → work in her father's diamond business go into politics → die in a revolution would have caught the 8.15 train.
12 2 G	(not get; not want) (help; ask) setting up early is bad for get up early → catch the → fall in love and marry! → become very rich → If I had got up early. If I had caught	you. Mead the text in the box and make sentences. 8.15 train → sit by a beautiful foreign woman her → go to live in her country → work in her father's diamond business go into politics → die in a revolution would have caught the 8.15 train.
12 2 G	(not get; not want) (help; ask) Setting up early is bad for get up early → catch the → fall in love and marry → become very rich → If I had got up early. If I had caught	you. Read the text in the box and make sentences. 9.8.15 train → sit by a beautiful foreign woman her → go to live in her country → work in her father's diamond business go into politics → die in a revolution 1. would have caught the 8.15 train.
12 2 G	(not get; not want) (help; ask) setting up early is bad for get up early → catch the → fall in love and marry! → become very rich → If I had got up early. If I had caught	you. Mead the text in the box and make sentences. 8.15 train → sit by a beautiful foreign woman her → go to live in her country → work in her father's diamond business go into politics → die in a revolution Would have caught the 8.15 train.
12 G	(not get; not want) (help; ask) Setting up early is bad for get up early → catch the → fall in love and marry → become very rich → If I had got up early. If I had caught	you. Read the text in the box and make sentences. 8.15 train → sit by a beautiful foreign woman her → go to live in her country → work in her father's diamond business go into politics → die in a revolution would have caught the 8.15 train. and married her.
12 G	(not get; not want) (help; ask) setting up early is bad for get up early → catch the → fall in love and marry! → become very rich → If I had got up early. If I had caught	you. Read the text in the box and make sentences. 8.15 train → sit by a beautiful foreign woman her → go to live in her country → work in her father's diamond business go into politics → die in a revolution would have caught the 8.15 train. and married her.
12 G	(not get; not want) (help; ask) Setting up early is bad for get up early → catch the → fall in love and marry → become very rich → If I had got up early. If I had caught	you. Read the text in the box and make sentences. 8.15 train → sit by a beautiful foreign woman her → go to live in her country → work in her father's diamond business go into politics → die in a revolution would have caught the 8.15 train. and married her.
12 G	(not get; not want) (help; ask) Setting up early is bad for get up early → catch the → fall in love and marry → become very rich → If I had got up early. If I had caught	you. Read the text in the box and make sentences. 8.15 train → sit by a beautiful foreign woman her → go to live in her country → work in her father's diamond business go into politics → die in a revolution would have caught the 8.15 train. and married her.
12 G	(not get; not want) (help; ask) setting up early is bad for get up early → catch the → fall in love and marry! → become very rich → If I had got up early. If I had caught	you. Read the text in the box and make sentences. 8.15 train → sit by a beautiful foreign woman her → go to live in her country → work in her father's diamond business go into politics → die in a revolution I would have caught the 8.15 train. and married her.
12 G	(not get; not want) (help; ask) Setting up early is bad for get up early → catch the → fall in love and marry → become very rich → If I had got up early. If I had caught	you. Read the text in the box and make sentences. 8.15 train → sit by a beautiful foreign woman her → go to live in her country → work in her father's diamond business go into politics → die in a revolution 1 would have caught the 8.15 train. and married her.
12 G 1 1 2 3 4 5	(not get; not want) (help; ask) setting up early is bad for get up early → catch the → fall in love and marry! → become very rich → If I had got up early. If I had caught	you. Read the text in the box and make sentences. 8.15 train → sit by a beautiful foreign woman mer → go to live in her country → work in her father's diamond business go into politics → die in a revolution I would have caught the 8.15 train. and married her.

if: more practice

1	Probable/possible or not real / not possible. Put the beginnings and ends together.
	(Different answers are possible.).

0	If I had a lot of money,	Α	I would give it all to you
1	If you ask me nicely,	В	I'll break my leg
2	If the news was always good,	C	nobody would believe them
3	If we go to the country,	D	I'll dance all night
4	If we go skiing,	Ε	I'll wear my new bikini
5	If everybody spoke English,	F	it would be a disaster
6	If I come to your party,	G	I'll make you a cup of tea
7	If everybody was telepathic,	Н	newspapers wouldn't have many pages
8	If politicians told the truth,	1	they might say some interesting things
9	If we go swimming,	J	I'll take my bicycle
10	If animals could talk.	κ	international communication would be much easier.

K international communication would be much easier.

Probable/possible or not real / not possible. Choose the best ways to continue the sentences.

- I think I'll study medicine. But I know if I do y did that, I'll y'd have to work very hard.
- ▶ She's a very generous person. If she wins / won the lottery, she will / would give it all away.
- 1 I'm not going to buy a car. If I buy / bought a car I will / would spend all my money on it.
- 2 I really must go and see Sandra. But if I go / went and see / saw her, I'll / 'd have to talk to her stupid brother.
- 3 My parents live a long way away. If they live / lived nearer, I will / would see them more often.
- 4 We're going to stay at home this evening. If we go / went out, we won't / wouldn't do anything interesting.
- 5 Those exams are difficult. Unless you start / started working harder, you won't / wouldn't pass.
- 6 The United Moderate Anarchist Party will probably win the election. And if they win / won, the country will / would be in deep trouble.
- 7 I'm glad Marion isn't going to marry Jack. Because if she marries / married him she will / would be very unhappy.
- 8 Maybe I'll take you to London with me. But if I take / took you, you'll / 'd have to pay for your ticket.
- 9 If it rains / rained again tomorrow, I won't / wouldn't go cycling.
- 10 Dylan never tells the truth. And if he does / did, I won't / wouldn't believe him.

Grammar in a text. Put in the missing words.

The laws of work If anything can go wrong, it go wrong. If a job looks easy, it's difficult. If it difficult, impossible. If you think a job will take two hours, it take four days. If you think it take four days, it eight weeks. And so on. If you throw something away, you need it the next day. If you do what everybody wants you to do, somebody like it. If you explain so clearly that nobody can misunderstand, somebody

4	Ur	Unreal past. Put in the correct verb forms.		
		If I coffee last night, I	better. (not drink; sleep)	
		If my parents more money, I after I left school. (have; go)		
	3	Jessica to Brazil last year if she	Pete.	
		(go; not meet)		
		If I ill last week, I		
		if he smoking, he		
		Vocation		
		3 Yesterday a better day if I		
		(wear; know)		
1	0	If we time we	to see Uncle Pete. (have; go)	
6	GF Ar	It was hot, so my mother opened the door. A cat came in and ate so she went to the shop to buy food. In the shop she saw an adverse a secretary. So she got a new job, and met my father. I'm glad it we fit hadn't been hot, my mother wouldn't have opened the door. If sopened the door, the cat her such her such her such her such her such her so going to work in another country next year. See if you with the correct language names. Use a dictionary if necess	ertisement for vas a hot day! she hadn't upper. If the cat you can make sentences	
		Arabic Chinese ✓ Dutch German Greek Portuguese	عربي	
		(China) If she goes to China, she will have to learn Chi	由于	
	1	(Ca)		
	2	(<i>Egypt</i>) If she	Nederlands	
			Daute	cł
		(Kenya)		
		(Greece)	•	ıâ
		(Austria)		16
7	In	nternet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find o	out which of the following	
		ire more common.	-	
	"uı	unless I buy"104,000 "unless	s I will buy"	
	"if	if I were you" "if I was	s you"	
			would know"	
	"if	if we go"	vill go"	
	"if	if they had said" "if they	would have said"	

if: revision test

	Put in the correct yerb forms.
- 1	I'm sure John
1	I would be very happy if I more friends. (have)
	1 If you your glasses, you would see much better. (clean)
	2 If Peter lives in Little Compton, he probably my friend Jack. (know)
	3 and see you tomorrow if I have time. (come)
	4 If she spoke more slowly, perhaps Iher. (understand)
	5 If you at 12.00, you will arrive at 3.20. (<i>leave</i>)
	6 my car unless needed money. (not sell)
į	7 If you so far away, it would be easier for us to see each other. (not live)
8	B _o I this letter for you if I can find my dictionary. (<i>translate</i>)
9	9 If I you very nicely, will you make me some coffee? (ask)
10	0 If water very cold, it becomes ice. (<i>get</i>)
2	Five of sentences 1–10 have mistakes. Find them and correct them.
	I usually get up and watch TV if I can't sleep
	I wouldn't do that if I would be you
	1 I'll be very happy if I'll pass the exam
;	2 If she's from Russia, she probably speaks Russian.
;	If he would eat more, he wouldn't be so thin.
	4 If I don't see you today, I see you next week.
4	5 I'll come and see you on Wednesday if I have time
(6 If we left early tomorrow morning, we would arrive before 12.00.
1	7 Unless he doesn't work harder, he won't pass his exams
8	8 If it doesn't rain tomorrow, I'll play tennis with James.
9	9 We'll go and see Max and Chris if we'll be in Berlin
10	0 I would get a better job if I could find one
3	Unreal past. Put in the correct verb forms.
•	1 If I what to do. (not ask; not know)
1	2 If Alex to see him. (<i>be</i> ; <i>go</i>)
3	3 I'm sorry. I that if I that your mother was
	listening. (not say; know)
4	1 It nothing when the policeman
	stopped you. (be; say)
-	5 If I my girlfriend. (<i>not get</i> ;
	not meet)
6	5 Lucy her to hospital when she started
	feeling ill. (die; not take)
	7 If I out. (not be; go)
8	3 If I what my father wanted, I medicine.
	(do; study)
9	Mark skiing last winter if he enough money.
	(go; have)
10) If you in deep trouble.
	(not help; be)

SECTION 19 relative pronouns

grammar summary

who (whom)

which that what

We use relative pronouns to join sentences to nouns.

The man was Welsh He on the prize.

The man (Who) won the prize was Welsh.

We use who for people and which for things. We can also use that for people and things. There's the man who/that sold me my bike. She said a word which/that I didn't hear.

We often leave out object pronouns, but not subject pronouns.

Do you remember those photos (which/that) I showed you?

The photos which/that show the beach are beautiful. (NOT The photos show the beach ...)

Prepositions can often go in two places.

The woman **about whom** we were **talking** walked into the room. (formal)

The woman that we were talking about walked into the room. (conversational)

We can use what to mean 'the thing(s) which'.

The children always eat what I cook.

art-ist Om /'a:tist; NAME 'a:rt-/ noun 1 ⊶ a person who creates works of art, especially paintings or drawings: an exhibition of work by contemporary British artists o a graphic artist o a make-up artist o Police have issued an artist's impression of her attacker. o (figurative) Whoever made this cake is a real artist. 2 COLLOCATIONS at ART 2 (especially BrE ar tiste /a: tist; NAME a: t-/) a professional entertainer such as a singer, a dancer or an actor: a recording/solo artist

bee /bi:/ noun 1 a black and yellow flying insect that can sting. Bees live in large groups and make HONEY (= sweet sticky substance that is good to eat): a swarm of bees o a bee sting o Bees were buzzing in the clover. See also BEEHIVE, BEESWAX, BUMBLEBEE, QUEEN BEE **2** (NAME) a meeting in a group where people combine work, competition and pleasure: a sewing bee see also spelling BEE the bee's knees (informal) an excellent person or thing: She thinks she's the bee's knees (= she has a very high opinion of herself). have a bee in your bonnet about sth (informal) to think or talk about sth all the time and to think that it is very important 3 more at BIRD, BUSY adj

build-er /'bildə(r)/ noun 1 a person or company whose job is to build or repair houses or other buildings 2 (usually in compounds) a person or thing that builds, creates or develops sth: a shipbuilder ∘ a confidence builder • see also BODYBUILDER

burg lar / ba:gla(r); NAmE ba:rg-/ noun a person who enters a building illegally in order to steal



bus 0, /bas/ noun, verb

■ noun (pl. buses, US also busses) 1 • a large road vehicle that carries passengers, especially one that travels along a fixed route and stops regularly to let people get on and off: Shall we walk or go by bus? A regular bus service connects the train station with the town centre. o a bus company/ driver o a school bus VISUAL VOCAB page V46 Compare COACH See also BUS LANE, BUS SHELTER, BUS STATION, BUS STOP, MINIBUS, TROLLEYBUS 2 (computing) a set of wires that carries information from one

part of a computer system to another

verb (-s- or -ss-) 1 ~ sb (from/to...) to transport sb by bus: We were bussed from the airport to our hotel. $2 \sim sb$ (NAME) to transport young people by bus to another area so that students of different races can be educated together 3 ~ sth (NAME) to take the dirty plates, etc. off the tables in a restaurant, as a job

cheese Om /tʃi:z/ noun

1 •• [U,C] a type of food made from milk that can be either soft or hard and is usually white or yellow in colour; a particular type of this food: Cheddar cheese o goat's cheese = made from the milk of a GOAT) * a cheese sandwich/ salad o a chunk/piece/slice of cheese o a selection of French cheeses o a cheese knife (= a knife with a special curved blade with two points on the end, used for cutting and picking up pieces of cheese) VISUAL VOCAB page V19

plant 🗪 /pla:nt; NAmE plænt/ noun, verb

LIVING THING 1 • [C] a living thing that grows in the earth and usually has a STEM, leaves and roots, especially one that is smaller than a tree or bush: All plants need light and water o flowering/garden/indoor plants o a tomato/potato plant \diamond the animal and plant life of the area collocations at LIFE OVISUAL VOCAB page V9 Osee also BEDDING PLANT, HOUSE PLANT, POT PLANT, RUBBER

Sau-Cer /'so:sə(r)/ noun a small shallow round dish that a cup stands on; an object that is shaped like this: cups and see also FLYING saucers SVISUAL VOCAB page V19 SAUCER



relative who and which the keys which I lost

We can use sentences to describe nouns. To join sentences to nouns, we use relative pronouns: who (for people) and which (for things). The man plays golf. (He)lives at No 10. The man(WhO)lives at No 10 plays golf. The letter is for me. You saw it The letter (Which) you saw is for me. I like the girl (She) works with Ann. I like the girl (Who) works with Ann. I've got those books You wanted them I've got those books Which you wanted.

Put in who or which.

- 1 The people live downstairs are Irish.
- 2 The shop sells that good bread is closed today.
- 3 The dictionary I bought yesterday isn't very good.
- 4 That cheese you like comes from Scotland.
- 5 Do you know the girls are standing by the window?
- 6 I can't find the key opens this door.
- 7 I've lost the earrings Harry gave me.
- 8 The police are looking for three men robbed the National Bank yesterday.
- 9 We know the woman teaches French at Jane's school.
- 10 Here's a word | don't understand.
- 11 Are those the shoes Tracy has just bought?
- 12 I had just one teacher was really good.

We use who or which instead of he, him, she, it etc. Don't use both.

The woman who she teaches me French is ill. Here's the address which you wanted it

Circle the correct answer.

- 1 There's the man who took / he took your coat.
- 2 Do you know the people who live / they live next door?
- 3 I like that woman; she is / is very kind.
- 4 I've found the keys which I lost / lost them.
- 5 Do you like the new dress which I bought / bought it yesterday?
- 6 The car which is parked / it is parked outside belongs to Susan.
- 7 This is a new kind of knife: cuts / it cuts everything.
- 8 The poems which Mark writes / writes them are very hard to understand.
- 9 We've got three children who make / they make a lot of noise.
- 10 What did you do with the sweater which I lent you / I lent you it?

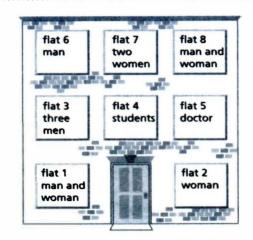
The man who makes no mistakes does not usually make anything.

(E J Phelps)



3 L	ook at the picture and the information, and write sentences with who. The man and woman who live in flat 8 are from Scotland.
	THE FEMALE WASHINGTON WITH GENE AND LIKE & WITE TOTAL GENERAL
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	

FLAT	INFORMATION
1	play loud music all night
2	broke her leg skiing
3	play golf all day
4	haven't got much money
5	has three children
6	drives a Rolls-Royce
7	are hiding from the police
8	are from Scotland



4 Join the sentences in the place marked *. Change he, it etc to who or which.

Most of the people* speak German. They live in Austria.

Most of the people who live in Austria speak German.

.....

I know a shop*. It sells really good meat.
I know a shop which sells really good meat.

1 The bus* isn't running today. It goes to Oxford.

2 Yesterday I met a man*. He works with your brother.

3 The child* was ill. She didn't come to the party.

4 Can you pick up the papers*? They are lying on the floor.

5 The eggs* were bad. I bought them yesterday.

6 Here's the book*. You asked me to buy it for you.

7 I don't like the man*. He is going out with my sister.

We can use whom for people when the relative pronoun is the object of the following verb.

I've just got a postcard from a woman whom I met on holiday last year. (I met the woman.)

But whom is formal and unusual. In spoken English, we more often use that (see page 256), who or nothing (see page 257).

I've just got a postcard from a woman who/that I met on holiday last year.

OR I've just got a postcard from a woman I met on holiday last year.

relative that a bird that can't fly

We can use that instead of who or which.

The man that lives at number 8 is getting married. You haven't drunk the tea that I made for you.

......

- 1 Join the sentences in the place marked *, using that.
 - I'd like to speak to the person*. She wrote this letter.
 I'd like to speak to the person that wrote this letter.
 - The tomatoes* are all bad. I bought them yesterday.
 The tomatoes that I bought yesterday are all bad.
 - 1 Joe's got a motorbike*. It can do 200 km an hour.
 - 2 Is that the computer*? It doesn't work.
 - 3 Those are the trousers*. I use them for gardening.
 - 4 A man* wants to marry my sister. He lives in New York.
 - 5 The doctors* all said different things. They looked at my leg.
 - 6 The flowers* are beautiful. You gave them to Aunt Sarah.
 - 7 The children* have gone on holiday. They play football with Paul.
- QRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things that fly Write descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary.

can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey

doesn't make honey and can bite you

	an insect . that mak	es honey.			
1	an insect				1 mosquito
	********				Show .
2	a bird			OF L	
3	a bird				M
4	an animal			bee	AN / SHEET C
5	a machine				3 eagle
6	a plane			· ·	- Cugic
7	a thing				
4					(1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1)
		AND PARTY OF THE P	2 peng	guin	-
	7.	-			
	4 bat		Substitution of		AL AL
			-		
		1226			
		5 helicopter	6 glider	200	7 space rocke

leaving out relative pronouns the car (that) you bought

whe	n a <mark>relative pronoun</mark> (who/which/that) is	the object of the following verb, we often leave it out .
But v	ve can't leave out a relative pronoun wh	en it is the subject of the following verb.
(I ph	oned a man .)	(A man phoned me.)
	nan that I phoned spoke Spanish.	The man that phoned me spoke Greek.
_	→ The man I phoned spoke Spanish.	(NOT The man phoned me spoke Greek.)
The t	rain that you want leaves at 10.00.	The train that stops at York goes at 8.00.
-	→ The train you want leaves at 10.00.	(NOT The train-stops at York goes at 8.00.)
_		
1) Is	the relative pronoun the subject (S) or object (O) of the following verb?
	the woman who wrote this letter	4 a man who(m) helped
	the film that I saw $$	5 the weather that we have had
1	the languages that she spoke	6 a machine that makes paper
2	a woman who helped me	7 that car which you bought
3	the sweater which I wore	8 the man who cuts my hair
2 L	ook at Exercise 1. Find the expressio	ns with object relative pronouns and rewrite them
W	ithout who(m), which or that.	
	the film I saw	3
1		-
2		
_		
3 Jo	oin the sentences in the place marke	ed * without using <i>who, which</i> or <i>that</i> .
		-
	The cup of coffee* is on the table. You v	vanted it.
	The cup of coffee you wanted is a	
	The cup of coffee you wanted is a	on the table.
		on the table.
	I'm working for a man*. I've known him	on the table. for twenty years.
1	I'm working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like	on the table. for twenty years.
1	I'm working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like	on the table. for twenty years. it.
1 2	I'm working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like	on the table. for twenty years. it.
1 2 3	The cup of coffee you wanted is a lim working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like The campsite* was very dirty. We found	the table. for twenty years. it. dit.
1 2 3	I'm working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like The campsite* was very dirty. We found I'm going on holiday with some people	the table. for twenty years. it. it. it. *. I know them.
1 2 3 4	I'm working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like The campsite* was very dirty. We found I'm going on holiday with some people	the table. for twenty years. it. I it. *. I know them.
1 2 3	I'm working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like The campsite* was very dirty. We found I'm going on holiday with some people	the table. for twenty years. it. I it. *. I know them.
1 2 3 4 5	I'm working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like The campsite* was very dirty. We found I'm going on holiday with some people That book* is very good. You gave it to	the table. for twenty years. it. it. *. I know them. me.
1 2 3 4	I'm working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like The campsite* was very dirty. We found I'm going on holiday with some people	the table. of for twenty years. it. d it. *. I know them. me. or. She lost it.
1 2 3 4 5	I'm working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like The campsite* was very dirty. We found I'm going on holiday with some people That book* is very good. You gave it to The ring* belonged to her grandmothe	it. dit. *. I know them. me. cr. She lost it.
1 2 3 4 5	I'm working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like The campsite* was very dirty. We found I'm going on holiday with some people That book* is very good. You gave it to	the table. of for twenty years. it. dit. *. I know them. me. or. She lost it.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	I'm working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like The campsite* was very dirty. We found I'm going on holiday with some people That book* is very good. You gave it to The ring* belonged to her grandmothe I'm driving a car*. I bought it 15 years as	the table. of twenty years. it. dit. *. I know them. me. or. She lost it. go.
1 2 3 4 5	I'm working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like The campsite* was very dirty. We found I'm going on holiday with some people That book* is very good. You gave it to The ring* belonged to her grandmothe I'm driving a car*. I bought it 15 years as The papers* are on the table. You wante	the table. If to twenty years. It. It. It. It. It. It. It. I
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	I'm working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like The campsite* was very dirty. We found I'm going on holiday with some people That book* is very good. You gave it to The ring* belonged to her grandmothe I'm driving a car*. I bought it 15 years as The papers* are on the table. You wante	the table. of twenty years. it. dit. *. I know them. me. or. She lost it. go.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	I'm working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like The campsite* was very dirty. We found I'm going on holiday with some people That book* is very good. You gave it to The ring* belonged to her grandmothe I'm driving a car*. I bought it 15 years as The papers* are on the table. You wante	on the table. If or twenty years. It. If it. It. It. It. It. It. It. It.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	I'm working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like The campsite* was very dirty. We found I'm going on holiday with some people That book* is very good. You gave it to The ring* belonged to her grandmothe I'm driving a car*. I bought it 15 years and The papers* are on the table. You wante	on the table. If or twenty years. It. If it. It. It. It. It. It. It. It.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	I'm working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like The campsite* was very dirty. We found I'm going on holiday with some people That book* is very good. You gave it to The ring* belonged to her grandmothe I'm driving a car*. I bought it 15 years and The papers* are on the table. You wanted Trite three sentences beginning Even Everybody I know likes rock music	it. I it. I it. I know them. me. Ir. She lost it. go. ed them.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	I'm working for a man*. I've known him They played a lot of music*. I didn't like The campsite* was very dirty. We found I'm going on holiday with some people That book* is very good. You gave it to The ring* belonged to her grandmothe I'm driving a car*. I bought it 15 years as The papers* are on the table. You wanted Trite three sentences beginning Even Everybody I know likes rock musics.	it. it. it. it. it. *. I know them. me. ir. She lost it. go. ed them. rybody I know csie.

prepositions the man that she works for

W	ne verbs have prepositions with them (see page 141) – for example look at, listen to. en relative pronouns are the objects of these verbs, there are two possibilities: eep the preposition with the verb (more informal; we can leave out who(m)/which/that.)
	he woman smiled. I was looking at her > The woman (whom/that) I was look in g at smiled. The flat was dirty. He lived in it > The flat he lived in was dirty.
•	out the preposition before whom/which (very formal)
	he woman <mark>at whom</mark> I was <mark>looking</mark> smiled. The flat <mark>in which</mark> he lived was dirty.
2	Change these expressions to make them more conversational. Use that. a boy with whom I went to school the girl about whom I was talking the people for whom I work the house in which I live the music to which you are listening the bus on which I go to work Rewrite the expressions from Exercise 1, but leave out that. a boy I went to school with 4
3	Look at the information about Helen, and then make sentences (like the example) about the people in her life.
3	•
3	Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works for a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is the friend she lives with. Eric is Monica is Saren is Emily and Jack are Tom is
4	Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works for a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is the friend she lives with. Eric is Monica is Karen is Emily and Jack are
4	Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works for a man called Eric. At weekends she plays tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is the friend she lives with. Eric is Monica is Karen is Emily and Jack are Tom is Now write sentences (like the example) about Helen's birthday presents.

relative what It was just what I wanted.

We ca	can use what to mean 'the thing(s) which/that' or 'anyt	hing that'.
	e you got what you need for your journey? (=' the things orry about what happened.	that you need') eat?' 'Take what you like.'
We us	use what with a singular verb.	
What	<mark>it I bought was mostly very cheap. (NOT What I bought wer</mark>	e)
d c	hange the words in italics to what.	
	The things that she said weren't true.	
	tallegt clear said was with train	
1	The things that he did made everybody angry.	
2	Take anything that you want.	
3	Soap – that's the thing that I forgot to pack!	
4	She gave me a watch. It was just the thing that I wante	d.
5	,	
6	The things that I read in the paper make me unhappy.	
7	Don't tell me things that I know already.	
8	3	
2 w	Vrite a sentence beginning What I need is	
We u	ise that , not what, after anything , something , nothing , e	verything, all and the only thing.
The si	can take anything that you want. (NOT anything what y shop had nothing that I wanted. All that I could do we ey is the only thing in the world that matters to him.	
D.	ut in that or what.	
	I believe everything she says.	7 Lean't eat everything Llike
		7 Can't eat everything like. 8 The only thing forgot
	I can't give you you want.	was toothpaste.
4		9 Ask Peter – he'll tell you you need
5	I can't eat I like.	to know.

6 you need is a holiday.

10 She said something was very helpful.

relative pronouns: more practice

U	se of who and which. Join the sentences in the place marked *, using who or which.
•	Yesterday I saw a film.* You would like it. Yesterday I saw a film which you would like.
1	I know a man.* He writes film music.
2	The bus* got to London twenty minutes late. I took it.
3	We have friends*. They live in Chicago.
4	The car* isn't very good. I bought it last month.
5	We stayed in a hotel*. It had a beautiful garden.
6	I didn't like the man*. My sister married him.
7	The people* weren't very interesting. They were at the party.
8	
9	
10	
	se of that. Join the sentences in the place marked *, using that.
1	The tickets* were very expensive. I got them.
2	These are the scissors*. I use them for cutting paper.
3	The woman* is from Brazil. She gives me tennis lessons.
4	The man* is always very friendly. He lives next door.
5	I'm spending the day with some people*. I know them.
6	,
7	
8	We've got a cat*. It brings dead rats into the house.
9	The oranges* are all bad. You bought them.
10	Why did you throw away the soup*? I cooked it.

3 Leaving out who, which or that. Rewrite the word	ds <i>in italics</i> without relative pronouns
if it's possible. If not, write 'No change'.	
▶ Where's the book which I was reading? the book!	was reading
The people who live next door are German. No ch	ange.
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
,	
4 Grammar in a text. Cross out that if it can be left	out.
'How was that hotel that I suggested?' 'That hotel! The	rooms that they put us in were like cupboards, the
beds that they gave us were much too small, and the ex	xtra blankets that we asked for never arrived. The 'full
English breakfast' that they served was uneatable, and	the 'French champagne' that we ordered at dinner
was undrinkable. And that brochure that you showed n	ne was full of lies. The 'view of the sea' that they talked
about was a view of the car park, and the gym that they	y advertised wasn't there. And then, the bill that we
got at the end was unbelievable. Never again!'	
5 Position of prepositions. Make these expression	
a boy t o whom I talkedto	6 the train on which we travelled
1 the book at which I was looking	7 some people with whom I work
2 the people for whom I work	8 the place about which I was telling you
3 the hotel in which we stayed	9 the pen with which I write
4 the place to which I drove	10 the small village in which my mother
5 those people to whom we were talking	lives
G GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: jewellery	
Read the text and complete the sentences. Use a	a dictionary if necessary
head the text and complete the sentences. Ose a	dictionary in necessary.
Anna, Naomi, Sally, Jane, Jessica and Thalia have all o	got rich boyfriends. For
Christmas, Anna wanted a gold watch, Naomi wante	AA V
wanted sapphire earrings, Jane wanted a pearl neck	
ring and Thalia wanted a silver bracelet. But:	
Anna got a diamond brooch, so Anna got what	: Naomi wanted.
1 Naomi got a ruby ring, so	
2 Sally got a silver bracelet, so	
3 Jane got a gold watch, so	
4 Jessica got a pearl necklace, so	
5 Thalia got sapphire earrings, so	
Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Goog	le) to find five simple sentences beginning
"Everybody I know likes ". Write one yourself.	
1 Everybody I know likes	4
2	5
3	6 (Your sentence)

relative pronouns: revision test

W	/hich answer is right: A, B or both?
•	The people play loud music very late. (A) who live downstairs B live downstairs
	I don't much like the music (A) they play (B) that they play
1	The girls gave me flowers for my birthday. A with whom I work B that I work with
2	I don't want a phone more intelligent than me. A that is B is
3	Where's the paper ? A that you wrote the address on B that you wrote the address on it
4	Hike people laugh at themselves. A can B who can
5	she said made me very angry. A What B That what
6	Yesterday everything was wrong. There are days like that. A I did B that I did
7	'What do you call a thing that bottles?' 'A bottle-opener.' A opens B it opens
8	There are the keys A I was looking for B that I was looking for
9	The train was very uncomfortable. A in which we travelled B which we travelled in
10	There's a shop near here open all night. A that stays B which stays
11	I've found the shoes A that I lost B that I lost them
12	Do you know anybody Russian? A who speaks B speaks
13	She married a man on holiday. A she met B that she met
14	The woman wanted to speak to James. A phoned B who phoned
15	Who were those people that you? A were talking to B were talking to them
Si	ix of sentences 1–15 have mistakes. Find them and correct them.
	The people which live next door have got five children
•	Do you know a shop which sells good cheese?
1	I didn't understand the language which she was speaking.
	We stayed in a hotel who had a beautiful garden.
	I didn't understand the language she was speaking.
4	Is the book you're reading interesting?
5	I didn't understand the language that she was speaking.
6	The woman came to dinner stayed very late.
7	A vet is a doctor who works with animals.
8	I didn't like the man which my sister married.
	Did I tell you about the film which we saw last night?
	Eric said a word which I couldn't understand it.
	I'm spending the day with some people I know
	People what live in London are called 'Londoners'.
	There's the man I was telling you about.
14	
15	I don't like people that you can't relax with them.
D.	ut in <i>that</i> or <i>what</i> .
1	I like everything
2	Nobody rememers everything they do. 7 Peter will tell you you have to do.
4	The only thing I need is a 9 you need is a long holiday.
_	toothpaste. 10° Amy said something was interesting
٥	They couldn't give me I asked for.

SECTION 20 indirect speech

grammar summary

When we tell people what somebody said or thought, we often use indirect speech.

Tenses, here-and-now words (like *this*, *here*, *today*) and pronouns (like *l*, *you*) may change in indirect speech. This is because the time, place and speaker may be different.

'I really like it here.' Bill said that he really liked it there.

We often leave out that, especially after common verbs like say and think.

Bill said he really liked it there.

Indirect questions have a different structure from direct questions.

'What is your phone number?' He asked me what my phone number was.

'Do you like cherries?' She asked me if I liked cherries.

We can use object + infinitive (with to) after ask and tell.

I asked him to make some coffee. She told the children not to make a noise.

PROMISES, PROMISES

'You said I was beautiful.'

'You are more beautiful every day.'

'You said you loved me.'

'And it's true. I love you. Deeply. Passionately.'

'You told me you would love me for ever.'

'And I will. For ever and ever.'

'You said you would never look at another woman.'

'I have never looked at another woman. I shut my eyes when one comes close.'

'You told me you were rich.'

'We have a solid gold bath with diamond taps.'

'You told me you wanted children.'

'We have thirteen children.'

'You said you could cook.'

'I cook you a magnificent five-course dinner every night.'

'You told me you would bring me a cup of tea in bed every morning.'

'You get a cup of tea in bed every morning. With biscuits and the newspaper.'

'You said you could play the saxophone.'

'I am a world-famous saxophonist.'

'You promised that you would take me to Hawaii.'

'We have just come back from three months in Hawaii.'

'You said you would mend the dishwasher.'

'Sorry. I forgot.'

'You see. I can't believe a word you say.'



tenses and pronouns Bill said he was really happy.





When we tell people what somebody said or thought, we often use indirect speech.

Tenses and pronouns (I, you etc) change in indirect speech if the time and speaker change.

For example, present tenses become past; I may become he or she; my may become his or her.

SOMEBODY SAID/THOUGHT	INDIRECT SPEECH
'I'm happy.'	Bill said that he was happy. (NOT Bill said that I'm happy.)
'I have a problem.'	I thought that I had a problem. (NOT I thought that I have a problem.)
'She likes me.'	He knew that she liked him.
'My feet are cold.'	She said her feet were cold.

We often leave out that, especially after common verbs like say, think.

Bill said he was really happy. I thought it was a great party.



Put in the correct pronouns (I etc) or possessives (my etc).

- She likes me. He knew she liked ...him....
- 1 'I speak French.' He said spoke French.
- 2 'I'm sorry.' She said was sorry.
- 3 'Kate phoned me.' She said Kate had phoned
- 4 'We want our money.' They said wanted money.
- 5 'I'm tired.' He said was tired.
- 6 'I can't help you.' She told me she couldn't help
- 7 'We're leaving.'They said were leaving.
- 8 'I've lost my coat.' He said had lost coat.
- 9 'I like my job.' She told me liked job.
- 10 'Where are our tickets?'They asked where tickets were.

Note the difference between say and tell.

Tell must have a personal object: we tell somebody something.

She told me I was late. (NOT She told I was late.)

They told Anna the wrong time. (NOT They told the wrong time to Anna.)

Say doesn't need a personal object: we say something (to somebody).

She said I was late. (NOT She said me I was late.)

I said nothing to the police. (NOT I said the police nothing.)



2 (Circle) the correct answer.

- 1 | said / told the driver I wanted to stop.
- 2 My mother said / told there was a letter for me.
- 3 Everybody said / told I looked beautiful.
- 4 Why did you say / tell the lessons were expensive?
- 5 Ross said / told the waiter he couldn't pay.
- 6 I didn't say/tell Peter that I was going away.
- 7 Nobody said / told me that the shop was closed.
- 8 Mia said / told that she would wait at the bus stop.

TENSE CHANGES

When we tell people what somebody said in the past, there is a time difference. (For example, somebody said something on Sunday, and I tell you about it on Monday.) Because of this, tenses usually change as follows:

DIRECT SPEECH ON SUNDAY	TENSE CHANGE	INDIRECT SPEECH ON MONDAY
The children are in Ireland. My TV isn't working.	AM/ARE/IS → WAS/WERE	Karen said her children were in Ireland. He said his TV <mark>wasn't</mark> working.
I have a meeting at 4.00. Sue has passed her exam.	HAVE/HAS → HAD	She said she <mark>had</mark> a meeting at 4.00. Sally told me Sue <mark>had</mark> passed her exam.
I will probably be late.	WILL -> WOULD	I thought I would probably be late.
You can have three tickets.	CAN -> COULD	The man said I could have three tickets.
It doesn't matter, Martin.	DO/DOES → DID	I told Martin it <mark>didn't</mark> matter.
The train leaves at 6.00. We all speak English.	SIMPLE PRESENT → SIMPLE PAST	The timetable said the train left at 6.00. She said they al l spoke English.
I forgot my keys.	SIMPLE PAST → PAST PERFECT	He said he had forgotten his keys.

		Site sails tire, and point english.
l forgot my keys.	SIMPLE PAST → PAST PERFECT	He said he had forgotten his keys.
Rewrite the sente SALLY: 'I'm tired	ences in indirect speech, changing the ten	ses. Begin He/She/They said
2 DANIEL: 'I have	er needs a car: to phone Andrew:	
3 MARY: 'Nobody	wants to help me.'	
4 HELEN: 'The rac	dio doesn't work'	
5 BEN: 'I will be in	Paris in July:	
6 MIKE: 'I like the	red sweater.'	
7 DAVID: 'I can't s	wim.'	
8 ALICE: 'My pare	ents are travelling.'	
9 MARIA: 'The les	sons are ver y good.'	
he was small. Wri	re to see what John thought when te his thoughts in indirect speech. mals could talk.	ANIMALS CAN TALK. CATS HAVE NINE LIVES.
		MY FATHER KNOWS EVERYTHING.
		SPAGHETTI GROWS ON TREES.)
		THE TEACHER LIVES IN THE SCHOOL
		I WILL BE RICH ONE DAY.
***************************************		MY MOTHER HAS ALWAYS BEEN OLD
***************************************		ALWAYS BEEN BLD.
What did you thin	nk when you were small? Write three or m	ore sentences.
1		
2		
3		
4		
•		



indirect questions She asked him what his name was.

Indir	ect questions have	a different word order from direct questions, a	nd no question marks: XXX
DIRE	CT QUESTION:	Monica said, 'Where is John?'	I said, 'When can you come?'
INDIF	RECT QUESTION:	Monica asked where John was. (NOT Monica asked where was John?)	I asked when she could come.
We d	on't use do in indir	ect questions.	
DIRE	CT QUESTION:	'What do you want?'	'Where does Andrew live?'
	RECT QUESTION:	She asked me what I wanted.	I asked him where Andrew lived.
		(NOT She asked me what did I want.)	
١.	l' .		
	•	opped a driver in London and asked him s	some questions.
		ns in indirect speech. ne?' She asked him what his name was	
	•		
1 2		e?'ork?'	
3	•	ping?'	
		peen?'	
	•	per of your car?'	
6	'Why are you drivi	ing on the right?'	

With	indirect yes/no que	estions we use if or whether. They mean the sam	ne hutchenis mind bed all blacks
		is the use if or wines. They mean the sun	MODELLA CONTROL OF THE CONTROL OF TH
	CT QUESTION:	Do you know Tim?	Are you French?
DIRE			
DIREC	RECT QUESTION:	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French.
DIRECTION DIRECT	RECT QUESTION: he policewoman	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. asked some more questions. Write them in	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French. n indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIF	he policewoman 'Are you British?'	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. asked some more questions. Write them in She asked him if he was British.	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French. n indirect speech with if or whether.
DIRECTION DIRECT	RECT QUESTION: he policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' Sl	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. asked some more questions. Write them in She asked him if he was British. he asked him whether	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French. In indirect speech with if or whether.
DIRECTION DIRECT	he policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' Sl 'Do you have a dri	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. asked some more questions. Write them in She asked him if he was British. he asked him whether	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French. In indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIF	he policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a dri 'Do you have it wi	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. asked some more questions. Write them in She asked him if he was British. he asked him whether	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French. In indirect speech with if or whether.
INDIF	he policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' Sl 'Do you have a dri 'Do you have it wi 'Do you always dr	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. asked some more questions. Write them in She asked him if he was British. he asked him whether	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French. In indirect speech with if or whether.
DIRECTION DIRECT	he policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' Sl 'Do you have a dri 'Do you have it wi 'Do you always dr	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. asked some more questions. Write them in She asked him if he was British. he asked him whether	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French. In indirect speech with if or whether.
DIRECTION 1 1 2 3 4 5	he policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a dri 'Do you have it wi 'Do you always dr	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. asked some more questions. Write them in She asked him if he was British. he asked him whether iving licence?' th you?' ive with the door open?'	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French. In indirect speech with if or whether.
DIRECTION 1 1 2 3 4 5 5 3 TI	he policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a dri 'Do you have it wi 'Do you always dr	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. asked some more questions. Write them in She asked him if he was British. he asked him whether iving licence?' th you?' ive with the door open?' to me?' sestions from a job interview. Write them	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French. In indirect speech with if or whether. in indirect speech.
DIRECTION 1 1 2 3 4 5 5 3 TI	he policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a dri 'Do you have it wi 'Do you always dr 'Are you listening hese are some qu	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. asked some more questions. Write them in She asked him if he was British. he asked him whether iving licence?' th you?' ive with the door open?' to me?' uestions from a job interview. Write them They asked him how old he was.	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French. In indirect speech with if or whether. in indirect speech.
DIRECTION DIRECT	he policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a dri 'Do you have it wi 'Do you always dr 'Are you listening hese are some qu 'How old are you? 'Are you married?'	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. asked some more questions. Write them in She asked him if he was British. he asked him whether iving licence?' th you?' ive with the door open?' to me?' lestions from a job interview. Write them They asked him how old he was.	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French. In indirect speech with if or whether. in indirect speech.
DIRECTION DIRECT	he policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a dri 'Do you have it wi 'Do you always dr 'Are you listening hese are some qu 'How old are you? 'Are you married?' 'Do you have child	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. asked some more questions. Write them in She asked him if he was British. he asked him whether iving licence?' th you?' ive with the door open?' to me?' restions from a job interview. Write them They asked him how old he was. dren?'	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French. In indirect speech with if or whether. in indirect speech.
2 TI 1 2 3 4 5 5 1 1 2 3 3	he policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a dri 'Do you have it wi 'Do you always dr 'Are you listening hese are some qu 'How old are you? 'Are you married?' 'Do you have child	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. asked some more questions. Write them in She asked him if he was British. he asked him whether iving licence?' th you?' ive with the door open?' to me?' restions from a job interview. Write them in they asked him how old he was. dren?' worked before?'	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French. In indirect speech with if or whether. in indirect speech.
2 TI 1 2 3 4 5 5 1 1 2 3 3	he policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a dri 'Do you have it wi 'Do you always dr 'Are you listening 'How old are you? 'Are you married?' 'Do you have child 'Where have you want	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. asked some more questions. Write them in She asked him if he was British. he asked him whether iving licence?' th you?' ive with the door open?' to me?' restions from a job interview. Write them in They asked him how old he was. dren?' worked before?' to change your job?'	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French. In indirect speech with if or whether. in indirect speech.
DIRECTION DIRECT	he policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a dri 'Do you have it wi 'Do you always dr 'Are you listening hese are some qu 'How old are you? 'Are you married?' 'Do you have child 'Where have you want	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. asked some more questions. Write them in She asked him if he was British. he asked him whether iving licence?' th you?' ive with the door open?' to me?' restions from a job interview. Write them in They asked him how old he was. dren?' worked before?' to change your job?'	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French. In indirect speech with if or whether. in indirect speech.
DIRECTION DIRECT	he policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a dri 'Do you have it wi 'Do you always dr 'Are you listening hese are some qu 'How old are you? 'Are you married?' 'Do you have child 'Where have you w 'Why do you want	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. asked some more questions. Write them in She asked him if he was British. he asked him whether iving licence?' th you?' ive with the door open?' to me?' restions from a job interview. Write them in they asked him how old he was. dren?' worked before?' to change your job?' y foreign languages?'	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French. In indirect speech with if or whether. in indirect speech.
DIRECTION DIRECT	he policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a dri 'Do you have it wi 'Do you always dr 'Are you listening hese are some qu 'How old are you? 'Are you married?' 'Do you have child 'Where have you w 'Why do you want	Do you know Tim? He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. asked some more questions. Write them in She asked him if he was British. he asked him whether iving licence?' th you?' ive with the door open?' to me?' restions from a job interview. Write them in They asked him how old he was. dren?' worked before?' to change your job?'	Are you French? She asked if/whether I was French. In indirect speech with if or whether. in indirect speech.

present reporting verbs She says she comes from London.

After	present verbs (for e	example she says	, I think) we don't change the tenses.
DIREC	CT QUESTION:	'Well, yes, I come	from London.' 'Funny – you have a Scottish accent.'
INDIR	RECT QUESTION:	She says she com	es from London, but I think she has a Scottish accent.
b c	omplete the indired 'I'm Irish.' 'Where is Peter?' 'Did John phone?' 'We live in Greece.' 'I went to Belfast yee, 'I've been ill.' 'It's going to rain.' 'I'll ask my sister.' 'We're going to be 'Is lunch ready?' 'Where did I put my 'I'm getting a cold.'	ect speech sen esterday: rich:	
10	'This is the right an		I know
When Re	e does she live? —> e write the questice What does this word Is there a lesson too Where can I buy tice How much does it Has John phoned? Must I pay now? Does Maria like ste Where did I park the	Do you know whons. rd mean? day? ckets? cost?	Do you know? or Can you tell me? + indirect question. lere she lives? Is he at home? → Can you tell me if he's at home? Do you knowwhat this word means? Can you tell meif there's a lesson today? Can you Do
We ca	an also use indirect	questions in ans	swers.
Sorry,	, I don't know <mark>where</mark> .	she lives. I ca	an't remember if he's married.
	•	v, I don't care oi	sentences beginning I know, I don't know, I'd like to know, r I can't remember.
1 2 3	What do elephants Does the British Mu	o Irish people spe s eat? useum open on (cow who built the Eiffel Tower. Peak? Christmas Day?
5	_		

here and now → there and then





When we tell people what somebody said, we may have to **change** words like *here, this, today* and *now*. This is because the **place and time have changed** since the words were spoken.

Control of the contro	STATE OF THE PARTY
BILL IN IRELAND IN DECEMBER	JOE IN LONDON IN MARCH
I like it here.	Bill said he liked it there / in Ireland.
I'm going fishing this week.	He said he was going fishing that week.
I'm not working today.	He said he wasn't working that day.
What do you want to do now?	He asked what I wanted to do then/next.

Match the direct and indirect speech expressions.

DIRECT SPEECH: 'here and now' words		INDIRECT SPEECH: 'there and then' words					
0	here	5	today	Α	that day	F	the next day
1	now	6	tonight	В	that night	G	there
2	this	7	last week	C	that	Н	the week before
3	tomorrow	8	next week	D	the day before	1	then
4	yesterday			E	the next week		

2 A friend of yours said these sentences a month ago in another country.

Now you are telling somebody what she said.

Complete the sentences with the correct 'there and then' words.

	•	
	'I'm not happy here.'	She said she wasn't happythere.
1	'I hate this place.'	She said she hated
2	'I left home last week.'	She said she had left home
3	'I wrote to my father yesterday.'	She said she had written to her father
4	'Are you leaving today?'	She asked me if I was leaving
5	'Where will you be tonight?'	She asked where I would be
6	'I'll phone you tomorrow.'	She said she would phone me

3 Another friend of yours said these sentences two weeks ago in another town.

Now you are telling somebody what he said. Write the sentences with the correct tenses and 'there and then' words.

>	"I'm really happy here." He said he was really happy there.
1	'I love this place.'
	'I saw a great film yesterday.'
	'I'm going to another party tonight.'
4	'Do you want to play tennis tomorrow?'
5	'My girlfriend will be here next week.'

infinitives She told me to get out.

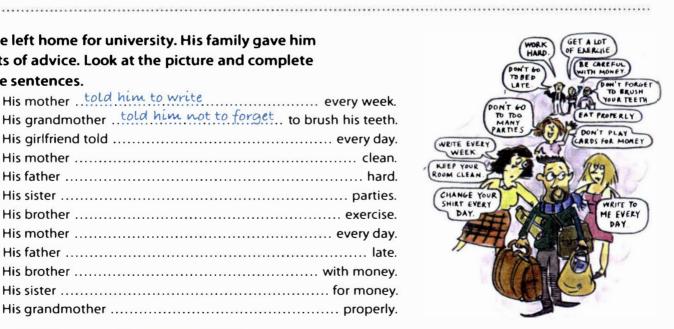
We use ask or tell + object + infinitive (with to), to say what people want(ed) us to do.			
DIRECT SPEECH	INDIRECT SPEECH		
'Please close the door.'	She asked me to close the door.		
'Could you phone Angela?'	I asked John to phone Angela.		
'Get out!'	She told me to get out.		
'Don't worry.'	The doctor always tells her not to worry.		

.....

Write past indirect speech sentences.

- MARK Peter, could you close the window? (ask) Mark asked Peter to close the window.
- ▶ THE TEACHER: Andrew, don't talk so loud. (tell) The teacher told Andrew not to talk so loud.
- 1 DAVE: Sandra, please give me your phone number. (ask)
- 2 THE BOSS: James, I'd like you to work late. (tell)
- 3 JUDY: Kim. please don't tell Karen about Ryan. (ask)
- 4 MR SANDERS: Fred, please don't smoke in my car. (ask)
- 5 THE GENERAL: Colonel Walker, take 100 men and cross the river, (tell)
- 6 ANNA: Polly, you mustn't study so hard. (tell)
- 2 Joe left home for university. His family gave him lots of advice. Look at the picture and complete the sentences.
 - ► His mother told him to write His grandmother told him not to forget to brush his teeth. 1 His girlfriend told every day. 3 His father hard. 4 His sister parties. 5 His brother exercise. 6 His mother every day. 7 His father late. 8 His brother with money.

9 His sister for money. 10 His grandmother properly.



We can use in	finitives af	ter how	, what, v	vhen etc
---------------	--------------	---------	-----------	----------

I don't know how to cook fish. She asked me what to write. Tell me when to pay.

Write two sentences about yourself.

- 1 I know how to 2 I don't know how to

indirect speech: more practice

U li	ndirect questions. Yesterday morning Peter asked his mother hundreds of questions.
Н	lere are some of them. Report them using indirect speech.
•	'Why do cats have tails?' He asked her why cats had tails
•	'Will I get all your money when you die?' He asked her if he would get all her money when she died.
1	'Can I have ice cream for breakfast?'
1	
2	'Why do the stars only come out at night?'
-	
3	, and the state of
4	Which is doc.
5	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
6	'Do you believe in Father Christmas?'
7	
8	'When will I be rich?'
9	'Why don't French people speak English?'
10	'How big is the universe?'
	ofinitives. Yesterday morning Peter's mother told him to do hundreds of things.
Н	ere are some of them. Report them using "She told him".
	Say 'Please'. She told him to say 'Please'.
•	Don't ask so many questions. She told him not to ask so many questions.
1	Wash your hands before breakfast.
2	Don't eat with your mouth open.
3	Eat everything on your plate.
4	Don't talk with your mouth full.
5	Make your bed.
6	Clean your room.
	Polish your shoes.
8	Put on a clean shirt.
9	Don't shout at your sister.
	Don't be late for school.
10	Don't be late for school.
B u	Vhat to etc. Write sentences beginning John doesn't know.
	'What should I tell Ann?' John doesn't know what to tell Ann.
1	'How do I phone New York?'
2	'Where do I pay?'
3	'When do I start work?'
_	
4	'How do I switch the computer on?'
5	'Where shall I put my coat?'
6	'How much must I pay?'
7	'What should I study?'

Grammar in a text. Read the letter and then complete the report.

Dear all,

Sorry I haven't written for a few weeks. I've been too busy. I'm having a great time; I'm going to parties every night. I'm doing a bit of work too. We had an exam last week. I hope I'll get good marks.

1 only have one shirt - I've lost the others. Mum, can you buy me six more? And I can't find my raincoat. Is it at home?

My room here isn't very nice - I'll have to look for a better one. And the food here in college isn't much good, so I'm living on hamburgers. I've spent nearly all my money. Dad, can you send some more?

Can you give me Aunt Ellen's address? And I haven't heard from Sarah. Where is she living? And does Jasper want to come and spend two or three days down here with me?

That's all for now. Love to everybody.

Joe

In his letter Joe ▶ said he was sorry that he ▶ hadn't written for a few weeks.
It was because he 1 too busy. He 2 his family that he
3 some work too. He said he
5 an exam 6 week, and he hoped he
7 get good marks.
Joe 8 that he only 9 one shirt, because he
10 him six more.
And he asked 12 his raincoat 13 at home.
His room 14 not very nice, he said, so he 15 have to look
for a better one. And because of the bad college food he 16 on hamburgers.
He said he 17 nearly all his money, and asked his father 18
him some more. Joe also asked his family 19 him his Aunt Ellen's address.
And he 20 them that he 21 from Sarah, and asked
22 she 23
At the end of the letter, Joe asked 24 Jasper 25 to go
and spend a few days with him.
Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find some simple sentences beginning
"We don't know what/where/when/how" + infinitive. Write some of them.
(Note that why + infinitive is very unusual.)
1
2
3

indirect speech: revision test

Pı	ut in said or told.
1	The newspaper it would snow at the weekend.
2	Everybody me I would pass the exam, but I didn't.
3	1 the driver I knew the way.
4	My father he was feeling tired because of working at weekends.
5	Everybody Emma looked ill, but she was fine.
6	Luke the doctor he had a lot of trouble sleeping.
7	I my mother I wasn't coming home before Saturday.
8	Nobody me that the school was closed.
9	Rachel that she would be back by one o'clock.
10	You never me that you loved me.
	orrect (🗸) or not (x)?
	I knew that I will see her again
	Andrew told me he hated his brother's wife
1	Leo phoned me on Sunday and said he went to a great party yesterday
2	I said that I was sorry, but that I'm really tired
3	I knew I would forget her name in a few days
4	You told me I like the new car
5	Jack said he had to phone Karl that evening
6	Lucy said that nobody likes her
7	I thought the TV didn't work, but I was wrong
8	Maggie said she would see me soon, but I never saw her again
9	I saw Carola in January and she told me I was unhappy just now
10	Shakespeare told his wife that you don't understand my work
N	ine of sentences 1–15 have mistakes. Find them and correct them.
•	Do you remember what time the play starts?
	John asked how did+feel . how I felt
1	I asked what the time was.
2	I didn't know if I was late.
3	A man asked me where was the post office.
4	Do you know when is arriving Jane?
5	I didn't know whether I was late.
6	Do you know where all those people work?
7	Can you say me what the time is?
8	The policeman asked me where I am going.
9	The children wanted to know was I English.
10	l asked him what he wanted?
11	I don't know what does this word mean.
12	Nobody understood what Sophie wants.
13	I'd like to know what you are thinking.
14	Please tell me what you want.
15	I don't know why did she say that.

SECTION 21 prepositions

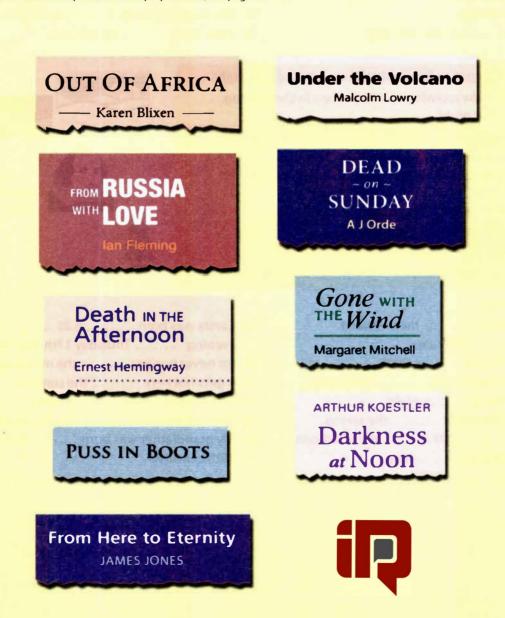
grammar summary

above	e across	against	along	at l	behind	betv	veen by	down	during
for	from in	in front of	into	near	off	on	opposite	out of	over
past	round	through to	o und	er ur	ntil/till	up			

Some prepositions are difficult, because they have more than one meaning. (A preposition in one language often has several different translations into another language.)

In this section, we explain and practise the most important prepositions: those that we use to talk about time, place and movement.

- → For since and for, see page 65.
- → For the place of prepositions in questions, see page 111; with relative pronouns, see page 258.
- → For -ing forms after prepositions, see page 132.
- → For verbs followed by prepositions, see page 141.
- → For lists of common expressions with prepositions, see pages 305–306.



at, in and on (time)



We use at with clock times.

Call me at lunchtime. I'll see you at 4.15. The plane leaves at six.

But we say What time...?, NOT USUALLY At what time ...?

What time is the film?

We use on with days, dates and expressions like Monday morning and Friday afternoon.

I'll be at home on Tuesday.

We get up late on Sundays.

The meeting's on June 23rd. I had to work on Christmas Day.

I'm always sleepy on Monday mornings.





Put in at or on.

- 1 What are you doing Saturday? 2 Can you wake me 6.30? 3 The classes start September 8th. 4 I'll be in late Tuesday morning. 5 I have my guitar lessons 10.00
- Wednesdays.
- 6 She arrived Easter Monday.

- 7 My job starts April 17th.
- 8 Can we meet lunchtime

..... Tuesday?

- 9 I'll be home 5.00.
- 10 I'll see you Friday evening.
- 11 She always phones midnight.
- 12 I was born March 21st.

We say in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening, but at night.

She was born at 6.16 in the morning. I work best in the evening. This street is very quiet at night.

We use in with weeks, seasons, months, years and centuries.

We're going to Denmark in the first week of May.

I always get unhappy in the winter. My birthday's in March.

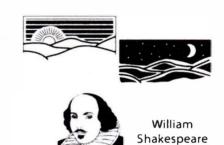
Shakespeare died in 1616.

There were terrible wars in the 17th century.

We say at Christmas, at Easter and at the weekend.

(American English on the weekend)

What are you doing at the weekend? Did you go away at Christmas?









Put in in, at or on.

- 1 We went to Wales the weekend. 2 I go skiing February.
- 3 She finished school 2006.
- 4 My mother comes to stay Christmas.
- 5 I don't like driving night.
- 6 Our garden is beautiful the spring.
- 7 | stop work 5.00 the afternoon.
- 8 I'll finish university June.
- 9 I last saw her 1998.

- 10 Carola was born 8.25 the evening Thursday 17th April 2000.
- 11 I'm never hungry the morning.
- 12 It gets hot here the summer.
- 13 I'm going to Spain Easter.
- 14 The conference is the last week of May.
- 15 My grandfather was born the 19th century.

We don't use prepositions before common expressions with this, next, last and every.

What are you doing this afternoon? Goodbye. See you next week.

Theo was here last Tuesday. We go on holiday to the same place every year.

Æ	Today is Wadnasda	y March 16th 2011. Rewrite the sentences using this, next, last and every
\ -	y louay is weullesua	y March Tour 2011. New rice the sentences using this, next, last and every

	I met her in 2010. I met her last year.
1	I'll see you on March 23rd.
	It rained non-stop from March 7th to March 13th.
	Business was bad in February 2011.
	Shall we go out on March 16th in the evening?
	We're going to America in April 2011.
	Ann had a car crash on March 9th.
	I'm going to change my job in 2012.
	My holiday is in August 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015 etc.
O	My Holiday is III Adgust 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2013 etc

9 I've spent too much money already in March.

10 The new school will be open in March 2012.

To say how long it takes to finish something, we use in.

They built our house in three months. Your soup will be ready in ten minutes.

My Australian friend Sheila is saving money because she wants to buy a sports car. She is saving \$1 a day, starting tomorrow.

	When will she have \$2 in her savings account? In two days.
	when will she have \$2 in her savings account?
1	When will she have \$5?
2	When will she have \$7? In a
3	When will she have \$14?
4	When will she have \$30?
5	When will she have \$365?
6	The car costs \$36,500. When will she have it?

WE WRITE	WE SAY
1999	nineteen ninety-nine
17(th) March 2011	the seventeenth of March, two thousand and eleven
OR March 17(th) 2011	March the seventeenth, two thousand and eleven
OR 17.3.(20)11	
OR 17/3/(20)11	
American English: 3.17.2011	March (the) seventeenth, two thousand (and) eleven

Say these dates:

1 21.3.1999 2 14 February 1960 3 July 28 1846 4 6/5/03 5 May 9 1984 6 17 December 2012

from ... to, until and by

We use till (informal) or until to say when an action or situation ends.

ľII b	e in London till Thursday. We played football until 5 o'clock.
0	Complete the sentences with <i>until</i> or <i>till</i> and expressions from the box.
L	the age of 14 July lunchtime six o'clock in the morning 🗸 Saturday the end
4	It was a great party. We danced
	can give the beginning and end of an action or situation with from to/until/till .
Iwo	rked from 8.00 to 6.00 yesterday. We'll be away from July 16 until/till August 4.
2	Make sentences about John's Sunday morning with to, till or until. read paper 7.30 – 8.00 He read the paper from 7.30 to 8.00. OR He read the paper from 7.30 until/till 8.00.
	washed car 8.00 - 9.00
4	played tennis 10.00 – 11.00 talked to friends 11.00 – 11.30 talked to friends 11.00 – 11.00 talked to friends 11.00 – 11.00 talked to friends 11.00 talked to friend
	went for a walk 11.30 – 12.45
1 2	Vrite two sentences with <i>from to/till/until</i> about things you did yesterday.
	use by (= 'not later than') to say that something happens at or before a certain moment.
You	You really must bring it back by 12.00 on Sunday. Not Ok
7.	
4 P 1 2 3 4 5	The film goes on
6	Can you wait for my answer tonight?

for, during and while

For + period tells you how long. During	tells	you when.
---	-------	-----------

The journey lasted for three days. There was a rainstorm during the night. I slept for 20 minutes during the lesson.

	D +	:-	604 0-	during.
w	Put	ın	<i>tor</i> or	auring.

1	I lived in Mexico six years.
2	I got a headache the examination.
3	We visited Kyoto our holiday in Japan.
4	The electricity went off two hours the afternoon
5	Alex and his wife met the war.
6	Could I talk to you a few minutes?
7	I usually get a lot of phone calls the morning.

During is a preposition: we use during + noun.

While is a conjunction: we use while + subject + verb (often past progressive - see page 52).

They got into the house during the night. They got into the house while I was asleep. He got ill during the journey. He got ill while he was travelling.

8 She and her boyfriend have been together a long time.

2 Change the expressions.

	during the meal (I/eat)
	while I was travelling (journey) during the journey
	during the game (they / play)
2	while we were listening (lesson)
3	while they were fighting (war)
ļ	during her lesson (she/teach)
5	during his speech (he / speak)
5	during the conversation (they / talk)
7	while she was in hospital (illness)
3	during the snowstorm (it / snow)

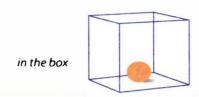
3 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: useful expressions with for

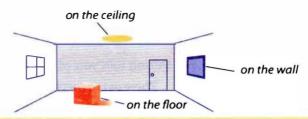
Look at the expressions in the box, and choose suitable ones to complete the sentences. Different answers are possible.

for a moment for a minute or two for a few minutes for an hour or so (= 'about an hour') for a couple of hours for a long time for ages for years and years for ever for life

	They waited, but the bus didn't come.
2	I will love you
3	Could I talk to you?
4	I played tennis and then went home.
5	l went to sleep during the opera.
6	She usually stops work at 11 o'clock of coffee
7	l often watch TV before I go to bed.
8	They put him in prison

in and on (place)





We use in with 3-dimensional spaces like boxes, rooms, towns or countries.

We use on with 2-dimensional surfaces like floors, tables, walls or ceilings.

'Where's Joe?' In the kitchen.' There's nothing in the fridge.

Why are all those papers on the floor? The church has wonderful paintings on the ceiling.

She had photos of all her family on the wall.

People are in clothes. Clothes and jewellery (earrings etc) are on people.

Who is the manin the grey suit? That sweater looks good on you.

She had a ring on every finger.



Put in in or on.











1 a bath

2 a roof







6 her arm









We say in a book, in the newspaper, in a story (BUT on a page); in a street.

7 a plate

Is there anything interesting in the paper?

Her photo is on page 4.

They live in Park Street.



Put in words from the boxes with in or on.

	children's stories ✓	her first finger	my diary	the office	the roof o	f the car	the cupboard
•	In children's sto	ries,	anim	als can talk.			
1	'Are you free next Tu						
2	Is Sandra			today?			
3	She had a wonderfu	ıl diamond ring					
4	'Where's the salt?'						
5	The cat likes to sleep	o					
_							\neg
	a little village his	T-shirt my poo	ket a pie	ce of paper	the wall	yourcar	
6	Don't loave your key				whon	au aat aut	
6	, _ , _ , _ , _ , , _ , , , , , ,				-	_	
7			it said	d'Aberdeen U	Iniversity Fo	otball Club	oʻ.
8	She had pictures of	pop singers				in her ro	oom.
9	They live			near Bel	fast.		
10	I wrote her address .				and put it	1	

Note that we say BUT on a bus/train/plane/ship. Granny arrived , as usual. I'm leaving on the 4.15 train.

at (place)





I'll meet you at the cinema.

Operator	電	GW
LONDON Paddington	1743	1803
Ealing Broadway 👄		-111-
Slough	1800	1822
Maidenhead		166
Twyford		401
Reading. dep	1820	1838
Filehurst	(a) (a) (b)	4)+
Pangbourne	115	110
Goring & Streatley	117	370
Wallingford =		
Cholsey		
Didcot Parkway arr	1835	153

The train stops at Slough, Reading and Didcot.

We often use at to show where something happens – for example, with meeting places or points on a journey.

I'll see you this evening at Sarah's house. You have to change planes at Karachi.
I saw Linda waiting at the bus stop. Turn left at the next corner.

We often use at with words for things that people do, or the places where they do them.

at a football match at breakfast, lunch etc at a restaurant at work at the office at the theatre at the cinema at the station at a party at (the) college/university

1 Put in words from the box with at.

a Chinese restaurant a theatre Birmingham breakfast the cinema the crossroads the hotel bar the party the station the traffic lights \checkmark work

- Paul crashed his car because he didn't stop ... at the traffic lights.
- 1 Are there any good films this week?
- 2 Her train was terribly late I spent hours waiting

- 6 The boss doesn't let us take personal phone calls
- 7 Helen never says anything because she's still asleep.
- 8 There isn't a direct train. You change
- 10 'Where's the car park?' 'Turn right

We often use at with the top, the bottom, the side, the beginning and the end.

My room's at the top of the house. Begin at the beginning.

Put in at the top, at the bottom etc.

- 1 Their house is down of the hill.
- 2 I never have any money of the month.
- 3 | I stopped for a minute of the stairs to have a rest.
- 4 The best fruit is always of the tree, where you can't get it.
- 5 Maria wasn't there of the lesson; she came in late.

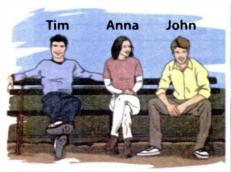
Sometimes in and at are both possible. We prefer at when we are thinking about the activity – what we do in the place – and in when we think about the place itself.

We had lunch at the station restaurant. It was very hot in the big dining room.

For expressions with no article like at breakfast, at work, see page 162.

other prepositions of place

above against behind between by in front of near opposite under







Anna is sitting between Tim and John.

Come and sit by me.

We camped by the lake.



Montreal is in eastern Canada, near Ottawa.



I left my bicycle against the shop window.



Joe's car is parked **in front of** our house. There's a bus stop **opposite** our house.



Lucy is **in front of** Beth. Beth is **behind** Lucy.



Andy is opposite Mike.

Mike



The dog is hiding under the table.



The plane is flying above the clouds.

Choose the correct prepositions.

- ▶ I usually sit a window in class, so I can look out if I get bored. (behind, by, in front of)
- 1 There was a big bird flying high up the trees. (above, against, opposite)
- 2 They live in a beautiful old house a river. (above, by, under)
- 3 There's a big clock the door of the station. (above, against, between)
- 4 I sat down Marion and looked into her eyes. (above, behind, by)
- 5 You can park your car the house. (against, behind, between)
- 6 I'll meet you at the station the clock. (against, between, under)
- 7 The door wouldn't stay shut, so I put a chair it. (above, against, near)

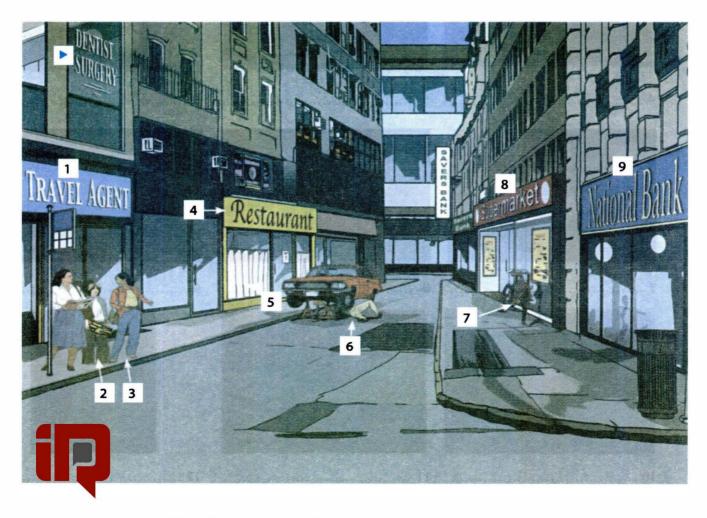
Put in the correct prepositions.

- 1 She put the money at the bottom of her suitcase, her clothes.
- 2 Our house is a bank and a supermarket, and just the police station.
- 3 Please don't put your bicycle our wall.
- 4 Sorry we're late we were driving a slow bus all the way.
- 5 I work in a small town Birmingham.
- 6 In the theatre I couldn't see anything because there was a very tall man me.
- 7 We usually have lunch in a little café the school, about five minutes' walk away.

3 Look at the picture and choose the correct prepositions.

- (above) near the travel agent
- 1 opposite / in front of the National Bank
- 2 against / between the two women
- 3 above / behind the child
- 4 near / by the travel agent

- 5 in front of / behind the restaurant
- 6 opposite / under the car
- 7 against / opposite the window
- 8 behind / between the banks
- 9 by / opposite the supermarket



prepositions of movement

across along down into off over out of past round through under up

1 Write the expressions under the correct photos. Use a dictionary if necessary.

across the river along the yellow line down the mountain into the water off the bike over the fence out of the shop past the café round the corner through the gate under the bridge up the steps













4

5



6

7



9





) 11

12

2 c	ross out the words that are wrong.		
	across the road / the church	7	through the door / the railway line
1	along the corner / the road		off the police station / the table
2	up the mountain / the table	9	out of the church / the stairs
	down the church / the stairs	10	under the bridge / the people
4	over the corner / the wall		past the floor / the bank
5			across the river / the wall
6	round the corner / the road		
3 c	hoose the correct prepositions and put them i	in the	correct places.
•	I went the stairs andalong	. the	passage. (along, into, out of, up)
	Mrs Andrews got the taxi and ran .		
	Alice walked the steps to the river a		
-	through, over)		
3	He walked slowly the road for a few		• •
	a small door a garden. (across, alon	_	
4	Mandy went the stairs and		ner omce, took a letter the
_	table and started to read it. (into, off, out of, over, up		railway bridge the first sounce
3	Go the supermarket,		
6	and the police station is on your right. (along, down		
O	As soon as I got the boat I went strashopping. (into, off, out of, past, through)	aigiit	the town centre to do some
7	I got bed, walkedtl	ha ha	droom and looked the window
,	It was raining again. (across, into, out of, out of, under		aroom, and looked the window.
R	It takes three hours to walk the mo		hut you can get it in two
Ü	(across, down, over, round, up)	aritan	i, but you can get it in two.
	(across, aowii, over, rouna, ap)		
Weu	use to for movement, and at or in for position – when	re son	nebody/something is (see pages 278–279).
l wer	nt to the bus stop to meet Helen. I waited at the bus	stop	for twenty minutes.
We c	an use from with to		
He to	ook five days to cycle from London to Edinburgh.		
We g	get to a place, but we arrive at a place, or arrive in a b	ig pla	ce (NOT arrive to).
It too	ok three hours to get to Cambridge. I was tired whe	n I arr	ived at the station.
We a	rrived in London very early in the morning.		
4 P	ut in from, to, at or in.		
1	Let's go the country this weekend.	7	I saw Annie standing the bus stop.
2			When we arrived her house she had
3			already left.
4	We flew directly Berlin Tokyo.	9	Are there tigers Africa?
5			It takes me about half an hour to get
6			work.

NOTE: we get into and out of cars BUT on(to) and off buses/trains/planes/ships.

S Write a few sentences about a journey that you have made, using from, to, at and in.

prepositions: more practice

1 Time. Circle the correct prepositions.

1 He phoned on / in Friday.

2	The party is at / on June 18th.	10 What are you doing on / at Thursday?
3	Are you at home at / on Christmas?	11 Bring my bike back until / by Friday.
4	I'll be here during / for two months.	12 I'll work for / until 8.00 this evening.
5	We get up late in / on Sunday mornings.	13 I couldn't sleep for / during the night.
6	I often watch TV <i>in / at</i> night.	14 Stay here while / during I go shopping.
7	The film ends on / at 9.45.	15 I play tennis <i>at / in</i> the weekend.
8	You can't learn English in / by a month.	
2 Ex	spressions without prepositions. Today is S	Saturday August 13th 2011.
Re	ewrite the expressions in italics using this, i	next, last and every.
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
1	•	
2		
3		14 etc
4		
5		
6	,	evening?
7		
8		
9		
10		
3 M	ovement. Cross out the wrong words.	
	across the river / the bank	6 up the mountain / the floor
1	along the church / the road	7 over the door / the wall
2	down the police station / the mountain	8 past the floor / the church
3	into the church / the table	9 round the corner / the railway line
4	off the corner / the table	10 through the door / the table
5	out of the church / the wall	
4 PI	ace and movement. Put in suitable prepos	itions.
	He satby/wear the window, and looked	out from time to time.
1	C comes B and D in the alphabe	et.
2	I couldn't see the plane, because it was high	the clouds.
3	-	ause the woman me wanted a lot of
	different things.	Some and the sound
_	There's a garage on the other side of the street j	
5	Please don't put bicycles the sh	-
6	He turned round and walked away	
7	We cycled a little road	
8	Ann came the church and walke	
	I got the bus and went	
10	'Where's the swimming pool?' 'Drive	
	the railway bridge and the corn	er, and you'll see it on your left.
(4)		

9 Hannah's birthday is on / in May.

3	Place and movement. Write the opposites.		
	on the train off the train	6	in front of the door
	1 into the church	7	at the top of the stairs
	2 off the bus	8	up the mountain
	3 down the stairs	9	behind the police station
	4 over the bridge	10	at the beginning
	5 out of the river		
6	Dates. Write these dates as you would say them		
	▶ 2006 two thousand and six	5	10.1.02
	▶ 17th March the seventeenth of March	6	3/4/08
	OR March the seventeenth	7	October 4th
	1 23rd April	8	21st March, 1936
	2 1st September	9	Oct 22, 2006
	3 5th August, 2010	10	1/1/01
	4 March 2, 1980		
7	GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: duration. Put in suit	table	e expressions from the box.
	(Different answers are possible.)		
	▶ I feel as if I've known youfor ever.		for a couple of hours
	1 I need to speak to you		
	2 The terrorists were sent to prison		
	3 We haven't seen Peter		for a long time
	4 I'm going to rest		
	5 It's been raining		
	6 usually play tennis		
	7 We've lived in the same house		
	8 Can you help me		
	9 She went to sleep on the train just		101
1	10 I'm going out into the garden		for years and years
	The state of the garden in the same state of the		
8	Grammar in a text. Choose the correct prepositi	ions.	
	Dear Louise		
	I'm glad you can come 1 on / in Friday. You asked how	to ao	et to our house. It's very easy. Get a in / on a
	No. 16 bus 3 opposite / along the police station, and g	_	•
	new supermarket. Then walk 6 off / along Boston Street		
	lights, keep straight on 8 along / under the railway brid		_
	10 round / across the corner by the pub, then 11 down /		
	takes you into South Park. Walk 13 along / through the	-	
	15 round / in front of the school, and you'll find yourself		
	left, just 17 out of / by the old railway station. You can't	miss	It.
	Love, Judy.		
0	Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Goo	ر (مات	to find simple sentences with the
O	expressions in the box. Write some of them.	gie,	to find simple sentences with the
	expressions in the box. Write some of them.		2
	"across the river" "along the road" "out of the	churc	th" "off the table" "up the mountain"
	"over the wall" "round the corner"	criaic	an the table ap the mountain
	Over the wan Tourid the comer		

prepositions: revision test

1 Pu	ut in the correct words.
1	Let's go to Cardiff Tuesday. (in, at, while, on)
	The bridge the river is closed. (along, over, up, through)
3	The next meeting is December 8th. (on, at, in, by)
4	What do you usually do the weekend? (on, at, in, by)
5	Max fell his bike and broke his leg. (down, on, out of, off)
6	I need your answer
7	I'm not free now, but I can talk to you half an hour. (in, for, by, until)
8	I slept two hours this afternoon. (in, by, for, during)
	The quickest way to our house is the park. (along, through, in, over)
	Let's go for a walk the sun's shining. (while, during, for, along)
2 Pt	ut in suitable prepositions. (More than one may be possible.)
	I'm going to put this picture my bedroom wall.
2	I'll be away June 1st July 15th.
3	Olivia lived in Cairo three years.
4	I didn't work very hard my time at university.
5	It says the newspaper that there will be snow.
6	Does this bus stop the railway station?
7	Your father's photo is page 16.
8	We're leaving the 10.40 train.
9	I always wear this ring my little finger.
10	Write your name the top of the page.
11	Can you clean this suit 4 o'clock?
12	A lot of people travel for a year school and university.
13	Pete met his girlfriend a party.
14	I'll be ready to go ten minutes.
15	I like walking the river.
B A	Il these sentences are wrong. Correct the mistakes.
	I'll see you at Tuesday
	She talked non-stop during three hours.
2	Please let me have all the information until Saturday.
3	Anna walked slowly out the room and down the stairs.
4	There's a pub on the other side of the road in front of our house.
5	Do you think you can swim through this river?
6	There's a strange insect in the ceiling.
7	It took a long time to drive over the town to the church.
8	I'll see you on next Monday.
9	Did you stay at home on Christmas?
10	We have to get down the bus at the next stop.

SECTION 22 spoken grammar

grammar summary

We often leave words out if the meaning is clear. This is particularly common in spoken English.

It often happens after auxiliary verbs.

She said she would phone, but she didn't. (= '... she didn't phone.')

I'll finish the work as soon as I can. (= '... as soon as I can finish the work.')

There are several common kinds of short spoken sentence made with subject + auxiliary verb:

question tags: You're from Scotland, aren't you?
 short answers: 'Did you see Patrick?' 'No, I didn't.'

reply questions: 'I've got a headache.' 'Have you? I am sorry.'
 so do I, nor can I etc: 'I was really cold on that bus.' 'So was I.'

We also often leave out infinitives (and other words) after to.

I've never seen the Taj Mahal, but I'd like to. (='... I'd like to see the Taj Mahal.')

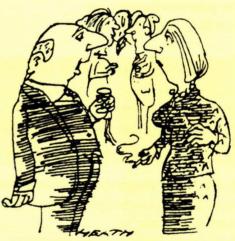
And we may leave out small words (pronouns, articles, auxiliary verbs) at the beginning of sentences.

Don't know. (= 'I don't know.') Train's late. (= 'The train's late.')

Been waiting long? (= 'Have you been waiting long?')



'Forgotten your key again, George?'



'It's all coming back to me now.

We were married once, weren't we?'

'Nor do I.'

'Don't think so.'

'Can't understand a word.'

'Need any help?'

'No, we haven't.'

ناپاانایان بان ایمانیان SPOKEN GRAMMAR **287**

question tags This music isn't very good, is it?

We use question tags to ask if something is true, or to ask people to agree with us. You haven't got my keys, have you? Louise will be here tomorrow, won't she? This music isn't very good, is it? That child can run fast, can't he? Question tags are usually negative (—) after affirmative (+) sentences, and not negative after negative sentences. We don't put question tags after questions. It is warm, isn't it? It isn't cold, is it? (BUT NOT ls it cold, isn't it?)
This music isn't very good, is it? That child can run fast, can't he? Question tags are usually negative (—) after affirmative (+) sentences, and not negative after negative sentences. We don't put question tags after questions.
sentences. We don't put question tags after questions.
It is warm, isn't it? It isn't cold, is it? (BUT NOT ls it cold, isn't it?)
Negative tags are usually contracted (see page 301) – for example isn't it? (NOT USUALLY is it not?) The negative tag for I am is aren't I? (see page 301)
I'm late, aren't !?
Question tag or nothing (-)? Circle the correct form.
I'm late, am !? //, aren't !? / − ? 3 Are you ready, are you? /, aren't you? / −?
You can't swim, can you? /, can't you? / -? 4 It's dark in here, is it? /, isn't it? / -?
▶ Has Anna phoned , has she? / , hasn't she? /-? 5 He can't speak Greek , can he? / , can't he? /-?
1 You'll be here tomorrow 6 The train's late, is it?/, isn't it?/-?
, will you?/, won't you?/-? 7 The food wasn't bad, was it?/, wasn't it?/-?
2 The postman hasn't come 8 Have you done it , have you /, haven't you? / – ?
, has he? / , hasn't he? / – ? 9 I'm too early , amn't I? / , aren't I? / – ?
If the sentence has an auxiliary verb or be, we use this in the question tag.
You would like coffee, wouldn't you? I'm not talking too fast, am !?
Sally doesn't eat meat, does she? You aren't angry with me, are you?
If there is no auxiliary verb , we use do/does/did in the tag.
They went to Spain, didn't they? The lesson starts at 6.00, doesn't it?
Here are some sentences from real conversations. Put in the question tags.
Here are some sentences from real conversations. Put in the question tags. You're playing football tomorrow. Aren't you?
► You're playing football tomorrow,aren't you?
You're playing football tomorrow,aren't you? 1 That's the answer,
You're playing football tomorrow,
You're playing football tomorrow, Aren't you? That's the answer,
You're playing football tomorrow, Aren't you? 1 That's the answer,
You're playing football tomorrow, Aren't you? That's the answer,
You're playing football tomorrow, Aren't you? That's the answer, We're seeing Rebecca again tomorrow, She's a lovely baby, You'll be OK, Roger? Your brother can tell us that, Isabel likes brown bread,
You're playing football tomorrow, Aren't you? That's the answer,
You're playing football tomorrow, Aren't you? That's the answer,
You're playing football tomorrow, Aren't you? That's the answer,
You're playing football tomorrow, **aren't you?** 1 That's the answer,
You're playing football tomorrow,
You're playing football tomorrow, Aren't you? 1 That's the answer, 2 We're seeing Rebecca again tomorrow, 3 She's a lovely baby, 4 You'll be OK, 5 Your brother can tell us that, 6 Isabel likes brown bread, 7 This house gets hot in summer, 3 Here are some negative sentences. Put in the question tags. They weren't at home, Were they? 1 But he's not at school now, 2 You can't remember anything, 3 They don't use much electricity,
You're playing football tomorrow, Aren't you? 1 That's the answer, 2 We're seeing Rebecca again tomorrow, 3 She's a lovely baby, 4 You'll be OK, Roger? 5 Your brother can tell us that, 6 Isabel likes brown bread, 7 This house gets hot in summer, 3 Here are some negative sentences. Put in the question tags. In they weren't at home, Were they? 1 But he's not at school now, 2 You can't remember anything, 3 They don't use much electricity, 4 She doesn't look happy,
You're playing football tomorrow, Aren't you? 1 That's the answer, 2 We're seeing Rebecca again tomorrow, 3 She's a lovely baby, 4 You'll be OK,

We can use there as a subject in question tag	We	can	use	there	as a	sub	ject in	que	estion	tag
---	----	-----	-----	-------	------	-----	---------	-----	--------	-----

There's a letter for me, isn't there? There weren't any problems, were there?

4	Put	in	the	ques	tion	taas.
		•••		4463		tugs.

- 1 There was a phone call for me,
- 2 There are six more lessons this year,
- 3 There's a meeting this afternoon,
- 4 There hasn't been any snow this year,
- 5 There weren't many people at the party,

S Put in the correct question tags.

- 3 It's really cold today, (isn't it?, isn't there, doesn't it?)
- 4 You can't hear what she's saying, (is she?, can you?, can't you?)
- 5 You'd like a drink, (wouldn't you?, don't you?, you would?)
- 6 They don't listen, (are they?, aren't they, do they?)
- 7 Carola's been away, (isn't she?, wasn't she?, hasn't she?)
- 8 I'm at the right address, (am !?, aren't !?, amn't !?)
- 9 There's a problem, (isn't there?, isn't it?, is it?)
- 10 You like chocolate, (like you, aren't you?, don't you?)

6 Change these questions into statements with question tags.

- Do you work at Smith's? You work at Smith's, don't you?

 1 Have they lived in France? They've
- 2 Did they all go home early?3 Did it rain all last week?
- 4 Does her brother write for the newspapers?
- 5 Do I need a visa?
 6 Would you like a holiday?
- 7 Was the train late?
- 8 Did Sarah forget your birthday?

If a tag asks **a real question**, we say it with a **rising** intonation: the music of the voice goes **up**. If a tag just asks for **agreement**, we use a **falling** intonation: the voice goes down

We're meeting in Oxford, we? Nice day, isn'y?

Try to pronounce these tags.

- 1 The lesson begins at twelve, doesn't it?
- 2 Your sister's gone to America, hasn't she?
- 3 Bill's a good singer, isn he?

- 4 It's cold, isn't it?
- 5 You're from Scotland, aren't you?
- 6 She looks good in red, doesn't she?



short answers Yes, I have. No, they didn't.

To answer just 'Yes' or 'No' can be impolite . We often prefer answers with pronoun (I, you etc) + be or The auxiliary verb in the answer is usually the same as the	
'Are you ready?' 'Yes, I am.' 'Have you phoned home?' 'Can Ellie speak Spanish?' 'No, she can't.' 'Did you watch	Yes, I have:
Note that the negative of <i>l</i> am is <i>l'm</i> not.	
'Are you happy?' 'No, I'm not. (NOT No, I amn't.)	
Negative () short answers are usually contracted (see p	age 301): can't, didn't etc.
Affirmative (+) short answers are not contracted: we do	
Write short answers to these questions.	
Do you like jazz?' 'Yes, I do.'	5 'Does your brother like sport?' 'No,'
Are you coming home?''No, I'm not.'	6 'Do you want tickets?' 'Yes,'
1 'ls it raining?' 'No,'	7 'Would your mother like coffee?'
2 'Has Joe phoned?' 'No,	'No thanks,'
3 'Do the children understand?' 'Yes,'	8 'Was the film interesting?' 'No,'
4 'ls this your coat?' 'No,'	9 'Are you ready?' 'No, I'm afraid
4 13 tills your cout. 140,	7 ruc you ready. No, rin and a
Q Give your own personal short answers to these	questions.
Do you like coffee?' Yes, I do. / No, I don't.	5 'Is your English getting better?'
1 'Are you thinking in English now?'	6 'Have you been to New York?'
2 'Do you live in a town?'	7 'Did you watch TV yesterday?'
3 'Do you speak French?'	8 'Can you swim?'
4 'Is it raining now?'	9 'Are you tired?'
We can use short answers to agree or disagree with thing	s that people say.
'It's hot today.' 'Yes, it is.' 'You didn't buy bread.' 'Yes, I d	li <mark>d.</mark> ' 'The train's late.' ' No, it isn't .'
If there is no auxiliary verb, we use do/does/did in the sho	ort answer.
'Her hair looks nice.' 'Yes, it does.'	
.	
3 Write short answers to agree or disagree.	
1 'You're early.' 'No,'	4 'The lesson starts at 5.00.' 'No,'
2 'It's cold.' 'Yes,'	5 'Simon didn't phone.' 'Yes,'
3 'She sings really well.' 'Yes,'	6 'He made a mistake.' 'Yes,'
4 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things that people	can do
Give true answers with Yes, I can or No, I can't.	
1 Can you knit?	5 Can you dive?
2 Can you cook?	6 Can you draw?
3 Can you skate?	7 Can you sing?
4 Can you repair cars?	8 Can you ride a horse?
. can you repair cars.	5 can you had a norse.
knit cook skate repair cars	dive draw sing ride a horse

reply questions Oh, yes? Did they really?

n conversation, we often ask short questions	(auxiliary verb + pronoun) to show interest.						
've just had a letter from Eric.' 'Have you?' 'Yes.	He says he's coming back'						
hese 'reply questions' are not really questions	s: they mean 'Oh, yes? That's interesting.'						
Some more examples:							
John's getting married.' 'Is he really? Who to?'							
nna and Peter had a lovely time in Greece.' 'Dic	d they?' 'Yes. They went'						
We answer negative sentences with negative reply questions.							
can't see very well with these glasses.' 'Can't yo							
curt see very well with these glasses. Curt yo	a: Maybe you should get new ones.						
Choose the correct reply questions.							
Your mother hasn't phoned: 'Has she? (Hasn't she? wonder why not.'						
1 'I've just got married: 'Have you? / Haven							
2 'William had an accident last week' 'Has							
3 'There's a strange bird on the roof.' 'Is it?	/ Is there? Let me look.'						
4 'I can't understand this.' 'Can you? / Can't							
5 'This coffee doesn't taste very nice.' 'Doe.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·						
6 'Your sister's in trouble with the police.'							
•	mas.' 'Do they?/ Don't they? They think I'm made of money.'						
	on't they? / Aren't they? Well, I don't like them either:						
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,							
1 'I don't like this bread at all.' 2 'The Smiths are in America.'	B ' I hope they're having a good time.' C ' I'll get a different kind next time.'						
3 'My French is getting very bad.'	D ' When's he going to bring it back?'						
4 'Ryan's taken the car.'	E '						
5 'I can't understand these papers.'	F ' You need to go to France						
GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: showing of Complete the sentences with reply que Use a dictionary if necessary. Different	estions and expressions from the box.						
Congratulations! Good luck! I am s That's interesting. That's terrible. The	sorry. I don't believe it. ✓ Say 'hello' to him/her for me. hat's a surprise. What a nuisance! What a pity!						
'The Swiss have declared war on America	a' 'Have they? I don't believe it.'						
_							
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	ars.'						
•	313.						
-							
o Andy and Fadia are getting married							

9 'I haven't got enough money to buy food.'



revision of spoken question and answer structures

QUESTION TAGS	SHORT ANSWERS	REPLY QUESTIONS
It is, isn't it?	'Are you?' 'No, I'm not.'	'I'm' 'Are you?'
lam, aren't !?	'Has she?' 'Yes, she has.'	'He's' 'Has he?'
She has, hasn't she?	'Do they?' 'Yes, they do.'	'They like' 'Do they?'
They like, don't they?	'Are we?' 'No, we aren't.'	'We're' 'Are we?'
We aren't, are we?	'He wasn't' 'No, he wasn't.'	'She wasn't' 'Wasn't she?'
He didn't, did he?	'She didn't' 'Yes, she did.'	'He didn't' 'Didn't he?'

1 Circle the best expression.

- ▶ Jemima can't sing at all, (can she?) she can't.
- 1 'I'm worried about Peter.' 'You are?'/ 'Are you?' / 'Aren't you?'
- 2 'Joe didn't phone yesterday.' / 'Joe phoned yesterday.' 'Didn't he?'
- 3 'I'm feeling ill.' / 'I'm not feeling well.' 'Are you?'
- 4 'Does John need help?'/'John needs help.' 'Does he?'
- 5 Do you remember David, / You don't remember David, do you?
- 6 'I've got a headache.' 'You haven't.' / 'You have.' / 'Have you?'
- 7 They can stay with us, they can't? / can't they? / can they?
- 2 Read the conversation, and put in question tags (QT), short answers (SA) or reply questions (RQ).

QT	'Hello, Carol. Lovely day, ▶ LSW't it?'
SA	Yes, it is How are you?'
	'Well, I've got a problem.'
RQ	Have you? What's the matter?'
QT	'You remember my brother's boy Theo, 1'
SA; QT	'2 He went to Australia, 3
SA	'No, 4 He went to Canada. Anyway, he's coming back to England.'
RQ	's That's nice.'
	'Well, yes, but he wants to stay with me.'
RQ	'Oh, 6 Is that the problem?'
SA	'7l'm not very happy about it.'
RQ; QT	'8
SA	'10 – very much.'
QT	'And you've got a lot of room in that big house, 11'
SA	'12 But would you like to have a young man living in your house all the time?'
	'No, I suppose not.'
	'Well, I don't know what to do. I'm really very worried.'
RQ	'13 Would you like some advice?'
SA	'14'
	'Tell him the truth. Say you like him a lot, but you don't want people in your house.'
QT	'I can't say that, 15'
SA	'16 He'll understand. I'm sure of it.'
RQ	'17 I don't know. Anyway, I'll think about it. Thanks.'

leaving out words Don't know if she has.

We often use just an auxiliary verb instead of repeating a longer expression, if the meaning is clear. This happens in question tags, short answers and reply questions (see pages 288–291), and in other sentences too.

'Get up!' 'I am.' (= 'I am getting up.') Come round tomorrow evening, if you can.

I haven't seen that film, but my brother has. (NOT ... but my brother has seen.)

We use do/does/did if there is no other auxiliary verb to repeat.

David said he knew the address, but he didn't really.

- Make these sentences more natural by crossing out unnecessary words.
 - You said it wasn't raining, but it is raining.
 - 1 He thinks I don't understand, but I do understand.
 - 2 'You'd better eat something.' 'I have eaten something.'
 - 3 Alice said she would lend me her car, but I don't think she will lend me her car.
 - 4 Eric was sure he would pass his exam. I hope he has passed his exam.
 - 5 'Will you write to me every day?' 'Of course I will write to you every day.'
 - 6 I can't help you today, but I can help you tomorrow.

We often use to instead of a longer expression, if the meaning is clear.

'Would you like to stay with us next weekend?' 'I'd love to.' (= 'I'd love to stay with you.')
I don't play tennis, but I used to. 'Are you going to Scotland this summer?' 'We hope to.'

Complete the sentences, using the words in the box with to.

	I'd like	It's starting	I'm trying ✓	l used	she didn't want	Sorry, I forgot	They hope
•	'Can't yo	u go faster?'	I'm trying	to.			
1	'Are Cath	ny and Dave ge	etting married	this year?	,		
2	I asked her to dance, but						
3	I've never learnt to ski, but						
4	I don't speak German very well now, but						
5	'Did you	remember to	phone Liz?'				
6	'Is it rain	ing?'					

In conversation, people may leave out 'small words' (for example pronouns, articles, auxiliary verbs) at the beginnings of sentences.

Must go now. Can't help you, sorry. Don't know. Car's not going well.

Seen Billy? (= 'Have you seen Billy?') Nobody here. (= 'There's nobody here.')

3 Write the complete sentences.

1	Couldn't understand what he wanted from me.
	Doesn't know what she's doing.
3	Bus is late again.
4	Speak French?
5	Haven't seen them.
	Don't think so

[→] For sentences where we leave out that, see pages 257 and 264.

so am I; nor do I etc

To say that A is/does the same as B, we can use so + be or auxiliary verb (have, can etc) + subject (note the word order).
'I'm hungry.' So am I.' (NOT 'So I am:') Sue's stopped her lessons, and so has George.
If there is no auxiliary verb to repeat, we use do/does/did.
'My brother works in the theatre.' So does my cousin.'
Complete the sentences, using so. 'My job's boring.' (+ mine)
In negative sentences we use neither or nor + auxiliary verb + subject.
'I'm not working today.' Neither am I.' 'Mary can't drive.' Nor can Pat.'
Bill doesn't like the boss, and neither does Jan.
Max didn't play very well, and (the others) 1 The soup wasn't very good, and (the meat) 2 'Rob hasn't phoned yet.' (Gemma) 3 'This dictionary doesn't show pronunciation.' (this one) 4 'I can't cook.' (I) 5 His parents won't help him, and (his friends) We can use short sentences (subject + auxiliary verb) to say that A is not the same as B. "I'm not going to school today.' I am.' Some people don't like modern art, but I do. "I like this music.' I don't.' The food was cheap, but the drinks weren't.
Complete the sentences with expressions from the box, to say that things are not the same.
her second one her sister my car my father ✓ our dog the back door the green ones ✓ the train
 'My father works too hard.''My father doesn't.' 'The red apples aren't very sweet.''The green ones are.' 'My car doesn't use a lot of petrol.' 'Mary has passed all her exams.' 'Yes, but Most dogs can swim, but 'The bus takes a long time to get to London.' The front door wasn't open, but 'Her first book didn't sell very well.'

4 Look at the table and write sentences.

	LIKES DANCING	HAS BEEN TO AMERICA	PLAYS TENNIS	CAN SKI	IS TALL	LAUGHS A LOT
ERIC	/	×	1	1	Х	1
JULIE	/	1	×	х	×	1
PAUL	х	×	×	1	×	х
DAN	/	1	1	1	1	1
DENISE	Х	1	×	×	1	×
RACHEL	/	1	×	×	1	1

	(Eric, Dan, dancing) Eric likes dancing, and so does Dan.
	(Julie, Rachel, ski) Julie can't ski, and nor can Rachel.
•	(Julie, Denise, laugh) Julie laughs a lot, but Denise doesn't.
•	(Eric, Julie, America) Eric hasn't been to America, but Julie has.
	(Eric, Dan, tennis)
	(Julie, Denise, tall)
3	(Denise, Paul, laugh)
	(Dan, Rachel, ski)
	(Julie, Denise, America)
	(Eric, Paul, tall)
7	(Julie, Dan, tennis)
	(Paul, Rachel, dancing)

S Here are some facts about Mike and Katy. Are you the same as them, or different? Write your answers, using So am I, Neither/Nor do I, I have, I can't etc.

••	inte your answers, using 30 anns, werther, wor do i, i have, i can tete.	
	Katy has got blue eyes. So have I. OR I haven't.	Do you find po
	Mike doesn't like fish. 1 do. OR Nor do 1.	Do you find pointeresting?
1	Katy is interested in politics.	well, Is neither to I!
2	Mike has been to Texas.	neither
3	Katy can sing.	La I!
4	Mike likes old music.	
5	Katy speaks French.	you have
6	Katy isn't very tall.	you have beautiful eyes
7	Mike hasn't got much hair.	
R	Katy can't drink milk	I V

We can also use too or not either to say that A is/does the same as B.

'I'm hungry.' 'I am too.' Lucy hasn't written, and Carol hasn't either.

In informal conversation we often say *Me too* instead of *So do I, I do too* etc.

"I've got a headache." 'Me too." (NOT 'l also.')

spoken grammar: more practice

	nort answers. Complete the conversations.
•	'Do you like swimming?' 'Yes, 1 do.'
1	'Was Emma at home when you went to see her?' 'No,'
2	'Does Tom play a musical instrument?' 'Yes,'
3	'Would your sister like some coffee or tea?' 'No thanks,
4	'The plane arrives at 6.45, I think.' 'No,
5	'Can you work next Saturday?' 'Yes,'
6	'Have you written to Felicia?' 'No,
7	'John wants to be a doctor.' 'No,'
8	'Did Carol phone this morning?' 'Yes,'
9	'Will the children be in this evening?' 'No,'
10	'Do you understand what I'm saying?' 'Yes,'
	eply questions. Complete the conversations with reply questions and expressions om the box. (Different answers are possible.) Congratulations! Good luck! I am sorry. I don't believe it! Say 'hello' to him for me. That's interesting. That's terrible. That's a surprise. What a nuisance! What a pity!
1 2	'I didn't get that job that I wanted.' 'Didn't you? I am sorry.' 'I'm seeing James on Tuesday.' 'I've got excellent results in my exams.'
3	'Scotland has declared its independence.'
4	'I've got an important interview tomorrow.'
5	'Light takes four years to travel here from the nearest star.'
6	'Anna and Peter are getting divorced.'
7	'My car has been stolen'
8	'Ifeelill'
9	'Tim has decided to become a ballet dancer.'
	'I can't come to your party.'
- 10	reality come to your party.
3 So	o am I etc. Complete the sentences with So am I, Nor/Neither do I, etc.
	Arthur has gone home, and (+ Jane)
	Oliver can't run very well and (Susan) weither can Susan.
1	Dogs don't eat tomatoes, and (cats)
2	The 3.45 train hasn't arrived yet, and (the 3.15)
3	'I wasn't happy at school.'(I)
4	Ken didn't come to the lesson, and (Sally)
5	Roger likes travelling, and (his brother)
6	The meat is cold, and (the potatoes)
7	Natasha doesn't speak Russian, and (her brother)
8	Our friends were late, and (+ we)
9	'We don't know why Teresa is unhappy.' (her parents)
10	1'll try to help Robert.' (+ 1)

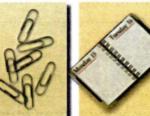
4	Leaving out words. Make these sentences more natural by crossing out unnecessary words.
	Leaving out words: Make these sentences more natural by crossing out unnecessary words.

- You said you weren't crying, but you were crying.
- 1 She says I don't love her, but I do love her.
- 2 'You should phone Aunt Lucy.' 'I have phoned Aunt Lucy.'
- 3 Henry thought that he would get rich fast, but I don't think he will get rich fast.
- 4 'Help me.' 'I'm trying to help you.'
- 5 'Will you forget me?' 'Of course I won't forget you.'
- 6 Jasper can sing, but I can't sing.
- 7 Andrew has asked me to go out with him, but I don't want to go out with him.
- 8 She's finished breakfast, but I haven't finished breakfast.
- 9 'You broke that window.' 'No, I didn't break that window.'
- 10 I haven't been to America yet, but I hope to go to America soon.

	eaving out words. Write the complete sentence	
•	Been shopping? Have you been shopping?	
	Car won't start. The car won't start.	
1	Don't know why.	
2	Seen my mother today?	
3		
4	Sorry, can't come in here.	
5	Want some help?	
6	Know what I think?	
7	Can't understand a word.	
8	House is cold.	
9	Raining again	
10		***************************************
6 GI	RAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things from the offic	e. What would you ask if you were not sure
01	the names of the things in the pictures?	
	It's a stapler, isn't it?	4
1	They're	5















2 diary 3 hole-punch 4 address book 5 rulers stapler 1 paper clips

Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find some simple sentences with the expressions in the box. Write some of them.

"and so is" "and so are" "and so has" "and so have" "and so does" "and so do" "and neither is" "and neither are" "and neither has" "and neither have" "and neither does" "and neither do"	
$\cdots \cdots $	

spoken grammar: revision test

	orrect (✓) or not (✗)?		
•	Daniela looks like you, looksn't she?	6	Is today the 31st, is it?
	You're Scottish, aren't you?	7	Peter and Annie are getting married, aren't
1	We didn't give you our address, did we?		they?
2	You can't speak Spanish, do you?	8	Maggie wasn't here yesterday, was she?
3			I'm playing tomorrow, amn't I?
4			You haven't seen Pat anywhere, did you?
5			,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
2 Pi	ut in the question tags.		
	lt's a nice day, isn't it?	8	Dinner's ready,
1	You can play the piano,		It's not raining,
. 2	Lily will be here tomorrow,		You won't be late,
3	You haven't got the keys,		Philip and Rachel have got married,
4	Stephen likes fishing,		The papers haven't arrived,
5	There wasn't much rain in the night,		I'm late,
-	Petra went back home,		All the trains stop at Oxford,
6			
7	George doesn't play golf,	13	That letter didn't arrive,
3 C	hange these questions into affirmative (+) or	nega	itive (=) statements with question tags.
•	Do you live in Dublin? + You live in Dublin,		
•	Do you know my friend Adrian? You don't k	enon	my friend Adrian, do you?
1	Have they gone home? They haven't		
2	Do we need tickets? +		
3	Would you like some more coffee? +		
4	Was Mike away yesterday? +		
5	Did Angela tell you her news?		
6	Can Sophie play the piano?		
7	Will there be room for everybody?		
8	Does your father eat meat?		
	Do these books belong to the library?		
	Are you tired? +		
10	Ale you tiled: 🕶		
	omplete the conversations with short answers		
	'Do you play baseball?''Yes, I do.'		
1	'Was the exam difficult?' 'No,		
2	'Would your little boy like to watch TV?' 'No, thanks	,	'
3	'The lesson starts at 10.00.' 'No,		
4	'Did the post come this morning?' 'Yes,		
5	'Will it rain today?' 'No,		'
Co	omplete the conversations with reply question	ıs.	
•	'I've just passed my exam.' 'Have you?		. Congratulations!'
3	'Joe and Suzy moved to London in March.' '		
2	'I won't be here next week.' '		. Then come and see us the week after.'
3	'I need some help.' '		
4	'The dog has brought a dead rat into the house.' '		
	it out, please?'		,,,
5	'You didn't lock the door last night.' '		That was stupid of me.'

appendix 1 common irregular verbs

(These are the most common irregular verbs. For a complete list, see a good dictionary.)

INFINITIVE	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE	INFINITIVE	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE
be	was/were	been	let	let	let
become	became	become	lie	lay	lain
begin	began	begun	lose	lost	lost
break	broke	broken	make	made	made
bring	brought	brought	mean	meant	meant
build	built	built	meet	met	met
buy	bought	bought	pay	paid	paid
catch	caught	caught	put	put	put
choose	chose	chosen	read /ri:d/	read/red/	read /red/
come	came	come	ride	rode	ridden
cost	cost	cost	run	ran	run
cut	cut	cut	say	said	said
do	did	done	see	saw	seen
draw	drew	drawn	sell	sold	sold
dream	dreamt/dreamed	dreamt/dreamed	send	sent	sent
drink	drank	drunk	show	showed	shown
drive	drove	driven	shut	shut	shut
eat	ate	eaten	sing	sang	sung
fall	fell	fallen	sit	sat	sat
feel	felt	felt	sleep	slept	slept
fight	fought	fought	speak	spoke	spoken
find	found	found	spell	spelt	spelt
fly	flew	flown	spend	spent	spent
forget	forgot	forgotten	stand	stood	stood
get	got	got	steal	stole	stolen
give	gave	given	swim	swam	swum
go	went	gone/been	take	took	taken
have	had	had	teach	taught	taught
hear	heard	heard	tell	told	told
hit	hit	hit	think	thought	thought
hold	held	held	throw	threw	thrown
keep	kept	kept	understand	understood	understood
know	knew	known	wake	woke	woken
lead	led	led	wear	wore	worn
learn		1	win	won	won
	learnt/learned	learnt/learned	VV111	WOII	WOII
leave	learnt/learned	left	write	wrote	written

appendix 2 active and passive verb forms

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE: TENSE OF BE + PAST PARTICIPLE	
INFINITIVE	(to) watch	(to) write	(to) be watched	(to) be written
-ING FORM	watching	writing	being watched	being written
SIMPLE PRESENT	l watch	I write	l am watched	It is written
PRESENT PROGRESSIVE	l am watching	I am writing	I am being watched	It is being written
SIMPLE PAST	l watched	l wrote	I was watched	It was written
PAST PROGRESSIVE	I was watching	I was writing	I was being watched	It was being written
PRESENT PERFECT	I have watched	I have written	I have been watched	It has been written
PAST PERFECT	I had watched	I had written	I had been watched	It had been written
WILL FUTURE	I will watch	I will write	I will be watched	It will be written
GOING TO FUTURE	l am going to watch	l am going to write	l am going to be watched	It is going to be written
MODAL VERBS	l can watch	I can write	I can be watched	It can be written
	l must watch	I must write	I must be watched	It must be written
	I should watch	I should write	I should be watched	It should be written
	etc	etc	etc	etc

[→] For the use of the different tenses, see Sections 2-5.

appendix 3 capital letters (A, B, C etc)

We use CAPITAL LETTERS to begin the names of **people**, **places**, **nationalities**, **languages**, **days**, **months** and **holidays**.

Abraham Lincoln

New York

American

Arabic

Thursday

September

Christmas

We also use CAPITAL LETTERS for the most important words in the titles of books, films etc.

War and Peace

Gone with the Wind

And we use a CAPITAL LETTER for the **first word in a sentence**, and for the pronoun *I*. Yesterday I went for a long bike ride.

[→] For the use of passives, see Section 7.

[→] For the spelling of -ing forms, see page 23.

[→] For the spelling of third-person present forms (writes, watches, sits, goes etc), see page 16.

appendix 4 contractions

Contractions like *he's*, *is n't* show the pronunciation of **informal speech**.

They are common and correct in **informal writing** (for example, friendly letters), but are unusual in formal writing.

AFFIRMATIVE (+) CONTRACTIONS: PRONOUN + 'M, 'RE, 'S, 'VE, 'D, 'LL	NEGATIVE () CONTRACTIONS: BE, HAVE OR OTHER AUXILIARY + N'T	
I am → I'm we are → we're she is → she's he has → he's I have → I've you had → you'd you would → you'd	are not → aren't is not → isn't have not → haven't has not → has n't had not → hadn't do not → don't does not → doesn't	shall not → shan't would not → wouldn't should not → shouldn't cannot → can't could not → couldn't might not → mightn't must not → must n't
they will → they'll	did not → didn't will not → won't	need not → need <mark>n't</mark>

- With be, two negative forms are common: you're not / you are n't, she 's not / she is n't, etc. With have, had, will and would, the forms with n't are more common: we usually say I have n't, I had n't etc, NOT I've not, I'd not etc.
- There is no contraction amn't, BUT am not → aren't in questions.
 I'm late, aren't!? (BUT I'm not late, NOT laren't late.)
- The contraction 's (= is or has) can be written after pronouns, nouns, question words, here and there.
 It's late. Your mother 's gone home. Mary 's got a headache.
 How's Joe these days? Here's your money. There's the telephone.
- We don't use affirmative (+) contractions at the ends of sentences.
 You're early.' 'Yes, we are.' (NOT Yes, we're.)
 I think she's gone home.' 'Yes, I think she has.' (NOT ... I think she's.)
- Negative (■) contractions are possible at the ends of sentences.
 'It's raining.' 'No, it is n't.'
- Don't confuse it's (= it is/has) with its (possessive see page 188).
 The cat isn't hungry. It's only eaten half of its food.
- Don't confuse who 's (= who is/has) with whose.
 Who 's the woman in the green coat? Whose car is that?
- In very informal speech, *going to, want to* and *got to* are often pronounced like *gonna, wanna* and *gotta*. They are sometimes written like this, especially in American English.





appendix 5 punctuation

This section summarises the most important rules of punctuation.

the basic sentence

We don't put commas (,,,) between the basic parts of a sentence (subject and verb, verb and object etc).

My brother has found a really good job.

(NOT My brother has found a really good job.

OR My brother has found a really good job.

before the basic sentence

If we put long adverbial expressions (saying when, where etc) before the basic sentence, we often use a comma (,). Compare:

Last year he followed a business studies course in Edinburgh.

Between January 2010 and March 2011, he followed a business studies course in Edinburgh.

after the basic sentence

We don't usually use commas when adverbial expressions come after the basic sentence.

He followed a business studies course in Edinburgh between January 2010 and March 2011.

inside the basic sentence

When adverbial expressions come **between** parts of the basic sentence, we usually put commas before and after them.

She has, in the six months since she started her music studies, made remarkable progress.

noun phrases

We don't usually separate a noun from the adjectives or other expressions that go with it.

those very nice people (NOT those very nice, people)

those very nice people in the flat downstairs (NOT those very nice people, in the flat downstairs)

those very nice people who invited us to their party

(NOT those very nice people, who invited us to their party)

sentences with conjunctions

We often put **commas** in sentences with conjunctions, especially in longer sentences. (See page 219.) Compare: *Everything will be different when Mr Harris leaves*.

Everything will be very different after April next year, when Mr Harris leaves.

We usually use a comma if we start with the conjunction.

When Mr Harris leaves, everything will be different.

indirect speech

We don't put commas after verbs of saying, thinking etc in indirect speech.

Jamie says that he has a problem. (NOT Jamie says, that ...)

I don't **know what** I was going to tell the police. (NOT I don't know, what ...)

We don't put question marks (?) in indirect questions.

I asked why he was late. (NOT lasked why he was late?)

a useful rule: no comma before that

We don't put commas before that (conjunction or relative pronoun).

I know that she married a man that worked for her father.

between separate sentences

Between separate sentences (with no conjunction), we use a full stop (.) or a semi-colon (;), but **not a comma**. Compare.

Robert phoned, and he asked to speak to the manager. (comma and conjunction)

Robert phoned. He asked to speak to the manager.

OR Robert phoned; he asked to speak to the manager.

BUT NOT Robert phoned, he asked to speak to the manager.

lists

We use commas to separate the different things in a list (but not before and).

She gave presents to her brothers, her sister, her sister's husband, her secretary and all of her colleagues.

abbreviations (short forms of words)

We use full stops after some abbreviations, like e.g. (meaning 'for example'). Mr and Mrs have full stops in American English, but not usually in British English.

Some British cities have beautiful cathedrals, e.g. Salisbury.

Everybody liked Mr Carter.

quotation marks ('...' or "...")

Quotation marks are used to show direct speech (somebody's actual words).

His father said, 'Do what you want.' (NOT < Do what you want > OR - Do want your want.)

figures

We use commas after thousands and millions, and full stops in decimal fractions.

€ 5,500,000 (='five million, five hundred thousand euros')

€ 5.5m (= 'five and a half million euros')

apostrophes (')

For apostrophes in contractions (e.g. *isn't*), see Appendix 4. For apostrophes in possessives (e.g. *John's*), see page 201.

appendix 6 word order

This section summarises the most important rules of word order that you can find in other parts of the book.

sentences

The basic word order of English sentences is SUBJECT - VERB - OBJECT.

I play the piano. (NOT I the piano play.)

questions

In questions we usually put an auxiliary verb before the subject.

Did you see the news last night? (NOT Saw you the news ...?) Can you swim?

For more details, see Section 8, pages 103-111.

This does not usually happen with indirect questions.

She asked me where I lived. (NOT She asked me where did I live.)

For more details, see page 266.

adjectives

Adjectives usually go before, not after, nouns.

an interesting film (NOT a film interesting)

Adjectives can go after be, seem and similar verbs.

I think she is tired.

For more details, see Section 15, pages 209-211.

adverbs

Different adverbs can go in different places in a sentence.

Yesterday I got up at 6.00.

I've just seen a rabbit.

You're driving very slowly.

They do not usually go between the verb and the object.

I bought a bike yesterday. (NOT I bought yesterday a bike:)

She speaks **Spanish very well**. (**NOT** She speaks very well Spanish.)

For more details, see Section 15, pages 212-215.

prepositions

Prepositions often go at the ends of questions, especially in spoken English.

Who did you go with?

What did you do that **for**?

For more details, see Section 8, page 111.

Prepositions can also go at the ends of relative clauses, especially in spoken English.

There's the man that I told you about.

The train that I usually travel on wasn't running.

For more details, see Section 19, page 258.

phrasal verbs

The objects of phrasal verbs (but not prepositional verbs) can often go between the two parts of the verb.

I turned the light out. (OR I turned out the light.)

Pronoun objects always go between the two parts of a phrasal verb.

I turned it out. (NOT I turned out it.)

For more details, see Section 10, pages 142–143.

ago

Ago follows an expression of time.

We arrived two hours ago. (NOT ... ago two hours)

enough

Enough usually goes before nouns but after adjectives and adverbs.

Have you got enough soup? (NOT ... soup enough?)

Is the soup **hot enough**? (**NOT** ... enough hot?) I didn't get up early enough.

appendix 7 expressions with prepositions

prepositions after verbs, adjectives and nouns

We use prepositions (at, in etc) after some verbs, adjectives and nouns. This is a list of the most common examples.

afraid of

She's afraid of dogs.

agree with

I don't agree with you.

angry about something

We're all angry about the new working hours.

angry with somebody

Mary's very angry with you.

arrive at/in a place

I usually **arrive at** school at 8.30. What time do we **arrive** in London?

ask for

If you want anything, just ask for it.

bad at

I'm bad at games.

believe in (= 'believe that something is real')

Do you believe in ghosts?

belong to

This book belongs to me.

depend on

We may arrive late this evening. It **depends on** the

traffic.

different from/to

You're different from (OR to) your sister.

difficulty in doing something

I have a lot of difficulty in understanding her.

discuss something with somebody

We discussed our plans with the manager.

divide into

I divided the cake into four parts.

dream about something or somebody;

dream of doing something

I often dream about horses.

When I was young, I dreamt of becoming a pilot.

dressed in

She was dressed completely in black.

example of

Can you show me an **example of** your work?

explain something to somebody

Can you explain this word to me?

get into/out of a car;

get on(to)/off a bus, train, plane, ship

I picked up my case and got into the taxi.

She got off the bus at the wrong stop.

get to a place

How do you get to Southport from here?

good at

He's **good** at tennis.

happen to

What's happened to Alice? She's an hour late.

the idea of doing something

We had the idea of starting a small business.

interested in

Are you interested in animals?

kind to

They have always been very kind to me.

laugh at

Please don't laugh at my French pronunciation.

listen to

I like to listen to music while I'm working.

look after children etc

Can you look after the children for half an hour?

look at

Look at that wonderful old car!

look for (= 'try to find')

'What are you looking for?' 'My keys.'

married to

He's married to Jane Gordon, the novelist.

nice to

You weren't very nice to my mother.

pay somebody for something; pay a bill

Have you paid John for the tickets?

I forgot to pay the electricity bill.

pleased with

We are very pleased with his work.

polite to

It's best to be polite to policemen.

reason for

What was the **reason for** his change of plans?

smile at

In this job you have to smile at people all day.

talk about

Were you talking about me?

thank somebody for

Thank you for waiting.

think about/of

I **think about** you all the time. We're **thinking of** going to America.

translate into/from

I've got to **translate** this letter **from** French **into** German.

typical of

She went out without saying 'Thank you'. That's just typical of her.

wait for

I waited for her for half an hour, and then went home.

write to

We write to each other every week. (BUT We phone each other ... – no preposition)

wrong with

What's wrong with the car?

- → For more about prepositions, see Section 21.
- → For more about prepositions with verbs, see page 141.

common expressions beginning with prepositions

at a partyat the cinemaat the theatreat the topat the bottomat the side

at the beginning at the end of something in the end (= 'finally', 'after a long time')

by car/bus/train etc (BUT on foot)

a book by Dickens an opera by Mozart

for example

in a raincoat/dress/hat

in the rain/snow

in the sky in the world

in a picture

in the middle

in a loud/quiet voice

write in pen/pencil

in my opinion

in time (= 'not late') on time (= 'at just the right time; not late or early')

on the phone on the radio on TV

on page 22

For expressions without articles like in hospital, at university, see page 162.

appendix 8 word problems

This section tells you about some words that are difficult to use correctly. We explain some other word problems in other sections of the book; see the Index.

after We don't usually say and after, X happened. We prefer afterwards or after that.

We had a pizza, and afterwards / after that we went skating. (NOT ... and after, we went ...)

ago Ago goes after a time expression. Compare ago with for and since (see page 65).

It's August 1st. I came here three months ago. I've lived here for three months, since May.

another is one word.

Would you like another glass? (NOT ... an other glass.)

as and like (similarity) To say that things are similar, we normally use like. But before subject + verb, we prefer as in a formal style.

Your sister looks like you. Pronounce it like I do (informal) / as I do (formal).

as, not like (jobs) To talk about the jobs that people or things do, use as, not like.

He's working as a waiter. (NOT He's working like a waiter.) I used my shoe as a hammer.

born We say that somebody is/was born (passive).

I was born in London. Thousands of deaf children are born every year.

do and make. Common expressions with do and make:

do work, a job, shopping, washing, ironing, business; **do** something, nothing, anything, everything **make** a suggestion, a decision, a phone call, a noise, a journey, a mistake, money, a bed, a fire, love

do + ing Common expressions:

do the shopping; do some (a lot of / a bit of) walking, swimming, reading, climbing, sailing, skiing

else We use else to mean other after something, anything, somebody, nobody etc.

Something else to drink? **Nobody else** cooks like you.

ever is used mostly in questions, or with present perfect + superlative.

Do you **ever** play golf? Have you **ever** been to Ireland?

This is the best film I've **ever** seen. She says he's the nicest boy she's **ever** met.

explain is not used with two objects (see page 144).

Can you explain this word to me? (NOT Can you explain me this word?)

forget see remember.

hear and listen to We can hear something without trying. When we listen to something, we want to hear it.

Suddenly I heard a noise in the garden.

Are you listening to me? (NOT ... listening me?)

We often use can with hear.

I **could hear** Mary and John talking in the kitchen.

home We leave out to before home.

Well, goodnight, I'm going home. (BUT Is anybody at home?)

hope We often use so and not after hope.

'Is David coming tomorrow?' 'I hope so.' 'Do you think it will rain?' 'I hope not.'

if and when We use if for things that may happen, and when for things that will happen.

If I live to be 100 ... If it rains today ... When I die ... When it gets dark ...

just has several meanings: 1) *right now* 2) *a short time ago* (with present perfect, see page 64)

3) exactly 4) really 5) only

1) I'll phone you later. We're just having lunch. 2) Aunt Daphne has just arrived. 3) It's just four o'clock.

4) I just love your dress. 5) 'Put those chocolates down!' 'I was just looking at them, Mum.'

#t and make If I let you do something, I say that you can do it. If I make you do it, I say that you must.

After let and make, we use object + infinitive without to.

Her parents let her go to the party. But they made her come home at midnight.

```
remember and forget + infinitive (with to) look towards the future: things that one has to do.
remember and forget + ing form look back to the past: things that one has done.
   I must remember to buy bread.
                                      She always forgets to close the door.
   I remember seeing the Queen when I was six.
                                                  I'll never forget meeting you.
same We normally use the with same; and we say the same as ... (NOT the same like ...).
   We had the same idea. (NOT ... a same idea OR ... same idea)
                                                                  Her shoes are the same as mine.
see and hear + object + infinitive (without to)/...ing If you see/hear somebody do something, you see/hear
a complete action. If you see/hear somebody doing something, they are in the middle of doing it.
   I saw her go into John's house.
                                   I heard her play Beethoven's violin concerto on the radio.
   I looked up and saw Leo talking to Zoe.
                                              I walked past Anna's room and heard her crying.
see, look and watch. We can see something without trying. When we look at something, we want to see it.
   I saw Bill in the supermarket yesterday. Look at that bird! (NOT Look that bird!)
We often use can with see.
   On the left of the photo you can see my grandmother.
We watch things that move, change or happen.
   We watch TV most evenings.
                                   Did you watch the football match?
   The police are watching him to see where he goes.
so and such We use so + adjective without a noun, and such when there is a noun.
   so kind
                         such kind people
                                              such a big mistake
                                                                      such a fool
               so big
still, yet and already We use still to say that something is continuing; yet to ask if it has happened
(or to say it hasn't); already to say it has happened earlier than we expected.
                                 'Has the postman come yet?' 'No, not yet.'
   Granny's still on the phone.
   I've already spent the week's money, and it's only Tuesday.
than, as and that Use than after comparatives (see page 223); as in the structure as ... as (see page 228);
that after say, think etc and as a relative pronoun (see page 256).
   She's taller than me.
                           It's as cold as ice.
                                                The boss says that you're right.
   Who's the woman that just came in?
think We often use so after think. Don't use an infinitive after think.
   'Are you coming to the party?' 'I think so.'
                                                'Is it raining?' 'I don't think so.'
   I'm thinking of going to America. (NOT I'm thinking to go ...)
try After try we can use an infinitive (with to) or an -ing form. We prefer an infinitive when we are talking
about trying difficult things.
                                          'It's really hot in here.' Try opening a window.'
   Try to stop smoking – it's bad for you.
very and too Too means 'more than we want'; very doesn't.
   'It's very warm today.' 'Yes, a bit too warm for me.' 'Oh, it's OK for me.'
wait We often use wait for with object + infinitive (with to).
   I'm waiting for the postman to come.
which? and what? We prefer which when we are choosing between a small number of things, and what
when there is a wider choice.
   'I'd like a pair of those shoes.' 'Which ones - the blue or the red? And what size?'
whom In a very formal style, we use whom as an object in questions and relative clauses.
   Whom did they elect?
                           With whom did she go?
                                                        She hated the man for whom she worked.
In an informal style, who is more normal in questions, and that (or nothing) in relatives.
   Who did they elect? Who did she go with? She hated the man (that) she worked for.
why and because Why asks for a reason. Because gives a reason.
   'Why are you late?' 'Because I missed the train.'
```

answer key

page 2

- 1 1 are 2 is 3 are 4 am 5 are 6 is 7 am
- 2 1 We're all tired. 2 They're here. 3 I'm sorry.
 - 4 My name's Peter. 5 You're early.
 - 6 The shop's closed. 7 She's at home.
- 3 1 Is Marie from Paris? 2 Are we very late?
 - 3 Is John in bed? 4 Is the boss here?
 - 5 Is your car fast? 6 Is Luke here?
 - 7 Are we all ready? 8 Am I early?
 - 9 Are they at home? 10 Are you happy?
 - 11 Is Joe married? 12 Is this your house?
 - 13 Is that Jane?
- 4 1 What's 2 Where are 3 Who's 4 When are
 - 5 Why are 6 How's 7 Where's 8 Who are
 - 9 How are 10 When's

page 3

- 5 1 she's not ill. / she isn't ill.
 - 2 they're not in London. / they aren't in London.
 - 3 you're not too tall. / you aren't too tall.
 - 4 we're not very late. / we aren't very late.
 - 5 it's not hot. / it isn't hot.
 - 6 I'm not at university.
 - 7 he's not very nice. / he isn't very nice.
 - 8 she's not in her office. / she isn't in her office.
 - 9 it's not mine. / it isn't mine.
 - 10 it's not very fast. / it isn't very fast.
- 6 1 He is thirsty. 2 She is cold. 3 They are hot.4 It is cold.
- 7 1 right. 2 size 3 colour 4 interested
 - 5 wrong 6 thirsty. 7 hot 8 cold
 - 9 old 10 hungry.

page 4

- 1 1 were; was 2 was; were 3 were
 - 4 was; were 5 was; were 6 were; was
 - 7 was: was 8 were: was

- 2 1 Was the party good?
 - 2 Were the people interesting?
 - 3 Was your father a teacher?
 - 4 Was everybody late?
 - 5 When was your driving test?
 - 6 Where were you on Tuesday?
 - 7 Why were all the windows open?
 - 8 Was John's brother at school with you?
- 3 1 weren't late. 2 wasn't a teacher.
 - 3 wasn't with Anna 4 weren't well
 - 5 weren't in England 6 wasn't good
 - 7 weren't in their hotel 8 wasn't warm

page 5

- It will be hot in Rio. It will be warm in Paris.
 It will be cold in London. It will be very cold in Moscow.
- 2 1 I won't be sorry.
 - 2 It will be hot.
 - 3 We will be at home.
 - 4 The shops won't be closed.
 - 5 He won't be in Scotland.
 - 6 Lisa won't be at school.
- 3 1 When will your father be in England?
 - 2 Will Ann be at the party with John?
 - 3 Will everybody be here at 8.00?
 - 4 Will the train be late again?
 - 5 When will Joe and Mary be in the office?
 - 6 Will the weather be good tomorrow?
 - 7 Where will you be on Tuesday?

- 1 Is there a doctor here?
 - 2 Are there any trains to London from this station?
 - 3 Was there a special price for students?
 - 4 Were there any mistakes in my letter?
 - 5 Is there much money in your bank account?
 - 6 How many students are there in your class?
 - 7 Were there many children at the swimming pool?
 - 8 How many people were there at the party?

page 7

- 1 there will be sun 2 there will be two
 3 there will be ten people 4 there will be (enough) food 5 There will be fish
 6 There will be (a new) hospital 7 There will be trouble 8 There will be (a lot of) flowers
- There will not be a meeting tomorrow.
 There will not be any trains on Sunday.
 There will not be any buses at 4 o'clock in the morning.
 If you get up late tomorrow, there will not be any breakfast.
 There will not be any children at the party.
 There will not be a French lesson on Monday evening.
 There will not be time to have lunch today.
- 3 1 Will there be trains? 2 Will there be computers? 3 Will there be good food? 4 Will there be different countries? 5 Will there be governments? 6 Will there be a lot of problems?

page 8

- 1 1 My father 2 we all 3 have 4 has 5 Paul 6 have 7 has 8 Susie and Mick
- 1 have a garden. 2 Do they have any children?
 3 Does Peter have a cold? 4 My aunt doesn't have a dog. 5 Does Monica have any brothers or sisters? 6 I don't have enough money.
 7 Does Laura have a boyfriend? 8 Why do you have two cars?

page 9

- 1 1 She didn't have a computer. 2 She had very fair hair. 3 She didn't have lots of friends.
 - 4 She didn't have many nice clothes.
 - 5 Did she have her own room?
- 3 1 He will have a job.
 - 2 He won't have a bicycle.
 - 3 He will have a car.
 - 4 Will he have a house?
 - 5 Will he have a girlfriend?
 - 6 He won't have old clothes.
 - 7 He will have a suit.
 - 8 Will he have a guitar?

page 10

- 1 1 had dinner 2 has coffee
 - 3 have a baby 4 have a shower
 - 5 have toast 6 have a game
- 2 1 do you have lunch 2 She didn't have a good trip. 3 didn't have a shower. 4 Did you have a good flight? 5 'Did you have a good game?'
 6 I don't have coffee

page 11

- He's got two brothers.
 He hasn't got a car.
 He's got three dogs.
 He's got a dictionary.
 He hasn't got long hair.
 He hasn't got any sisters.
- 3 1 Have they got a big garden? 2 Has Ann got a good job? 3 Has Bill got a big car? 4 Have they got a plane? 5 Have they got any horses?

- 1 1 They weren't ready. 2 We're all here.
 - 3 I'm not a student. 4 Where's your house?
 - 5 She won't be late. 6 You've got my keys.
 - 7 I haven't got much time. 8 Franz doesn't live here.
- 2 1 Tom is late. 2 I will not have time.
 - 3 Anna is hungry. 4 He does not have a car.
 - 5 She has got two sisters. 6 She is right.
 - 7 Emma has got beautiful eyes. 8 There is a letter for you.
- 1 Is he from Beijing? No, he's not / he isn't from Beijing. 2 Was he in bed? No, he wasn't in bed. 3 Will we be very late? No, we won't be very late. 4 Is it very big? No, it's not / it isn't very big. 5 Were they at university? No, they weren't at university. 6 Was she in her office? No, she wasn't in her office. 7 Will they have coffee? No, they won't have coffee. 8 Are they happy? No, they're not / they aren't happy.
- 4 1 do 2 Does 3 does 4 Do 5 do 6 does 7 do 8 Does
- 5 1 there will be 2 Is there 3 There was
 - 4 are there 5 there weren't
 - 6 Were there 7 There are 8 There won't be
 - 9 Was there 10 Will there be

page 13

- 7 1 is 2 is 3 are 4 has 5 was 6 were not 7 did not have 8 was 9 is 10 has 11 has 12 is 13 is 14 is 15 has 16 does not have 17 has 18 is 19 has 20 has
- 8 1 true 2 false 3 true 4 true 5 false 6 true 7 false 8 false 9 false 10 true

page 14

- 1 1 Where 2 I 3 Are 4 has 5 is 6 am 7 won't 8 am 9 is 10 is 11 have 12 Does 13 Have 14 Will you be 15 I'm not 16 How 17 have 18 will be 19 have 20 are
- 2 1 \(\times, \times, \sqrt{} \) \(\times, \times, \sqrt{} \sqrt{} \) 2 \(\times, \
- 3 1 Is there a taxi outside? 2 Has Chris got a headache? 3 Joe doesn't have a car.
 - 4 Did Ann have a meeting yesterday?
 - 5 I didn't have coffee for breakfast.
 - 6 Will there be an English lesson tomorrow?
 - 7 I'm not hungry. 8 Petra hasn't got a new car.
 - 9 Did she have a nice time at the party?
 - 10 Has the house got a big garden?
- 4 1 Is Rosemary from London? 2 Will we be early? 3 Was Sarah at home? 4 Does Karim have / Has Karim got a cold? 5 Is your car fast? 6 Will the manager be in America? 7 Were Tim and Anna students? 8 What time will you have lunch today? 9 Will you be here tomorrow? 10 Were those people American?

page 16

- + -s: cooks, drinks, lives, reads, runs, smokes, stands, starts, writes + -es: fetches, fixes, misses, pushes, touches, watches, wishes
- + -s: enjoys, plays, stays, tries
 -v > -IES: copies, fries, marries, studies
- 1 I live in that house. 2 Kim works in a bank.
 3 Claire plays the violin very badly. 4 Those children come from Scotland. 5 You look very young.

4 1 The boss 2 I 3 Bread 4 Andy 5 Sophy and Ian 6 You 7 Our cat 8 That child 9 All those buses 10 My father

page 17

- 1 1 play 2 speaks 3 ask 4 goes 5 make 6 forget 7 listen 8 lives 9 watch 10 get
- 2 1 thinks; knows 2 studies 3 tries 4 wear 5 washes 6 work 7 says 8 sits 9 watches 10 want

page 18

- 1 1 You do not speak very good Chinese.
 - 2 Bill / He does not play the guitar very well.
 - 3 We do not agree about holidays.
 - 4 George and Andrew do not live near me.
 - 5 My father / He does not write poetry.
 - 6 Barbara / She does not live in London.
 - 7 Henry / He does not like parties.
- 2 1 doesn't stop at Cardiff. 2 I don't like pop music. 3 He / Peter doesn't remember faces very well. 4 We don't know his wife. 5 She / Alice doesn't teach mathematics. 6 They / The children don't play hockey on Mondays. 7 They / The shops don't open on Sunday afternoons.
- 3 1 Our cat doesn't / does not like fish.
 - 2 Melinda doesn't / does not speak Russian.
 - 3 I don't / do not remember your phone number.
 - 4 Oranges don't / do not grow in Britain.
 - 5 The postman doesn't / does not come on Sundays.
 - 6 We don't / do not play much tennis.

page 19

- 4 1 don't like 2 doesn't speak
 - 3 don't remember 4 don't know
 - 5 doesn't want 6 don't want 7 doesn't work
 - 8 don't think

- 1 1 Does 2 Do 3 Do 4 Does
 - 5 Does 6 Do

- 2 1 Does the Oxford bus stop here?
 - 2 Do the teachers know her?
 - 3 Do you play the piano?
 - 4 Does John work in a restaurant?
 - 5 Does this train stop at York?
 - 6 Do we need more eggs?
 - 7 Does Fatima like parties?
 - 8 Does Peter speak Spanish well?
- 3 1 your children 2 the lesson 3 you
 - 4 the holiday 5 those women 6 you

page 21

- 4 1 Where do 2 What does 3 When do
 - 4 Why does 5 How many ... does 6 How do
- What do you want? 2 What does this word mean? 3 What time does the film start?
 How much do those shoes cost? 5 Why does she need money? 6 How does this camera work? 7 Where do you buy your meat?
 Who do you want to see?
- 6 1 How do you spell that? 2 What do you do? 3 What does this word mean? / How do you pronounce this word? 4 What time does the train arrive? 5 How much does it cost / do they cost? 6 Do you know Anna? 7 How do you do? 8 What time does the film start?

page 22

- 1 does 2 My cats 3 doesn't 4 stops
 5 do English people 6 open 7 your holiday
 start 8 play 9 That café 10 say
- 2 1 I don't like getting up early.
 - 2 Do you want something to drink?
 - 3 Dan plays football on Saturdays.
 - 4 Do you remember her phone number?
 - 5 That clock doesn't work.
 - 6 She often flies to Paris on business.
 - 7 It doesn't rain much here in summer.
 - 8 Do elephants eat meat?
 - 9 Does he think he can sing?
 - 10 We need a new car.

page 23

- 1 1 are talking 2 is eating 3 is cooking
 - 4 am not enjoying 5 am reading
 - 6 is not raining 7 are not listening
 - 8 am feeling 9 is not going 10 are learning

- 2 cleaning, coming, dying, enjoying, going, living, making, playing, singing, starting, washing, writing
- 3 getting, feeling, putting, hitting, jumping, raining, robbing, shopping, shouting, sitting, slimming, dreaming, standing, talking, turning, answering, opening, visiting, forgetting

page 24

- 1 1 The baby's crying again.
 - 2 It's snowing hard.
 - 3 You're looking very beautiful today.
 - 4 Your coffee's getting cold.
 - 5 I'm playing a lot of football this year.
 - 6 We're waiting for a phone call.
 - 7 Chris and Helen are spending a week in France.
- 2 1 She's washing 2 She's brushing
 - 3 She's listening 4 She's drinking
 - 5 She's reading 6 She's brushing
 - 7 She's reading 8 She's opening
 - 9 She's going

- He's not / He isn't listening to me.
 I'm not working today.
 It's not / It isn't raining now.
 She's not / She isn't wearing a coat.
 John's students aren't learning very much.
 We're not / We aren't enjoying this film.
 You're not / You aren't eating much these days.
 I'm not expecting to pass the exam.
 My computer's not / My computer isn't working.
 I'm not playing much tennis these days.
- 2 1 he's not / he isn't playing well today.
 - 2 they're not / they aren't living in London.
 - 3 it's not / it isn't running well.
 - 4 I'm not enjoying it.
 - 5 the sun's not / the sun isn't shining.
 - 6 I'm not studying at university.
 - 7 she's not / she isn't singing just now.
 - 8 I'm not sleeping well these days.
 - 9 we're not / we aren't having a good time.
 - 10 I'm not crying because of you.
- The train's not/The train isn't moving.
 The children aren't listening.
 It's not / It isn't raining.
 The cat's not / The cat isn't eating.
 John's not / John isn't working.

- 1 Are you waiting for somebody? 2 Is your boyfriend enjoying the concert? 3 Are those men taking our car? 4 Are you talking to me?
 5 Is it snowing? 6 Are we going too fast?
 7 Is your computer working? 8 Are you reading that newspaper? 9 Is the bus coming?
 10 Is somebody cooking lunch?
- 1 '... what is he writing?' 2 'Why is it stopping?'
 3 'What are they studying?' 4 'What game are they playing?' 5 '... Where are you going?'
 6 'Who is she telephoning?' 7 'What is it/he/she eating?' 8 'Where is she working?' 9 'What are you cooking?' 10 'Where are you living?'
- 3 1 Where are you going now? 2 Why is Anne crying? 3 What/Why is he writing? 4 Who/ Why are you telephoning? 5 Where are they living? 6 Where/Why is your brother studying English? 7 What/Why are you cooking? 8 Why are those people looking at me? 9 What is the dog eating? 10 What are the children doing?

page 27

- 1 1 Are you getting up?
 - 2 It's raining again.
 - 3 You aren't / You're not listening.
 - 4 Where are you going?
 - 5 Am I talking too fast?
 - 6 I'm not enjoying this film.
 - 7 Why are those people laughing at me?
 - 8 I'm not cooking this for you.
 - 9 What are you drinking?
 - 10 The baby's eating the newspaper.
- 2 1 Peter's trying to save money.
 - 2 Why are those children crying?
 - 3 Are your friends playing football this afternoon?
 - 4 She's not / She isn't looking very well today.
 - 5 I think she's making a big mistake.
 - 6 You're not / You aren't wearing your usual glasses.
 - 7 I'm starting to learn Spanish.
 - 8 Is the 10.15 train running today?
 - 9 David's not / David isn't living with his parents any more.
 - 10 What are you doing in my room?

3 1 is snowing 2 is looking 3 is wearing 4 is not wearing 5 is walking 6 are looking 7 are trying 8 are stopping 9 is returning 10 is kissing 11 is (he) saying

page 28

- SIMPLE PRESENT: nearly always, on Fridays, very often, when I'm tired PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: just now, these days, this afternoon, today
- 2 1 eat; is not eating grass.
 - 2 fly; plane is not flying.
 - 3 rains; it is not raining.
 - 4 works; he/John is not working hard
 - 5 plays; she/Ann is not playing tennis
 - 6 speaks; he/John is not speaking English now.
 - 7 drives; he/Bill is not driving a bus now.
 - 8 sells; this shop / it is not selling books now.
 - 9 plays; is not playing the piano now.
 - 10 writes; he/Simon is not writing poetry now.
 - 11 chase; dog is not chasing cats now.

page 29

- 3 1 is she working 2 Does it rain 3 don't speak
 - 4 is getting 5 Do you play 6 are you writing
 - 7 She's coming 8 I'm going 9 boils
 - 10 Is that water boiling 11 Is the bus coming
 - 12 talks; never listens. 13 He writes
 - 14 it's getting 15 do you see your parents
 - 16 He's coming back 17 Does John drive
 - 18 'm waiting for 19 are you looking
 - 20 do you like.

- 1 1 What does this word mean? 2 Rob doesn't want to see the doctor. 3 She loves me.
 - 4 Peter seems tired. 5 We don't need a new car.
 - 6 Do you know that man? 7 I hate this cold weather. 8 Do you like this music? 9 I don't remember her address. 10 Do you understand this letter?
- 2 1 don't understand. 2 prefer 3 like
 - 4 Do (we) need 5 doesn't matter.
 - 6 hope 7 don't remember 8 Do (you) believe
 - 9 don't know 10 Do (you) think 11 see.
 - 12 do (you) mean 13 love 14 hates

3 1 'I don't understand.' 2 'I see.' 3 'I hope not.'
4 'I think so.' 5 'I don't think so.' 6 'I don't
know.' 7 'I know.' 8 'It depends.' 9 'It
doesn't matter.' 10 'I don't remember.' 11 'I
don't mind.' 12 'I hope so.' 13 'I don't think
so.' 14 'I hope not.' 15 'I think so.'

page 32

- 1 1 What 2 When 3 Where 4 How many 5 What time 6 How much 7 Why 8 How
- 2 1 What language do Brazilians speak? 2 Felix drives fast cars. 3 Annemarie doesn't read newspapers. 4 My two brothers both work in London. 5 Dogs don't eat vegetables. 6 Maria doesn't play the piano. 7 Does Peter work at weekends? 8 My husband cooks very well. 9 Roger wants to work with animals. 10 Does this bus go to Belfast?
- 4 1 \(2 \times 3 \times 4 \(\sigma 5 \times 6 \times 7 \times 8 \(\sigma 9 \sigma 10 \(\sigma \)

page 33

- 5 1 looks after 2 gets up 3 has 4 goes
 5 likes 6 likes 7 does not like 8 lives
 9 works 10 does not want 11 is not working
 12 is sitting 13 is reading 14 is crying
 15 want 16 do not want 17 does not know
 18 loves 19 is doing 20 do you think
- (possible answers)
 Cathy is wearing a black skirt, a red blouse, a green cardigan, black boots and a raincoat. She is not wearing a hat. Sandra is wearing a long green dress, a black coat, black shoes, and a black hat. She is not wearing glasses. David is wearing a blue shirt with a pink tie, a grey suit, a black belt, black shoes and glasses. He is not wearing a coat. (Other answers are possible.)

page 34

1 catches, costs, does, enjoys, flies, has, hopes, knows, lives, mixes, passes, plays, stands, teaches, thinks, tries, washes, wears, wishes, works

- beginning, crying, dying, enjoying, flying, forgetting, getting, happening, holding, hoping, learning, looking, making, opening, playing, sending, sitting, sleeping, stopping, taking
- 1 Do you work in London? 2 I don't like pop music. 3 Where does James live? 4 Do you want some coffee? 5 It rains a lot here. / It rains here a lot. 6 I wash my car every week. 7 Luke doesn't speak Spanish. 8 Do all your friends play football? 9 I don't wear a suit to the office. 10 How do you make spaghetti carbonara?
- 1 My sister is travelling in Spain. 2 Alice isn't looking very happy. 3 Why is the baby crying?
 4 Are you waiting for the bus? 5 I'm not playing much tennis these days. 6 Tim's wearing a very nice raincoat. 7 Are you talking about me? 8 You're walking too slowly. 9 What's that child eating? 10 I'm not enjoying this concert.
- 5 1 ✓ 2 × 3 × 4 ✓ 5 ✓ 6 × 7 ✓ 8 × 9 ✓ 10 ✓ 11 ✓ 12 × 13 ✓ 14 × 15 ×

page 36

- 1 The woman is going to have breakfast. 2 He is going to read a letter. 3 She is going to play the piano. 4 The cars are going to crash.
 5 He is going to drink coffee. 6 The ball is going to break the window.
- 2 1 Is Jane going to change her school?
 - 2 Where are you going to put that picture?
 - 3 What are you going to buy for Felix's birthday?
 - 4 Is Ethan going to play football tomorrow?
 - 5 When are you going to stop smoking?
 - 6 Is Alice going to go to university?
 - 7 Are you going to phone the police?
 - 8 Is your mother going to come and stay with us?
 - 9 Is she going to buy that coat?
 - 10 What are you going to tell the boss?

- 3 1 I'm going to stay in a nice hotel.
 - 2 I'm going to swim a lot.
 - 3 I'm not going to do any work.
 - 4 I'm going to take photos.
 - 5 I'm not going to read English newspapers.
 - 6 I'm going to learn some Italian.
 - 7 I'm not going to write postcards.
 - 8 I'm not going to visit museums.

- 4 1 How are you going to get to London?
 - 2 When is Monica going to come and see us?
 - 3 It's not going to snow.
 - 4 I'm going to cook fish for lunch.
 - 5 When are you going to see the doctor?
 - 6 Angela is going to marry her secretary.
 - 7 Is John going to call this evening?
 - 8 I'm going to stop playing poker.
 - 9 Everybody is going to watch the football match.
 - 10 Sally is not going to get the job.

- 1 1 I'm not playing baseball tomorrow.
 - 2 I'm not going to Canada next year.
 - 3 We're staying with Paul and Lucy next week.
 - 4 Are you working this evening?
 - 5 What time are your friends arriving?
 - 6 My company is moving to Scotland next year.
 - 7 How is your mother travelling to France?
 - 8 I'm seeing the dentist on Thursday.
 - 9 I'm going to a concert tonight.
 - 10 Gary is not marrying Cathy after all.
- 2 1 No, he's seeing John Parker on Sunday morning.
 - 2 No, he's going to the Birmingham office by train.
 - 3 No, he's having lunch with Stewart on Tuesday.
 - 4 No, he's going to the theatre on Wednesday evening.
 - 5 No, his new secretary is starting on Thursday. OR No, he's going to Berlin on Friday.
 - 6 No, he's going to Phil and Monica's wedding on Saturday.
- Where are you going? 2 Why are you going there? 3 How long are you staying? 4 Are you staying in one place? 5 Are you staying with friends? 6 How are you travelling?
 Are you taking the dog? 8 Who is going with you? 9 When are you coming back?

page 39

1 The class will begin at 9.30. 2 They'll be home soon.
 3 The examination will be difficult.
 4 We'll walk to the party.
 5 She will not speak to me.
 6 John will answer your questions.
 7 Emily will be ten years old on Sunday.

- 2 1 What time will tomorrow evening's concert start? 2 When will you and the family get back from Paris? 3 Will you be here tomorrow? 4 Will you and your mother be here tomorrow? 5 Where will you be this evening? 6 Will the children have enough money for the journey? 7 How soon will you know the answer?
- 1 won't be; will she be 2 won't have; Will you have 3 won't find; will I find 4 won't go; will they go? 5 won't get; will he get? 6 won't be; will it be 7 won't know; will you know

page 40

- 1 1 'Il wash 2 'Il do 3 won't start 4 'Il tell 5 won't stop 6 'Il go shopping. 7 'Il help 8 won't open.
- 3 1 A 2 B 3 A 4 A 5 B 6 A 7 B 8 B

page 41

- 1 The next lesson starts at 2.00.
 - 2 This term ends on March 12th.
 - 3 When does the concert finish?
 - 4 We don't have a lesson next Thursday.
 - 5 Does this bus stop at the post office?
 - 6 The play starts at 8.00.
 - 7 What time do you arrive in Rome?
 - 8 The banks close at 3.00 tomorrow.
 - 9 The next train stops at every station.
 - 10 When do the school holidays start?
- 2 1 will be; pass 2 leave; will catch 3 will work; needs 4 'm not / won't be; will see 5 will study; stops 6 will drive; find 7 marries; will change 8 Will (you) stop; tells 9 talk; will (he) listen 10 will phone; get

- 1 1 He's going to write a letter.
 - 2 She's going to play the violin.
 - 3 They're going to get on a bus.
 - 4 The car's going to crash.
 - 5 He's going to sing.
 - 6 He's going to go skiing.
 - 7 He's going to start running.
 - 8 He's going to go swimming.
 - 9 They're going to have dinner.
 - 10 She's going to drink a glass of water.

- 2 1 She's seeing her bank manager on Monday.
 - 2 She's seeing her doctor on Tuesday.
 - 3 She's seeing her dentist on Wednesday.
 - 4 She's seeing her accountant on Thursday.
 - 5 She's seeing her solicitor on Friday.
- 3 1 'll start 2 will change 3 won't snow 4 'll go to sleep soon. 5 'll tell

- 1 I'm going to stop smoking. 2 I'm seeing Andrew tonight. 3 It's not going to rain. 4 Peter's going to marry his boss. 5 Oliver won't pass his exams. 6 You'll like this film. 7 What time does the bus from London arrive? 8 I'm not using the car tomorrow. 9 I'm going to cook steak this evening. 10 How are you going to travel to Ireland? 11 I'll phone you when I get home. 12 Are you working on Saturday? 13 Will you need a room for the night? 14 Are you going to write to your father? 15 We won't have enough money for a good holiday. 16 Where will I find the key? 17 Will you go to university after you leave school? 18 John and Sylvia are staying with us next week. 19 When are you going to have a haircut? 20 Are you going to get up soon?
- 1 old house 2 'Il come to 3 bridge
 4 'Il come to 5 'Il see 6 house
 7 'Il recognise 8 door 9 apple trees.
 10 'Il find 11 key 12 'Il have 13 great time.

page 44

- 1 1 I'll 2 She'll 3 It won't 4 They're going to 5 They'll 6 They won't 7 She's not going to on She isn't going to 8 I'm not going to
- 2 1 x 2 \ 3 x 4 x 5 \ 6 \ 7 \ 8 \ 9 x 10 x
- The concert is tonight.
 Will I
 will move
 are not
 am going
 won't
 I'll phone
 I get
 will give
 are you
 will the meeting be

- 4 1 Is Melanie seeing Martin on Monday? Tessa isn't / Tessa's not seeing Tom on Tuesday.
 - 2 Is Mr Andrews going to study Arabic in Algiers? Mrs Roberts is not going to study Russian in Rome.
 - 3 Will Derek cook duck for Dorothy? Sally won't cook spaghetti for Sam.
 - 4 Is Harry going to take a holiday in Hungary? Steve is not going to study in Siberia.
 - 5 Is Oliver travelling to Oslo in October? Monica is not travelling to Madagascar in May.

page 46

- 1 arrived, changed, cooked, hated, lived, passed, shaved, watched
- 2 stayed, studied, cried, annoyed, carried, hurried, prayed
- 3 shopped, rained, started, robbed, slimmed, jumped, shouted, slipped, fitted, turned, visited, regretted, developed, galloped, opened, answered, referred

page 47

- 1 I forgot my girlfriend's birthday on Monday.
 - 2 That's a really good book. I read it last year.
 - 3 When we were children we always spoke French at home.
 - 4 I didn't like my piano teacher, so I stopped my lessons last week.
 - 5 Where did you learn to speak Spanish so well?
- 3 1 stood 2 heard 3 opened 4 came 5 did not see 6 said 7 took 8 gave 9 held 10 did not read 11 said 12 did not speak 13 wrote 14 ran 15 turned

- 1 1 worked 2 know 3 feel 4 came 5 see 6 write 7 arrive 8 like
- 2 1 We didn't speak Arabic. 2 He / My uncle didn't teach science. 3 He / Bill didn't cook the fish. 4 I didn't take my father (to the mountains). 5 We didn't tell the police everything. 6 I didn't write to my brother. 7 I didn't like the music. 8 We didn't know her phone number.

1 he changed his shirt. 2 she didn't answer the others. 3 he didn't go to her house.
4 I brought some chocolates. 5 she bought a very nice dress. 6 I didn't eat the meat.
7 we didn't keep the letters. 8 they spoke German. 9 he didn't shave at weekends.

page 49

- 1 1 bring 2 start 3 saw 4 began 5 break 6 leave 7 speak 8 keep 9 learnt 10 forgot 11 come 12 say
- 1 did she remember it? 2 did you pay the others? 3 did you like the film? 4 did he play well? 5 did you give them any money?
 6 did she write to her mother? 7 did he learn English? 8 did she get up early enough?
 9 did you shut the front door? 10 did they take the dog? 11 did she feel OK yesterday?
 12 did he forget the address as well?
- Where did he go? 2 What did he buy?
 Who did she marry? 4 What did she break?
 Where did he stay? 6 What did he study?
 Where did he study? 8 What did she write?
 Who did she hear? 10 What did he understand? 11 What did she forget?
 Where did she go (on holiday)?

page 50

- 1 I learnt a lot of Latin. 2 I didn't remember to buy the milk. 3 I didn't speak to her mother.
 4 'Did he phone this morning?' 5 I took the train. 6 did you go to Malaysia? 7 it didn't stop at Glasgow. 8 'They saw two films.'
 9 'Did you eat my chocolates too?'
 10 I didn't study enough.
- 2 1 Where did they go? 2 Why did they give him it / a bicycle? 3 What did she say? 4 What did they buy? 5 Who did you invite? 6 What did she drop? 7 Who did he beat? 8 Why did he write (to the police)? 9 Who did she ask (to marry her)? 10 When did he live there / in India?
- 3 did you remember

page 51

1 were dancing. 2 was cooking supper.3 was driving home. 4 was not watching TV.

2 1 What was she writing? 2 Where was he shopping? 3 What was she cooking?4 Why were they crying? 5 Were they driving to Scotland?

page 52

- 1 1 was having 2 watched 3 was watching 4 worked 5 were studying 6 drove 7 walked 8 was working 9 studied 10 was talking
- we were playing cards. 2 he wasn't talking.
 it was snowing. 4 she wasn't walking
 were you doing 6 were they talking about me?
 were you driving 8 wasn't expecting
 was doing 10 weren't running

page 53

- 1 was reading; jumped 2 met; was travelling
 3 broke; was skiing 4 was shopping; stole
 5 phoned; was working 6 stopped; was driving
 7 heard; was having 8 went; was watching
 9 was washing up; broke 10 cut; was working
 11 left; was snowing 12 opened; were talking
 13 rang; was cooking 14 heard; was working
- 4 1 x 2 / 3 / 4 x 5 x 6 / 7 / 8 x
- 1 were singing. 2 were waiting 3 opened4 drove 5 turned 6 started 7 turned8 was passing 9 ran 10 pulled

- 1 1 What did all those people want?
 - 2 Did all your brothers send you birthday cards?
 - 3 The baby ate some toothpaste this morning.
 - 4 The teacher didn't answer my question.
 - 5 Host my keys again yesterday.
 - 6 Did anybody phone while I was out?
 - 7 The Prime Minister told us that things were getting better.
 - 8 My friends and I did not believe the Prime Minister.
 - 9 Richard didn't give me a birthday present.
 - 10 What time did you get up today?
- 1 we were watching TV. 2 he wasn't reading (it). 3 were they speaking English? 4 what were the children doing? 5 I wasn't expecting her. 6 I don't know what I was doing 7 it was snowing again. 8 the trains were not running.
 9 How fast were you driving 10 he was standing

- 3 1 went; was raining. 2 read 3 Did (you) watch 4 walked; were talking 5 was swimming 6 looked; was talking; was listening. 7 rang; was having 8 was lying 9 did (you) go 10 met; was travelling
- 4 1 looked 2 was raining 3 washed 4 got dressed 5 gave 6 made 7 didn't eat 8 went 9 waited 10 didn't arrive 11 walked 12 was walking 13 arrived 14 was working 15 was talking 16 came in 17 told 18 didn't make 19 sat down 20 started
- 5 1 Mozart composed 'The Marriage of Figaro'.
 - 2 Leonardo da Vinci painted the 'Mona Lisa'.
 - 3 Shah Jehan built the Taj Mahal.
 - 4 Alfred Nobel invented dynamite.
 - 5 Sergei Eisenstein directed 'Ivan the Terrible'.
 - 6 Gustave Eiffel built the Eiffel Tower.
 - 7 Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay first climbed Mount Everest.
 - 8 Marie Curie discovered radium.
 - 9 John Lennon and Paul McCartney wrote the song 'Help'.
 - 10 The novelist Jane Austen wrote 'Pride and Prejudice'.

page 56

- became, began, broke, brought, bought, changed, cried, developed, felt, went, hoped, left, liked, paid, started, stayed, stopped, watched, wrote, worked
- 2 1 stopped 2 visited 3 making 4 feel 5 spoke 6 tell 7 like 8 see 9 phoned; was going 10 played
- 3 1 worked 2 was working; met
 - 3 lost; was shopping 4 listened to
 - 5 was cleaning; stopped 6 burnt; was cooking
 - 7 was reading; came 8 lived
 - 9 was studying; got 10 caught; was running
- 4 1 drove 2 I studied 3 were you crying
 - 4 beginning; went 5 paid; left
 - 6 shopping; stole 7 rang 8 opened
 - 9 did you get up 10 I lost; was walking

page 58

2 1 She has forgotten my address. 2 I have made a mistake. 3 You have not shut the door.
4 Alan has worked very hard. 5 I have not heard from Mary. 6 John has not learnt anything. 7 I have broken a cup. 8 We have bought a new car. 9 The rain has stopped.
10 I have not seen a newspaper today.

page 59

- 1 Have we paid? 2 Has Tim phoned?
 3 Have you heard the news? 4 Have the dogs come back? 5 What has Barbara told the police?
 6 Why have Andy and Sarah brought the children? 7 What have you said to Mike?
 8 Why has everybody stopped talking? 9 Have you seen Martin anywhere? 10 Who has taken my coat? 11 What has happened? 12 Where has my brother gone? 13 Why has Peter closed the window? 14 Has Judith passed her exam?
 15 Has the postman come?
- 4 Have you seen a lady without me? No, sorry, I haven't seen your ball. OR No, I haven't seen your ball, sorry.

page 60

- 1 1 PROBABLY NOT 2 YES 3 DON'T KNOW 4 YES
 5 DON'T KNOW 6 YES 7 NO 8 DON'T KNOW
 9 DON'T KNOW 10 NO
- 2 1 never travelled 2 studied 3 has lost 4 met 5 've bought 6 left 7 've told 8 've made 9 've forgotten 10 built

- 1 has sent 2 have bought 3 have cut
 4 has stopped 5 has given 6 have sold
 7 have eaten 8 have found 9 have passed
 10 have broken
- 1 ... because she has lost her keys. 2 ... 'Yes, his girlfriend has left him.' 3 ... 'Sorry. I know him, but I have forgotten his name.' 4 ... 'No, I've seen it.' 5 ... 'I think she's gone to Ireland.' 6 ... 'Sorry, I've lent it to Maria.' 7 Luis has found a new job. He's working in a bank now.
 8 ... 'We can't. It's closed.' 9 ... 'Yes, she's changed her hair-style.'

5 1 gone 2 been 3 been 4 gone 5 been 6 gone

page 62

1 1 a few days ago, last week, then, yesterday, when, in 1990

2 1 x 2 x 3 \ 4 x 5 x 6 x 7 \ 8 x 9 \ 10 x 11 x 12 \ 13 x 14 x 15 \ 16 x

3 1 Have you ever written a poem?

2 I have never climbed a mountain.

3 Has Charles spoken to you today?

4 Clara hasn't told me her new address.

5 Have you ever lost your memory?

6 We haven't played football this year.

7 Alex has never written to me.

8 Have you seen Henry this week?

9 My father has never driven a car.

10 Has the cat had anything to eat today?

11 Have you finished those letters?

12 I haven't paid for the lessons this month.

13 Sally has had a baby.

14 Lucy hasn't phoned today.

15 Has Corinne come back from India?

16 It has stopped raining.

17 Has the postman come this morning?

18 We have eaten everything in the house.

page 63

- 4 1 Joe has changed his job twice this year.
 - 2 How often has she asked you for money?
 - 3 I have often tried to stop smoking.
 - 4 Tom has phoned me six times this week.
 - 5 My father has met the Prime Minister twice.
 - 6 The police have questioned Annie more than once.
 - 7 I have only played rugby once in my life.
 - 8 My brother has often helped me in my work.
 - 9 Nobody has ever understood her.
 - 10 I have never wanted to go to the moon.
- 5 1 Have you ever been 2 have never read
 - 3 has won 4 won 5 never went 6 this year
 - 7 stayed 8 yesterday 9 have never seen
 - 10 did John phone

page 64

- 1 have already paid. 2 has already left.
 - 3 has already got up. 4 have already cooked chicken. 5 has already finished.
- 2 1 Has my sister phoned yet?
 - 2 the postman hasn't come yet.
 - 3 Bill hasn't found a job yet.
 - 4 Have you finished that book yet?
 - 5 I haven't started work yet.
 - 6 Have you had supper yet?
- 3 1 I have just looked at the floor.
 - 2 I have just thought about my home.
 - 3 I have just moved my feet.
 - 4 I have just put my hand on my head.
- 4 1 She has already written three letters.
 - 2 She has just telephoned her mother.
 - 3 She has already cleaned the kitchen.
 - 4 She hasn't read the newspaper yet.
 - 5 She has just made some toast.
 - 6 She hasn't listened to the radio yet.

page 65

- 1 1 for 2 since 3 since 4 for 5 since
 - 6 since 7 for 8 for 9 since 10 since
 - 11 for 12 since
- 4 1 How long have you known Mike?
 - 2 How long have you been a student?
 - 3 How long has your brother been a doctor?
 - 4 How long has Andrew had that dog?
 - 5 How long have David and Elizabeth been together?

- 1 1 Mary has been painting the house for four days.
 - 2 We have been driving for four hours.
 - 3 Anna has been working at Smiths since January.
 - 4 Joseph has been building boats for 20 years.
 - 5 We've been waiting for the bus since 8.30.
 - 6 Prices have been going up since last year.
 - 7 We've been camping since July 20th.
 - 8 My father has been teaching for 40 years.
 - 9 It's been snowing for 12 hours.
 - 10 The team has/have been training together for three months.

- 3 1 \ 2 \ 3 \ \ 4 \ 5 \ \ 6 \ 7 \ 8 \ \ 9 \ \ 10 \ \
- 1 She has been playing the piano.
 2 He has been playing football.
 3 She has been teaching.
 4 He has been writing letters.
 5 She has been swimming.

page 68

- 1 1 had worked 2 had not rained. 3 had happened? 4 had seen 5 had not got6 had they been? 7 had paid 8 had not done
- 1 understood; had got 2 didn't play; had hurt
 3 had looked; started 4 had never travelled; went
 5 arrived; had already closed 6 didn't have; had paid

page 69

- 3 1 got; had eaten 2 met; had been
 3 started; remembered; had not closed
 4 found; had not opened 5 had already told; bought
- 4 1 When George had eaten all the chocolate biscuits, he started eating the lemon ones.
 - 2 When I had turned off the lights in the office, I locked the door and left.
 - 3 I borrowed Karen's newspaper when she had read it.
 - 4 Mark had a long hot shower when he had done his exercises.
 - 5 When Barry had phoned his mother with the good news, he went to bed.

page 70

- 1 1 Have all those people gone home?
 - 2 Peter hasn't told us everything.
 - 3 Has the postman been?
 - 4 Has Pat spoken to Robert?
 - 5 Tim and Angela haven't bought a house.
 - 6 Has Emma's boyfriend forgotten her birthday?
 - 7 Has Monica been working in London all this week?
 - 8 I haven't phoned Joseph.
 - 9 Have Robert and Sally moved to Ireland?
 - 10 We haven't been working all day.

- 2 1 YES 2 WE DON'T KNOW 3 YES 4 WE DON'T KNOW
 - 5 WE DON'T KNOW 6 YES 7 NO 8 YES
 - 9 WE DON'T KNOW 10 YES
- 3 1 Why has everybody already gone home?
 - 2 How long has Anna been learning Chinese?
 - 3 Why did George close the door?
 - 4 Where have Sue and Jeanne gone on holiday?
 - 5 When did the President visit Russia?
 - 6 How long has Jan's father been travelling in Wales?
 - 7 What has happened?
 - 8 How long has Joe been working in Spain?
 - 9 Where did Mary study medicine?
 - 10 Who has taken my/your bicycle?

page 71

- 4 1 saw; knew; had met 2 did not have; had bought 3 had already started; arrived.
 - 4 broke; had forgotten 5 met
 - 6 forgot; had said. 7 had gone
 - 8 had finished; went 9 found; had bought 10 closed: had left
- 5 1 had 2 spent 3 lost 4 did not pass
 - 5 happened 6 has been 7 has changed
 - 8 have bought 9 has opened
 - 10 have passed
- 6 1 swept 2 made 3 polished 4 washed
 - 5 ironed 6 washed up 7 put 8 tidied
 - 9 did 10 Have you swept 11 Have you made
 - 12 Have you polished 13 Have you washed
 - 14 ironed 15 Have you washed up
 - 16 put 17 Have you tidied 18 haven't done

- broken, brought, come, drunk, eaten, forgotten, given, left, made, stood, stayed, stopped, taken, thought, tried
- 2 1 began 2 broken 3 come 4 knew
 - 5 drunk 6 ate 7 fell 8 forgotten
 - 9 given 10 taken
- 3 1 We've known; for 2 I've been working
 - 3 has gone; did she leave? 4 has already lost;
 - lost 5 Have you ever driven 6 has never had
 - 7 Have you seen 8 started; eight weeks ago
 - 9 I've been; for 10 have you known

- 4 1 did (Mike) lose 2 has been eating
 - 3 has just had 4 has been snowing
 - 5 studied 6 have just passed
 - 7 have you known 8 Have (you ever) written
 - 9 lost 10 have not started

- 1 1 to be 2 be 3 pass 4 to get 5 be 6 to speak
- 2 1 likes 2 may 3 must 4 works 5 should 6 seems 7 might 8 wants
- 3 1 Can he ski? 2 Can he play poker?
 - 3 She mustn't sing. 4 He may not go this week.
 - 5 She can't visit us on Sunday.

page 75

- 1 1 must write 2 must hurry 3 must stop 4 must pay 5 must study 6 must speak 7 must go
- 2 1 ... I must phone her tonight.
 - 2 ... I must go back and get it.
 - 3 ... My mother made it. You must have a piece.
 - 4 ... You must see it. It's a cinema classic.
 - 5 ... I must get up early.
 - 6 ... You must give me your phone number.
 - 7 ... We must go for a walk this weekend.
- 3 1 Must I pay any money? 2 Must I come to this room? 3 Must I write in ink? 4 Must I sit in my usual place? 5 Must I answer every question?
 - 6 Must I work without a dictionary?
 - 7 Must I stay if I finish early?

page 76

- 1 has to wear 2 have to read 3 has to like
 4 have to have 5 has to be 6 have to do
 7 has to have 8 has to know 9 have to know
 10 has to practise
- 2 1 ... 'Do we have to finish it today?' 2 ... 'Do I/ we have to stay until the end?' 3 ... 'Do they have to speak Spanish?' 4 ... 'Do I have to tell you now?' 5 ... 'So do I have to babysit?' 6 ... 'Do I have to pay it all now?' 7 ... 'Does he have to travel a lot?'

page 77

- 1 1 You mustn't wash 2 You mustn't play 3 You mustn't let 4 You mustn't smoke 5 You mustn't play 6 You mustn't make
- 1 You don't have to make breakfast for me; I'll just have coffee. 2 You don't have to make lunch for me; I'll have lunch in the canteen. 3 You don't have to drive me to the station; I can walk. 4 You don't have to give me your newspaper; I'll buy The Times at the station. 5 You don't have to post those letters; Cathy's going to the post office. 6 You don't have to speak French; everybody here understands English.
- 3 1 mustn't 2 don't have to 3 mustn't
 4 don't have to 5 don't have to 6 mustn't
 7 mustn't 8 don't have to 9 don't have to
 10 mustn't 11 mustn't 12 don't have to

page 78

- He didn't have to learn Russian.
 He had to learn music.
 He had to play football.
 He didn't have to write poems.
 He had to write stories.
- 2 1 Did Adam have to pay for his lessons? 2 Did Tina have to take an exam last year? 3 Did Joe and Sue have to wait a long time for a train?
 4 Did you have to show your passport at the airport? 5 Did the children have to walk home?
 6 Did Peter have to cook supper?
- 3 1 'Il have to get 2 won't have to go
 3 Will (you) have to learn 4 'Il have to play
 5 'Il have to ask 6 won't have to work
 7 Will (she) have to get 8 'Il have to tell

- 1 should keep 2 should learn
 3 shouldn't believe 4 should eat
 5 shouldn't smoke 6 should tell 7 shouldn't play 8 shouldn't read 9 shouldn't drive
 10 should(n't) (always) say
- 2 1 'What time should I arrive?' 2 Who should I phone 3 'What should I wear?' 4 'Where should I sit?' 5 Where should I put 6 What time should I wake

3 1 must 2 should/must 3 should 4 must 5 must 6 must 7 should

page 80

- 1 He can't play tennis, but he can play baseball.
 - 2 He can play the piano, but he can't play the violin.
 - 3 He can't remember names, but he can remember faces.
 - 4 He can eat oranges, but he can't eat cherries.
- 1 Can he cook? 2 Can she speak Spanish?
 3 How much can they pay? 4 Can you drive a bus? 5 Can you wear red? 6 Can you see the sea? 7 Can you read music? 8 What can he do? 9 Can you eat butter? 10 Can she talk?

page 81

- 1 1 could name 2 could count 3 could read 4 could not write 5 could tell 6 could remember 7 could not walk
- 3 1 Little Tim will be able to talk soon.
 - 2 I will be able to pay you next week.
 - 3 I hope that I will be able to go to America one day.
 - 4 The doctor will be able to see you tomorrow.
 - 5 We will be able to buy a car next year.

page 82

- 1 It may not rain.
 2 We may buy a car.
 3 Joe may not be at home.
 4 Anna may need help.
 5 The baby may be hungry.
 6 I may not change my job.
 7 She may be married.
 8 He may not want to talk to you.
 9 You may not be right.
 10 I may not be here tomorrow.
- 2 1 ... 'Perhaps. I may not have enough money.'
 - 2 ... 'Not sure. They may stay at home.'
 - 3 ... 'It's early. He may not be out of bed yet.
 - 4 ... 'Yes. I think it may snow.'
 - 5 ... 'We may go round to Sophie's place.'
 - 6 ... 'No. I may decide to study physics.'
 - 7 ... 'I don't know. I may give him a sweater.'

page 83

3 1 may not 2 can't 3 may not 4 can't 5 can't 6 may not 7 may not 8 may not 9 can't 10 may not

- 4 1 might find 2 might send 3 might fall 4 might make 5 might buy
- 1 might not finish 2 might miss
 3 might give 4 might not believe
 5 might not pass 6 might not know
 7 might be 8 might have to 9 might not have 10 might not

page 84

- 1 1 Can I have a glass of water (, please)?
 - 2 Can I use your pencil (, please)?
 - 3 Can I have some more coffee (, please)?
 - 4 Can I put my coat here (, please)?
 - 5 Can I have some bread (, please)?
 - 6 Can I look at those photos (, please)?
- 2 1 Could I use your calculator, please?
 - 2 Could I leave early today, please?
 - 3 Could I take your photo, please?
 - 4 Could I borrow your newspaper, please?
 - 5 Could I turn on the TV, please?
 - 6 Could I open a window, please?
- 3 1 The children can play in the garden.
 - 2 Tell the boys that they can eat the cake in the kitchen.
 - 3 If you're cold, you can turn on the heating.
 - 4 If you're bored, you can watch television.
 - 5 Only teachers can park in this car park.

page 85

- 4 1 You can't smoke here. 2 You can't take photos here. 3 You can't cycle here.
 4 You can't use mobile phones here.
- 1 Can I make a cup of tea for you / make you a cup of tea? 2 Can I help you? 3 Can I drive you to the station? 4 Can I get some aspirins for you / get you some aspirins?
- 1 may not talk 2 may not leave 3 may use4 may take 5 may leave 6 may use7 may do

page 86

1 1 pass 2 clean 3 tell 4 drive 5 hold 6 babysit 7 lend 8 put 9 speak/drive 10 wait

- 2 1 Can you open the door?
 - 2 Could you give me an envelope?
 - 3 Can you pass me the sugar?
 - 4 Could you watch my children for a minute?
 - 5 Could you tell me the time?
 - 6 Could you possibly change some dollars for me?
 - 7 Can you wait outside?
 - 8 Could you possibly translate this letter for me?
 - 9 Can you come back tomorrow?
 - 10 Could you say it in English?
- 3 'Miss Ellis, could you come in here and pass me my coffee?'

- 1 What shall I buy for Sandra's birthday?
 - 2 When shall I phone you? 3 Shall I pay now?
 - 4 Shall I clean the bathroom? 5 How many tickets shall I buy? 6 Where shall I leave the car? 7 What time shall I come this evening?
 - 8 Shall I shut the windows? 9 When shall I go shopping? 10 Shall I get your coat?
- 1 Shall we go out this evening? 2 Shall we have a game of cards? 3 How shall we travel to London? 4 What shall we do at the weekend? 5 Where shall we go on holiday? 6 Shall we look for a hotel? 7 What time shall we meet Peter? 8 How much bread shall we buy? 9 Shall we have a party? 10 When shall we have the next meeting?
- 3 1 Shall I post your letters? 2 Shall I do your shopping? 3 Shall I make your bed? 4 Shall I read to you? 5 Shall I drive you to the station?
 6 Shall I make you a cup of tea? 7 Shall I clean your car? 8 Shall I phone your secretary?
 9 Shall I cut your hair? 10 Shall I bring you an aspirin?

page 88

- 1 1'd like a black T-shirt, please. 2 Would you like an aspirin? 3 Would you like the newspaper? 4 I'd like an ice cream, please. 5 Would you like some more toast? 6 I'd like a receipt, please.
- 3 1 Would 2 Yes, please. 3 like 4 Would 5 'd like 6 Yes, I do. 7 would like 8 don't 9 wouldn't 10 'd like.

page 89

- 1 1 Most people used to travel on foot or on horses.
 - 2 Most people didn't use to go to school.
 - 3 Most people didn't use to learn to read.
 - 4 Most people used to cook on wood fires.
 - 5 Most people didn't use to live very long.
 - 6 Most people used to work very long hours.
- 2 1 Emily used to study German. Now she studies French. 2 Paul used to live in London. Now he lives in Glasgow. 3 Grace used to read a lot. Now she watches TV. 4 Dan used to be a driver. Now he's a hairdresser. 5 Alice used to drink coffee. Now she drinks tea. 6 Peter used to have lots of girlfriends. Now he's married.
- 3 1 Did you use to have dark hair? 2 Did you use to play football? 3 Where did you use to work?
 - 4 Did you use to enjoy your work?
 - 5 Did you use to go to a lot of parties?

- 1 1 Can he swim?
 - 2 Must she go immediately?
 - 3 but he may not go this week.
 - 4 She doesn't have to work on Thursday evening.
 - 5 Can he play hockey?
 - 6 Should she see the secretary today?
 - 7 She couldn't read when she was three.
 - 8 Would he like it now?
 - 9 but we might not take the children.
 - 10 I must not go to sleep.
- 1 I will be able to speak French 2 Everybody had to fill in a big form 3 Everybody will have to fill in a big form 4 Will you be able to play the guitar 5 Did you have to wear a tie 6 John couldn't read very well 7 We won't be able to buy a car 8 I had to see the doctor 9 Everybody will be able to say what they think 10 couldn't sing; won't be able to sing

- 3 1 ... You should make her a cup of tea.
 - 2 ... You should take more exercise.
 - 3 ... You should tell her you love her.
 - 4 ... You should give her a saucer of milk.
 - 5 ... You should change your shampoo.
 - 6 ... You shouldn't go to bed so late.
 - 7 ... You shouldn't tell her.
 - You shouldn't buy so many electronic gadgets.
 - 9 ... You should practise your service.
 - 10 ... You should buy a new one.
 - 11 ... You should buy some new clothes.
 - 12 ... You should study grammar.

- 4 (possible answers)
 - 1 Could I have a cup of coffee? 2 May I take a photograph of you? 3 Could you close the door, please, John? 4 Could you possibly help me? 5 Can you give me that newspaper, please? 6 Could you clean my bicycle, please? 7 Could I possibly borrow some money from you? 8 Can I use your phone? 9 Could you hold this, please?
 - 10 Could you wash all my clothes before tomorrow, please?
 (Other answers are possible.)
- 5 1 With a scanner you can make copies.
 - 2 With a freezer you can keep food very cold.
 - 3 With a washing machine you can wash clothes.
 - 4 With a fridge you can keep food cool.
 - 5 With a mobile phone you can make phone calls.
 - 6 With a dishwasher you can wash plates, cups etc.
 - 7 With a camera you can take photos.
- 1 She might be a pilot. 2 He might be a businessman. 3 She might be an opera singer.
 4 He might be a politician. 5 She might be a lawyer. 6 He might be a chef. 7 She might be a gardener.

page 92

- 1 1 X 2 X 3 X 4 \ 5 \ 6 X 7 \ 8 \ 9 X 10 X
- 2 1 must 2 shouldn't 3 must not 4 should 5 don't have to 6 have to 7 don't have to 8 may not 9 can't 10 should

- 1 You must phone Martin tonight. 2 Ann might be here this evening. 3 You don't have to wait.
 4 People shouldn't watch TV all the time.
 5 Shall I open a window? 6 People should cooperate. 7 John used to smoke. 8 It may rain. 9 Alan can speak Spanish. 10 Can you
- 4 1 can; can't 2 must 3 must 4 may; can; can't

page 94

help me?

- 1 1 B 2 E 3 H 4 C 5 F 6 G 7 D
- 1 is spoken 2 studied 3 spent 4 was broken 5 are made 6 was written
 7 will be opened 8 was driving; was stopped
 9 was built 10 had

page 95

- 1 1 is 2 is 3 am 4 Are 5 is 6 is 7 are 8 Are
- 2 1 is written 2 are watched 3 are sold
 4 is known 5 is pronounced 6 is spoken
 7 is played 8 are cleaned
- 1 is not spelt; is it spelt? 2 is not seen; is it seen? 3 is not pronounced; is it pronounced?
 4 are not found; are they found? 5 is not paid; is she paid?

page 96

- 1 1 will be opened 2 will be spoken 3 will be finished 4 will be cleaned 5 will be sent
- 2 1 won't be taken; will they be taken 2 won't be built; will it be built? 3 won't be spoken; will be spoken?

- 1 1 was 2 were 3 were 4 were 5 was 6 was
- 2 1 were taken 2 were left 3 was cleaned 4 were met 5 was told 6 was sent

- 3 1 was not educated; was he educated?
 - 2 were not posted; were they posted?
 - 3 was not cooked; was it cooked?
 - 4 was not made; was it made?
 - 5 was not paid; was it paid?

- 1 it's being cleaned. 2 she's being interviewed
 3 My watch is being repaired. 4 I'm being sent
 5 my hair is being cut. 6 we are being followed
 7 The engine is being repaired. 8 It's being rebuilt. 9 he is being watched 10 it is being painted.
- Bills are being paid.
 Coffee is being made.
 Drinks are being served.
 Food is being prepared.
 Baggage is being brought down.
 Money is being changed.
 New guests are being welcomed.
 Reservations are being taken.
 Phones are being answered.
 Rooms are being cleaned.

page 99

- 1 1 has been arrested 2 has been bought
 - 3 has been killed 4 have been found
 - 5 has been chosen 6 has been closed.
 - 7 has been stolen. 8 have been asked
 - 9 have been lost 10 has been invited
- 2 1 It's never been ridden. 2 It's never been worn. 3 It's never been opened.
 4 It's never been used. 5 It's never been played.

page 100

- 1 1 is made 2 were killed 3 will be done 4 is spoken 5 was made 6 were examined 7 is cleaned 8 will be informed 9 will be opened 10 are found
- 2 (possible answers)
 Baggage is not being brought down. Bills are not being paid. Coffee is not being made.
 Drinks are not being served. Food is not being prepared. Money is not being changed.
 New guests are not being welcomed.
 Reservations are not being taken.
 Rooms are not being cleaned.
 Telephones are not being answered.

3 (possible answers)
Arriving passengers are being met. Boarding passes are being printed. Cars are being parked. Departures are being announced. Passports are being checked. Reservations are being made. Tickets are being sold.

page 101

- 4 1 are being followed. 2 has been stolen.
 - 3 is being repaired. 4 have been moved.
 - 5 have been sent 6 are (you) being interviewed? 7 have/has been arrested
 - 8 have/has not been arrested; are being watched.
 - 9 is being rebuilt. 10 has been asked
- 5 1 are covered 2 are spent 3 walk
 - 4 do not eat 5 are left 6 sleep 7 are made
 - 8 is not known 9 live 10 are cut down

page 102

- 1 1 posted 2 weren't paid 3 speaks 4 isn't pronounced 5 will be built 6 is being cleaned 7 have been invited 8 is made 9 is spoken 10 broke
- 2 1 x 2 x 3 x 4 \ 5 \ 6 x 7 x 8 \ 9 x 10 \
- 3 1 has been moved. 2 will be opened
 - 3 has been taken. 4 is being washed.
 - 5 will be told 6 has been stolen.
 - 7 was made 8 is spoken 9 are cleaned
 - 10 have been asked 11 was killed.
 - 12 will be done 13 will (the match) be played
 - 14 have been stolen 15 were sent
 - 16 is made 17 was hit; was broken
 - 18 is being translated 19 has been found
 - 20 will be finished

- 1 1 Are you tired?
 - 2 Is he at home?
 - 3 Must you go now?
 - 4 Can they speak Spanish?
 - 5 Will Derek be here tomorrow?
 - 6 Will Aunt Ruth arrive by train?
 - 7 Has she forgotten her keys?
 - 8 Is your sister playing tennis?
 - 9 Would you like some coffee?
 - 10 Has your secretary gone home?

- 2 1 Do you drink coffee at bedtime?
 - 2 Do you like classical music?
 - 3 Do you know my friend Andrew?
 - 4 Did you go skiing last winter?
 - 5 Do you work in London?
 - 6 Do you live in a flat or a house?
 - 7 Do you watch a lot of TV?
 - 8 Did you remember to buy bread?
 - 9 Did you see Barbara last weekend?
 - 10 Do you play tennis?

- 3 1 Does she speak Arabic?
 - 2 Does she know Mr Peters?
 - 3 Does she work at home?
 - 4 Did she live in Birmingham?
 - 5 Did she go home last week?
 - 6 Does she play the piano?
 - 7 Does she ride horses?
 - 8 Does she like working with children?
 - 9 Did she travel a lot last year?
 - 10 Does she drive to work?

4 1 C 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 B 6 A 7 A 8 C

- 5 1 Did the police catch the drug dealers?
 - 2 Have Lucy and Felicia come back from holiday?
 - 3 When do English children start school?
 - 4 What is that man doing in the garden? or What is that man in the garden doing?
 - 5 Are the buses running next week?
 - 6 Has the film started?
 - 7 Has John's letter arrived yet?
 - 8 Is Alicia working today?
 - 9 Does Paul know your girlfriend?
 - 10 Why is Kate crying?

page 106

- 1 'Why are you here?' 2 'Where have you been today?' 3 'When are you going to Glasgow?'
 4 'How do you like Scotland?' 5 'How did you come here?' 6 'Why did you come by car?'
 7 'Where do you live?' 8 'When are you leaving?' 9 'When will we see you again?'
- 2 1 How far is 2 How tall is 3 How fast was
 - 4 How often do you 5 How big is
 - 6 How long did you 7 How well do you

page 107

- 3 1 C What colour 2 D What sort/kind of
 3 B What size 4 F What colour 5 H What sort/kind of 6 E What time 7 G What size
- 4 1 'What's your new girlfriend like?'
 - 2 'What are you new neighbours like?'
 - 3 'What's your new car like?'
 - 4 'What's your new house like?'
 - 5 'What's your new job like?'
 - 6 'What's your new school like?'

page 108

- 1 1 plays 2 made 3 did she marry? 4 does this word mean? 5 did you say? 6 told
- 2 1 How many people came to her party?
 - 2 Which train did Peter catch?
 - 3 Which bus goes to the station?
 - 4 How many languages does Douglas speak?
 - 5 What sort of music does Alice like?
 - 6 What sort of music keeps the baby quiet?
- 3 1 Alice. 2 Who loves Ann? Pete. 3 Who does Ann love? Joe. 4 Who loves Alice? Fred.
 5 Who does Joe love? Mary. 6 Who does Pete love? Ann. 7 Who loves Pete? Nobody/No one.

page 109

- 5 1 (a) What did Melissa buy? (b) Who bought a coat?
 - 2 (a) What did the bus hit? (b) What hit that tree?
 - 3 (a) Who lost the office keys? (b) What did Rose lose?
 - 4 (a) What does Paul teach? (b) Who teaches Arabic?
 - 5 (a) Who hates computers? (b) What does Mike hate?
- 6 1 Who first reached the North Pole? 2 Who wrote War and Peace? 3 Who built the Great Wall of China? 4 Who painted Sunflowers?

- 1 1 Is your sister Caroline talking to the police?
 - 2 Do all the people here understand Spanish?
 - 3 Did most of the football team play well?
 - 4 Is the man at the table in the corner asleep?

- 2 1 How much does a ticket for Saturday's concert cost? 2 What time does the film about skiing in New Zealand start? 3 What does the second word in the first sentence mean? 4 Why does the man in the flat downstairs want to change his job?
- 3 1 Why are all those people laughing? 2 What is that big black dog eating? 3 Is everybody in your family going to Scotland for Christmas?
 - 4 What game are those children playing?
 - 5 Where are Lola and her friends studying?
 - 6 Are those people over there speaking French?

- 1 1 to 2 from 3 about 4 about 5 in 6 from 7 with 8 for 9 to 10 with 11 to 12 on
- 2 1 'What are you thinking about?' 2 'Who does Alice work for?' 3 'Who/What were you talking about?' 4 'What are you interested in?'
 5 'What are you looking at?' 6 'Who did you stay with?' 7 'Who do you work with?'
 8 'What did you spend the money on?' 9 'What was the film about?' 10 'Where can I get tickets from?'
- 3 1 What 2 Who 3 What 4 Who 5 Who 6 What 7 to 8 for 9 Where 10 What 11 to 12 for

page 112

Milk's not red. / Milk isn't red.
 The children aren't at home.
 Max hasn't been to Egypt.
 You mustn't give this letter / it to her mother.
 I won't be in the office tomorrow.
 I couldn't swim when I was two years old.
 We weren't in Birmingham yesterday.
 I'm not English.

page 113

- 4 1 Shakespeare didn't live in New York.
 - 2 Phone books don't tell you about words.
 - 3 The earth doesn't go round the moon.
 - 4 Most Algerians don't speak Russian.
 - 5 Cookers don't keep food cold.
 - 6 The Second World War didn't end in 1955.
 - 7 John doesn't know my sister.

6 1 don't 2 wasn't 3 doesn't 4 haven't 5 aren't 6 won't 7 didn't/couldn't 8 didn't/couldn't 9 hasn't 10 'm not

page 114

- 1 1 not 2 not 3 no 4 not 5 no 6 not 7 not 8 Not 9 no 10 not
- 2 1 There are no newspapers. 2 There's no time.
 - 3 There were no letters. 4 I saw no light.
 - 5 He gave no answer.

page 115

- 1 1 Nobody lives in that house. 2 I'll never understand my dog. 3 The children told me nothing. 4 I have no money. 5 I could hardly see the road.
- 2 1 I saw nobody. 2 We had no trouble.
 - 3 My parents never go out. 4 I looked for the dog, but it was nowhere in the house.
 - 5 Late nothing yesterday. 6 It hardly rained for three months. 7 Nobody spoke.
- 3 1 My grandmother never drives fast.
 - 2 Andrew doesn't play the guitar.
 - 3 When she talked, I understood nothing.
 - 4 I don't like Ann's new shoes.
 - 5 Nothing happened this morning.
 - 6 There's nowhere to sit down in the station.
 - 7 I hardly watch TV.
 - 8 Nobody wants to play tennis.

- 1 1 Who cooked dinner? 2 What did Julia cook?
 - 3 What hit Joe? 4 Who did the ball hit?
 - 5 What does Sarah play? 6 Who plays the guitar? 7 How many languages does Beth speak? 8 Who speaks eight languages?
 - 9 Who ate Mum's breakfast? 10 What did Dad eat?
- 2 1 Who did you go with? 2 Who are you writing to? 3 Who did you buy it for? 4 Who is the letter from? 5 What were you talking about? 6 What did you carry it in? 7 How much did you sell your car for? 8 What did she hit him with? 9 Who did you send the flowers to? 10 Where does she come from?

Why are all those people looking at me?
Did Anna and Oscar have lunch together yesterday?
Does that man in the dark coat work for the government?
Is/Are the football team playing in Scotland next Saturday?
What are those children doing in the garden?
What does the first word in this sentence mean?
Are Tom and his sister staying at your house this week?
When are Emma's teacher and her class going to Paris?
What did that strange woman say to you?
When did/will Mary and Phil get married?

page 117

- 1 My father never eats meat. 2 Peter doesn't like jazz. 3 There's nothing to do in this town.
 4 I understood nothing. 5 Sally doesn't play the piano. 6 I hardly go to the cinema.
 7 Nothing happened. 8 Nobody wants to talk to you. 9 I've got no money. 10 I haven't got enough money.
- 6 1 Adult grizzly bears can't climb trees. 3 Tigers don't live in Africa. 4 The first people didn't hunt dinosaurs. 5 Spiders aren't insects.
 6 Cats can't see when there is no light.

page 118

- 1 1 live 2 Are all your friends coming ...
 3 Correct. 4 Do you play 5 are you
 6 Correct. 7 Correct. 8 can I 9 told you
 10 phone 11 don't speak 12 anywhere
 13 not 14 Correct. 15 What are you looking
 at? 16 Correct. 17 anything 18 not
 19 helped 20 not
- 2 1 Who 2 Why 3 Where 4 How old
 5 What colour 6 How tall 7 What sort/kind of
 8 How fast 9 What size 10 What ... like
- 3 1 Kelly/She isn't at work. 2 I haven't forgotten your face. 3 Peter/He doesn't drive taxis.
 4 We didn't go to Portugal. 5 You mustn't use that one. 6 Henry/He doesn't eat meat.
 7 These people / They don't play soccer.
 8 Luke/He didn't break his leg. 9 I won't be at home in the afternoon. 10 Elisabeth/She doesn't read books.

- 4 1 Have she and her sisters been to America?
 - 2 Do she and her sisters like dancing?
 - 3 Can she and her sisters swim?
 - 4 Will she and her sisters be here tomorrow?
 - 5 Did she and her sisters go to the party yesterday?
 - 6 Have she and her sisters ever studied history?
 - 7 Can she and her sisters drive?
 - 8 Did she and her sisters phone last night?
 - 9 Were she and her sisters talking to Philip when you saw them?
 - 10 Will she and her sisters get married soon?

page 120

- 1 1 2 to 3 4 5 -; to 6 -; to 7 to 8 to
- 2 1 to learn 2 help 3 see 4 buy 5 to hear 6 to go 7 send 8 stop
- 1 not to have 2 not to break 3 not to go to sleep 4 not to make 5 not to have
 6 not to talk 7 not to wake 8 not to tell
 9 not to see 10 not to play

page 121

- 1 1 to drive 2 to catch 3 to ask for 4 to wait for 5 to meet 6 to buy 7 to finish 8 to learn 9 to hear 10 to relax.
- 2 1 to clean 2 to buy 3 to get 4 to open 5 to tell 6 to earn 7 to go 8 to wish 9 to make 10 to get up
- 3 1 E to cut 2 F to see 3 B to buy 4 C to open 5 D to dry

page 122

1 1 refuse to 2 start to 3 promise to 4 expect to 5 try to 6 decide to 7 want to 8 learn to 9 plan to 10 need to 11 forget to 12 seem to 13 begin to 14 continue to 15 prefer to

page 123

1 needs to 2 agreed to 3 decided to
4 tried to 5 learnt to 6 promised to
7 forgot to 8 refused to 9 want to
10 started to 11 prefers to 12 continued to
13 hopes to 14 seemed to 15 began to

- 1 1 Sarah would like John to cook (tonight).
 - 2 The policeman wants the man to move his car.
 - 3 Helen's mother wants her to wash her face.
 - 4 Bill would like Andy to help him.
 - 5 Roger would like Karen to lend him some money.
 - 6 Jessie wants Peter to be guiet for a minute.
 - 7 David would like Alice to have dinner with him.
 - 8 Mike would like the government to put more money into schools.
 - 9 Lucy wants Bill to stop playing that terrible music.
 - 10 Mary would like Gordon to make the bed for once.
- 2 1 Her boss wants her to work harder.
 - 2 Her little brother wants her to buy him a bicycle.
 - 3 Her dog wants her to take him for a walk.
 - 4 Her boyfriend wants her to go to America with him.
 - 5 Her friend Martha wants her to lend her a blue dress
 - 6 Her guitar teacher wants her to buy a better guitar.
 - 7 Her mother wants her to spend every weekend at home.
 - 8 Her sister wants her to go to Russia with her.
 - 9 The people downstairs want her to stop playing loud music at night.
 - 10 Her father wants her to study economics.

- 1 I didn't tell Alan to go home. 2 I asked Fred to be quiet. 3 Do you expect her to phone?
 4 I helped Joe to carry the books. 5 The policewoman told me to show her my driving licence. 6 Ann helped me to finish the work.
 7 I asked the shop assistant to help me.
 8 I need you to stay with me. 9 I expect her to pass her exam. 10 I need some people to help with the party.
- 4 1 His father wanted him to get rich.
 - 2 His sister Isabel wanted him to be good at sport.
 - 3 His brother Andy wanted him to go to university.
 - 4 His sister Nicole didn't want him to go to university.
 5 His brother Henry wanted him to be a racing driver.
 6 His grandmother wanted him to be a doctor.
 7 His friend Anthony wanted him to have an easy life.
 8 His maths teacher wanted him to study maths.
 9 His literature teacher wanted him to study literature.
 10 His music teacher didn't want him to study music.

- 1 1 It wasn't necessary to phone John.
 - 2 It's impossible to understand that woman.
 - 3 It's nice to stay in bed late on Sundays.
 - 4 It's sometimes difficult to say 'No'.
 - 5 It was easy to make our children happy.
 - 6 It's sometimes dangerous to tell the truth.
 - 7 It's expensive to eat out in restaurants.
 - 8 It's almost impossible to learn a foreign language perfectly.
 - 9 It's nice to travel.
 - 10 It was good to visit my parents.
- 2 1 It was nice to have 2 It was interesting to see 3 it was a bit hard to understand
 4 It was very easy to make 5 It was expensive to eat 6 it was dangerous to swim 7 it was impossible to be

page 127

- 4 (our answers)
 - 1 It's important to practise grammar.
 - 2 It's important not to translate everything.
 - 3 It's important to read a lot.
 - 4 It's important to read things that interest you.
 - 5 It's not important to have perfect pronunciation.
 - 6 It's important to have good enough pronunciation.
 - 7 It's important not to make too many mistakes.
 - 8 It's not necessary to speak without mistakes.
 - 9 It's important to practise listening to English.
 - 10 It's important to know 3,000 5,000 words.
 - 11 It's not necessary to know 50,000 words.
 - 12 It's important to have a good English-English dictionary.
 - 13 It's important to have a good bilingual dictionary.

- 1 1 to meet 2 to see 3 sorry 4 afraid
 - 5 to have 6 to find 7 surprised 8 pleased
 - 9 to leave 10 happy
- 2 1 Eleanor's silly to listen to Mark. 2 Elizabeth was wrong to take the train without a ticket. 3 I was stupid to sit on my glasses. 4 I was wrong to wash a white shirt with a red one. 5 You're silly to believe Luke. 6 You're right to eat a good breakfast. 7 You were crazy to lend money to Chris. 8 I was stupid to think the new Prime Minister was a good man. 9 Rebecca was wrong to tell Peter she loved him. 10 I was right to stay in bed until lunchtime.

- 1 is old enough to work 2 isn't old enough to leave 3 isn't old enough to leave 4 is old enough to leave 5 isn't old enough to 6 is old enough to change 7 is old enough to drive
- He's not tall enough to play basketball.
 She's not old enough to vote.
 I'm not strong enough to open this bottle.
 My French is good enough to read a newspaper.
 He isn't old enough to go out by himself.
 He's intelligent enough to do well at university.
- 1 Helen's too ill to work. 2 My grandfather's too old to travel. 3 I'm too bored to listen any longer. 4 Cara's too hot to play tennis.
 5 I'm too hungry to work. 6 I'm too tired to drive. 7 I was too afraid to move. 8 Molly was too ill last week to go to school. OR ... too ill to go to school last week. 9 Our dog's too fat to run. 10 My mother's too deaf to understand what people say.

page 130

- 1 1 homework to do. 2 letters to post? 3 film to watch 4 dress to wear 5 shopping to do 6 friend to see
- 1 anything to wear. 2 somewhere to work.
 3 nothing to do 4 nobody/no one to teach.
 5 something to finish. 6 nowhere to go.
 7 somebody/someone to love. 8 anywhere to stay 9 somebody/someone/anybody/anyone to help 10 something to carry.

page 131

- Skiing; reading.
 Flying; going by train.
 Eating; washing.
 Speaking; writing on
 Writing; speaking.
 Understanding; listening.
 Shopping; shaving.
 Working; resting.
 Smoking; driving.
- 4 2 NO CAMPING 3 NO SMOKING 4 NO CYCLING 5 NO FISHING

page 132

1 1 C 2 E 3 D 4 B 5 I 6 J 7 G 8 H 9 F 2 1 hearing 2 smoking 3 going 4 watching5 washing 6 closing 7 working 8 getting9 skiing 10 asking.

page 133

- 3 1 Bob is quite good at running, but not very good at cycling. 2 Sue is not very good at drawing, but very good at running. 3 Mark is quite good at swimming, and very good at running. 4 Bob is bad at swimming, but quite good at singing. 5 Jane is very good at running, and quite good at cycling. 6 Mark is not very good at singing, but quite good at drawing. 7 Jane is not very good at drawing, but quite good at singing. 8 Sue is quite good at singing, and very good at swimming.
- Ellie stayed awake by drinking lots of coffee.
 Paul drank three glasses of water without stopping.
 Charles woke us up by turning the TV on.
 You can find out the meaning of a word by using a dictionary.
 Mike paid for his new house without borrowing any money.
 Helen lost her driving licence by driving too fast, too often.
 Carl did all his homework without asking for any help.
 Teresa cooks all her food without using any salt.

page 134

- 1 1 taking 2 eating 3 shopping 4 driving 5 stopping 6 working
- 2 1 They've just finished playing tennis. 2 All that week, it kept raining. 3 It's just stopped snowing. 4 He's given up smoking. 5 He can't help thinking of/about Annie. 6 They're going shopping. 7 She's practising writing.

page 135

3 1 washing 2 watching 3 working 4 playing 5 wearing 6 studying 7 watching 8 shopping 9 cooking; eating

Suran File

- I was surprised to find a cat in my bed.
 She was wrong to leave her job.
 I've got no money to buy a car.
 I was crazy to give Peter money.
 We were glad to say goodbye to Aunt Emma.
 I was sorry not to have time to phone you.
 I was too tired to work.
 Here are some letters to post.
 I ve got no time to wash the dishes.
 I need something to drink.
- 2 1 D to learn 2 E to watch 3 F to stop 4 B to make 5 C to keep 6 H to pay 7 G to cut 8 J to impress 9 K to catch 10 I to look for

page 137

- 4 1 sorry to say 2 unhappy to think 3 happy not to have 4 pleased to find 5 surprised to find 6 happy to be 7 pleased to see
- They want me to buy a yacht. 2 They want me to buy a bike. 3 They want me to buy a motorboat. 4 They want me to buy a plane.
 They want me to buy a motorbike.

page 138

- 1 1 to work 2 to see 3 smoking. 4 driving 5 to buy 6 to talk 7 sending 8 talking. 9 to come 10 speaking.
- 2 1 Correct. 2 not to have 3 to learn
 4 Correct. 5 by taking 6 smoking
 7 Correct. 8 to go 9 Correct. 10 Correct.
 11 you to pay 12 Correct. 13 to get
 14 eating 15 changing 16 Correct.
 17 to see 18 Correct. 19 not to forget
 20 Correct.
- 3 1 Anna wants Beth to look after the children.
 - 2 Joe wants Jack to lend him money.
 - 3 Peter's mother wants him to clean his room.
 - 4 Sam wants Joe to go shopping.
 - 5 Tom would like Sarah to pass the newspaper.
 - 6 Mike's parents would like him to study medicine.
 - 7 The boss would like Emma to answer the phone.
 - 8 Mary doesn't want Jack to look at her like that.
 - 9 Harry doesn't want Jim to say anything to the police.
 - 10 Maria's mother doesn't want her to fall in love with a pop singer.

page 140

- 1 get (some) money 2 got into 3 got (a long) letter 4 Get out 5 get wet. 6 get cold.
 7 get off 8 get (really) hungry 9 get(ting) tired 10 gets dark
- 2 1 got burnt. 2 getting divorced. 3 got broken 4 get undressed 5 gets lost.
 6 get stolen. 7 get dressed 8 get changed.
 9 get invited 10 got married

page 141

- 1 1 A laugh 2 C wait 3 B ask 4 E belony 5 J listen 6 H Look 7 G think 8 F talks 9 I happened
- 1 believe in; belong to; happen to; laugh at; listen to; look at; talk about; think about; wait for
- 3 1 for 2 at 3 to 4 after 5 for 6 for 7 about 8 to 9 for 10 about 11 into 12 on 13 to 14 in 15 on 16 17 in 18 out of 19 at 20 off

page 142

- 1 1 wake/get 2 go 3 round. 4 on. 5 back6 up! 7 lie 8 Go
- 2 1 up 2 down 3 back

- 3 1 on 2 on 3 down 4 off 5 down
 6 back 7 up 8 look 9 pick 10 give
 11 let 12 fill 13 take 14 Break
- 4 1 Could you turn the TV down? Could you turn it down? 2 You can throw the potatoes away. You can throw them away. 3 Why don't you take your glasses off? Why don't you take them off?
 - 4 Please put that knife down. Please put it down.
 - 5 Shall I fill your glass up? Shall I fill it up?
 - 6 I'll switch the heating on. I'll switch it on.

- 1 I lent my bicycle to Joe yesterday.
 - 2 I often read Lucy stories.
 - 3 Carol teaches maths to small children.
 - 4 Ruth showed the others the photo.
 - 5 Amanda often gives flowers to her mother.
 - 6 Could you buy me a newspaper?
 - 7 I found my parents a hotel room.
 - 8 Pass Mr Andrews this paper.
 - 9 Luke has written Joy a letter.
 - 10 I want to get Peter a good watch.
- 1 Sally gave Fred a book.
 2 Fred gave Annie flowers.
 3 Annie gave Luke a picture.
 4 Luke gave Mary a sweater.
 5 Mary gave Joe a camera.
- 3 1 find 2 Give; give 3 buy

page 145

- 1 has his tyres checked
 2 has his oil changed
 3 has his car repaired
 4 has his shoes cleaned
 5 has his gardening done
 6 has his letters typed
- 2 1 She should have it repaired. 2 He should have them cleaned. 3 They should have it repaired. 4 He should have it cut. 5 They should have it serviced. 6 She should have them checked. 7 He should have it repaired. 8 He should have it checked.

page 146

- 1 1 B 2 D 3 C
- 2 1 Turn 2 go 3 Turn 4 take 5 turn
- 3 1 Hurry up! 2 Be careful. 3 Help!4 Have a good holiday. 5 Sleep well.
 - 6 Don't forget 7 Wait for me! 8 Have some more 9 Follow me 10 Don't worry.
 - 11 Come in; sit down; make yourself at home.

page 147

- 1 Let's not go for a walk. 2 Let's play tennis.
 - 3 Let's play cards. 4 Let's go swimming.
 - 5 Let's not go swimming. 6 Let's go skiing.
 - 7 Let's watch TV. 8 Let's go to France/Paris.

2 1 Athens. 2 to Copenhagen. 3 go to Vienna.
4 'Let's go to Prague.' 5 'Let's go to Warsaw.'
6 'Let's go to Moscow.' 7 'Let's go to Marrakesh.'
8 'Let's go to Istanbul.' 9 'Let's go to Bangkok.'
10 'Let's go to Beijing.' 11 'Let's go to Mexico City.' 12 'Let's go to Rio.'

page 148

- 1 1 up 2 round 3 fill 4 turn 5 on 6 Put 7 up 8 back. 9 Go 10 wake/get
- 1 Could you wash the cups up? Could you wash them up? 2 You can throw those papers away. You can throw them away. 3 Why don't you take off your coat? Why don't you take it off?
 4 You need to fill this form in. You need to fill it in.
 5 Please bring back my bicycle. Please bring it back. 6 Let me fill your glass up. Let me fill it up.
 7 Please put that gun down. Please put it down.
 8 I'll switch on the TV. I'll switch it on.
 9 Can you cut the onions up? Can you cut them up? 10 Pick up your coat. Pick it up.
- 3 1 Alice sent €500 to her sister. 2 Sarah bought the children ice creams. 3 Let's send a postcard to Granny. 4 Ruth showed the others the photo. 5 I gave the secretary some flowers. 6 Can you find me John's address? 7 I found Aunt Patsy a hotel. 8 Take Mrs Lewis these papers. 9 I've given all the information to George. 10 I want to buy my sister a nice present.

page 149

- 4 1 Come 2 worry. 3 Have 4 out! 5 Make 6 Help 7 Sleep 8 Follow 9 Have 10 forget
- 5 1 Pick 2 Hold 3 Put 4 Let 5 fetch
 6 continue 7 throw 8 Get 9 Open
 10 Get 11 Kneel 12 blow 13 Drink
 14 remove 15 Telephone 16 Find

- 1 1 A, B, D 2 E 3 A, D 4 A, C 5 C 6 A 7 B, C 8 C, D 9 A, C 10 A, B, C, D
- 2 1 to 2 at 3 for 4 about 5 for 6 for 7 after 8 9 for 10 on 11 to 12 in 13 to 14 at 15 to 16 17 to 18 –; on 19 about 20 from

- 1 1 a 2 an 3 a 4 a 5 an 6 a 7 an 8 a
- 2 1 an old friend 2 a big apple 3 an unhappy child 4 an early train 5 a rich uncle
 6 an easy job 7 a hard exercise
 8 a European language 9 a small book
- 4 1 an envelope 2 A calculator 3 a torch. 4 a hammer. 5 A knife 6 An alarm clock

- 1 1 children PC; flower SC; love U; meat U; mountains PC; music U; nose SC; oil U; photos PC; piano SC; river SC; snow U; songs PC; table SC; windows PC
- 2 1 2 an 3 -; 4 5 6 a 7 -8 an 9 a 10 -; -
- 3 1 cotton or wool 2 metal, plastic and glass (and perhaps leather) 3 brick, wood, metal and glass (and perhaps stone) 4 cotton or silk or wool 5 wood or metal or glass or plastic (or perhaps stone)
- 4 1 a 2 one 3 a 4 one 5 a 6 one

page 154

- 1 1 the 2 the 3 an 4 a; a 5 the 6 a; the 7 the 8 the 9 The 10 a 11 the 12 the; the
- 2 1 Fa 2 D the 3 B the 4 C the 5 A a

page 155

- 3 1 a 2 a 3 An 4 The 5 the 6 The 7 the 8 a 9 the 10 the 11 the
- 4 1 This is a mouse. It's the smallest animal in the group. 2 This is a monkey. It's the most intelligent animal in the group. 3 This is an eagle. It's the fastest bird in the group. 4 This is a parrot. It's the only blue and yellow bird in the group. 5 This is a pigeon. It's the smallest bird in the group. 6 This is a spider. It's the only creature with eight legs in the group. 7 This is an ant. It's the only creature with six legs in the group. 8 This is a snake. It's the only creature with no legs in the group. 9 This is a frog. It's the only green creature in the group.

page 156

- 1 1 He's a cook. 2 He's a builder. 3 She's a driver. 4 He's a teacher. 5 She's a photographer. 6 She's a dentist. 7 He's a hairdresser. 8 She's a musician. 9 He's a shop assistant.
- 1 A bag is a container. 2 A hammer is a tool.
 3 A piano is an instrument. 4 A bus is a vehicle.
 5 A screwdriver is a tool. 6 A guitar is an instrument. 7 A box is a container.
 8 A hotel is a building.

page 157

- 1 a long neck. 2 big ears. 3 a loud voice.4 a big beard. 5 dark hair.
- 2 A 1 a 2 3 a 4 -B 1 a 2 a 3 - 4 - 5 - 6 a 7 a

page 158

- 1 Books 2 the books 3 English people
 4 The flowers 5 Life 6 the words
 7 The food 8 Water 9 the windows
- 3 1 drivers 2 money 3 understand; understand 4 think 5 think 6 things; things

page 160

- Spanish; Peru. 2 Uncle Eric; Lake Superior.
 Oxford Street; London. 4 Napoleon
 Kilimanjaro; Africa. 6 France; Switzerland or Switzerland; France.
- 1 Himalayas 2 Denmark 3 Japanese
 4 People's Republic of China 5 Trafalgar Square
 6 Mediterranean 7 Ireland 8 United
 Kingdom 9 USA

- 3 1 the 2 the 3 the 4 5 the 6 the 7 8 -
- 4 1 2 3 the 4 the 5 6 the 7 8 the 9 the 10 11 12 the 13 14 15 the 16 17 18 the 19 the 20 the

- 1 lunch; Tuesday. 2 Easter. 3 next 4 winter.
 5 Saturdays. 6 September 7 August 23rd.
 8 1616. 9 Christmas. 10 last
- 2 1 bed 2 university 3 church 4 hospital 5 work; car 6 prison 7 foot 8 home 9 holiday. 10 school.

page 163

- 3 1 G a radio 2 C a garden 3 F a blanket
 4 D a hundred 5 E a million 6 A an
 American passport 7 J a tourist guide
 8 H a stupid idea 9 l a job
- 4 1 Patrick and I work in the same office.
 - 2 We're going to the theatre tonight.
 - 3 My room is at the top of the house.
 - 4 Would you like to live in the country?
 - 5 We usually go to the mountains at Christmas.
 - 6 Joe always sits at the back of the class.
 - 7 Suzie's office is on the right.
 - 8 I would like to live near the sea.
 - 9 Why are you driving in the middle of the road?
 - 10 Please sign your name at the bottom of this paper.

page 164

- 1 1 a 2 the; the 3 an 4 the 5 6 -7 The 8 - 9 - 10 a 11 - 12 the 13 -; - 14 - 15 the 16 the 17 - 18 -19 - 20 -; -
- 2 1 x 2 x 3 x 4 \ 5 x 6 x 7 \ 8 x 9 \ 10 x
- 3 COUNTABLE: diamond; holiday; price; photo; shop UNCOUNTABLE: coffee; hair; snow; information; music

page 165

4 1 - 2 - 3 - 4 a 5 a 6 the 7 the 8 the 9 a 10 - 11 a 12 a 13 the 14 the 15 the 16 a 17 The 18 the 19 the 20 the 21 a 22 the 23 the 24 The 25 the

page 166

- 1 1 an 2 a 3 an 4 a 5 a 6 an 7 a 8 an 9 a 10 an
- 2 1 2 a 3 -; 4 5 -; 6 a 7 8 a 9 a 10 -; -
- 3 1 2 3 4 the 5 6 the; the 7 - 8 an 9 the 10 the 11 - 12 -13 the 14 a; the 15 - 16 - 17 a 18 -; - 19 -; - 20 a
- 1 to Professor Anderson 2 Correct.
 3 the Czech Republic 4 Correct. 5 Correct.
 6 Correct. 7 I'll see you next Tuesday.
 8 a passport 9 a doctor 10 Correct.

page 168

- 1 1 these 2 This 3 These 4 These 5 this
- 2 1 those 2 those 3 that 4 Those 5 that
- 3 (possible answers)
 This plate is blue. That plate is white. These glasses are green. Those glasses are red. These spoons are black. That spoon is silver. This saucer is blue. Those saucers are white. This bowl is green. That bowl is red.

 (Other answers are possible.)

page 169

- 4 1 I'm enjoying 2 will be 3 Those 4 was 5 that 6 this 7 this 8 was 9 that 10 this
- 5 1 that 2 that 3 This 4 those 5 this 6 these 7 This 8 That 9 this 10 those 11 this 12 that 13 these 14 those 15 that 16 these 17 this 18 those 19 this 20 those

- 1 1 any 2 any 3 some 4 some 5 any 6 some 7 any 8 any 9 any
- 1 any more to drink. 2 any foreign languages.
 3 any games 4 any sleep 5 any English newspapers

3 1 Could I have some coffee? 2 Would you like some bread? 3 Would you like some rice?
4 Could I have some tomatoes? 5 Would you like some more potatoes? 6 Could I have some more milk?

page 171

- 4 1 E 2 D 3 B 4 A 5 C 6 F
- 5 1 buy any. 2 some tomorrow. 3 some (in front of) you. 4 want any. 5 any good6 put some
- 6 1 wasn't 2 didn't do 3 didn't have 4 didn't ask 5 didn't find

page 172

- 1 Nothing. 2 anywhere. 3 someone
 4 anything 5 everywhere. 6 No one/Nobody
 7 Nowhere 8 something. 9 Everyone/
 Everybody 10 anybody 11 Everything
 12 somewhere
- 2 1 anybody/anyone 2 nowhere3 anything. 4 Nobody/No one 5 nothing.6 everything
- 3 1 knows 2 happens 3 is 4 ls 5 Has 6 agrees
- 4 1 x 2 \ 3 \ 4 x 5 x 6 x 7 \ 8 x 9 x 10 x

page 173

- 1 1 much 2 much 3 many 4 many 5 much 6 much 7 many 8 many 9 much 10 many 11 many 12 much 13 many 14 much 15 much
- 2 1 How many symphonies did Beethoven write?
 - 2 How many cents are there in a dollar?
 - 3 How many kilometres are there in a mile?
 - 4 How many states are there in the USA?
 - 5 How much blood is there in a person's body?
 - 6 How much air do we breathe every minute?
 - 7 How many points do you get for a try in rugby union?
 - 8 How much food does an elephant eat every day?

page 174

- 1 1 have 2 are 3 has 4 a lot 5 work 6 A lot 7 need 8 is
- 2 1 plenty of food 2 plenty of time
 - 3 plenty of patience 4 plenty of warm clothes
 - 5 plenty of eggs 6 plenty of water
 - 7 plenty of ideas

page 175

- 1 1 a little 2 a few 3 a few 4 a little 5 a few 6 a little 7 a few 8 a little 9 a little 10 a few
- 2 1 a little 2 little 3 few 4 a few 5 a few 6 few 7 few 8 A little
- 3 1 There was only a little room on the bus. or There wasn't much room on the bus.
 - 2 Only a few people learn foreign languages perfectly. OR Not many people learn foreign languages perfectly.
 - 3 She only has a few friends. on She doesn't have many friends.
 - 4 We only get a little rain here in summer. on We don't get much rain here in summer.
 - 5 This car only uses a little petrol. on This car doesn't use much petrol.
 - 6 There are only a few flowers in the garden. or There aren't many flowers in the garden.
 - 7 Our town only gets a few tourists. OR Our town doesn't get many tourists.
 - 8 We only have a little time to catch the train. or We don't have much time to catch the train.

- 1 1 not enough food 2 not enough strings3 not enough seats 4 not enough water
- 1 enough time 2 enough girls. 3 enough chairs. 4 enough work. 5 enough money6 enough salt
- 3 1 not loud enough 2 not comfortable enough
 - 3 not bright enough 4 not easy enough
 - 5 not clear enough 6 not fresh enough
 - 7 not deep enough

4 1 warm enough 2 early enough 3 enough beds 4 often enough 5 quiet enough 6 enough children 7 enough milk 8 enough help 9 sweet enough 10 young enough

page 177

- 1 1 too old 2 too much trouble 3 too many problems 4 too much money 5 too ill 6 too much work 7 too hot 8 too many students 9 too many cars 10 too difficult
- 2 1 too low 2 too short 3 too light
 4 too soft 5 not wide enough 6 not cheap
 enough 7 not wet enough 8 not thin enough
- 1 too many (pairs of) socks 2 enough (pairs of) boots 3 too many pocket torches 4 not enough (tubes of) suncream 5 too many waterproof jackets 6 too many pairs of sunglasses 7 too much bread 8 too much cheese 9 not enough water 10 not enough oranges 11 not enough chocolate 12 enough soap 13 too many toothbrushes (Other answers are possible.)

page 178

- The films all start at 7 o'clock.
 All our secretaries speak Arabic.
 All the children went home.
 These coats all cost the same.
 Languages all have grammar.
 All the people voted for the Radical Conservatives.
 My friends all live in London.
 All these houses need repairs.
 Those shops all belong to the same family.
 All children need love.
- 2 1 The offices all close at weekends. 2 The lessons will all start on Tuesday. 3 Those children can all swim. 4 Our windows are all dirty. 5 Sorry, the tickets have all gone.
 6 We all went to New York for Christmas.
 7 The shops will all be open tomorrow.
 8 We all stopped for lunch at 12.30.
 9 These watches are all too expensive.
 10 The lights have all gone out.

page 179

- Every animal breathes air. 2 She's read every book in the library. 3 I paid every bill. 4 Every computer is working today. 5 Every language has verbs. 6 Every London train stops at Reading. 7 I've written to every customer.
 Every glass is dirty. 9 Every child can be difficult. 10 Every road was closed.
- 2 1 No. 2 Yes.... to every letter. 3 No. 4 No. 5 No. 6 Yes. Every house...

page 180

- 1 1 Both 2 both 3 either; both 4 Both; neither
 - 5 either 6 both 7 Either 8 either; both
 - 9 Either 10 Both; neither 11 both 12 either
- 2 1 both sides 2 Both (her) parents
 - 3 both directions. 4 Both teams
 - 5 both knees 6 both (my) earrings
 - 7 both ends 8 both (of his) socks.
 - 9 eyes 10 both sexes.

page 181

- 1 not much of the milk 2 any of my friends
 3 enough of that meat 4 some of the big
 plates 5 a few of her ideas 6 most of these
 mistakes 7 too many of the students
 8 more of those potatoes 9 not much of my
 money 10 not enough of his work
- 2 1 2 of 3 of 4 of 5 6 7 -8 of 9 of 10 - 11 -; - 12 of
- 3 1 Most 2 most of the 3 Most of the 4 Most 5 Most 6 most of the 7 Most 8 most 9 most of the 10 most

- 1 1 this 2 that 3 those 4 This 5 these 6 anything 7 any 8 some 9 Nothing. 10 without
- 2 1 every 2 each/either 3 everything. 4 all 5 every 6 neither 7 either 8 both 9 everybody 10 all

- 3 1 a little 2 few 3 a few 4 a few 5 little 6 lots of 7 many 8 think 9 too 10 big enough
- 4 1 Most of 2 Most 3 A few of 4 any 5 some of 6 most of; all of 7 enough 8 too many 9 A lot. 10 many of

- 5 1 f 2 b 3 j 4 c5 i 6 d 7 g 8 h 9 e 10 a
- 6 half of us; most of the rest; few; a lot; most of us; half; some of us; how many; a lot; all of us

page 184

- 1 He spoke fast, but I understood everything.
 - 2 I'm hungry, but there isn't anything / there's nothing to eat.
 - 3 She has a lot of / plenty of money.
 - 4 A lot of us were at the party last night.
 - 5 Most people think I'm right.
 - 6 He was carrying a heavy bag in each hand.
 - 7 Everything is very difficult.
 - 8 I like every kind / all kinds of music.
 - 9 I think you're driving too fast.
 - 10 If everybody is ready, we can go.
- 2 1 this 2 That 3 those 4 that 5 This 6 somebody 7 I need 8 some 9 anything 10 anywhere
- 3 1 all 2 Is 3 Both 4 each 5 every 6 a little 7 little 8 a little 9 a few 10 A little. 11 lots of 12 many 13 too many 14 much 15 is 16 each 17 everything 18 every 19 neither 20 something

page 186

- 1 1 her 2 us 3 him 4 they 5 her 6 them 7 her; she
- 2 1 He 2 them 3 him 4 They 5 him 6 She
- 3 1 They 2 It 3 It 4 them 5 it 6 it 7 them. 8 they

page 187

- 1 He has moved to London.
 2 They are on that chair.
 3 I like them.
 4 She is going to study medicine.
 5 No, it is difficult.
 6 I put it in the garage.
 7 I/We play tennis.
 8 It is beautiful.
- 6 1 It's warm. 2 It's windy. 3 It's snowing.
 4 It's hot. 5 It's raining. 6 It's sunny.
 7 It's cloudy. 8 It's cold.

page 188

1 1 her 2 his 3 Whose 4 its 5 my 6 their 7 his 8 her 9 your 10 his 11 its 12 her

page 189

- 2 1 James sold his bike to Carlos.
 - 2 Carlos sold his dog to Sara.
 - 3 Sara sold her house to Pat and Sam.
 - 4 Pat and Sam sold their motorbike to Harry.
 - 5 Harry sold his piano to Alice.
 - 6 Alice sold her coat to Michael.
 - 7 Michael sold his camera to Helen.
 - 8 Helen sold her guitar to Marilyn.
 - 9 Marilyn sold her hair dryer to Tom.
 - 10 Tom sold his dictionary to Amy.
- 3 1 their son Joe 2 their daughter Emma
 - 3 their camper van. 4 her brother Frank
 - 5 her sister Lucy 6 his sister Louise
 - 7 his brother Simon 8 their friend Pete

- 1 theirs. 2 looks better than yours.
 3 Yours looks terrible. 4 That dog looks like ours. 5 That car's not hers. 6 This coat isn't mine. 7 My cooking is better than his.
 8 Is this bike yours?
- 1 The towel is not theirs. 2 The razor is his.
 3 The red toothbrush is his. 4 The green toothbrush is hers. 5 The toothpaste is theirs.
 6 The make-up is hers. 7 The soap is hers.
 8 The green washcloth is hers. 9 The hair dryer is hers. 10 The dressing-gown is his. 11 The shampoo is theirs.

- 1 1 him 2 herself 3 themselves 4 yourselves 5 him
- 2 1 myself 2 'Himself.' 3 yourself. 4 ourselves 5 herself 6 yourselves 7 themselves.
- 1 yourself 2 themselves. 3 myself.4 ourselves 5 herself.
- 4 1 each other 2 themselves. 3 each other 4 yourselves 5 each other

page 192

- 1 Column 2: us, NOT our Column 3: her, not hers Column 4: mine, NOT mines Column 5: themselves, NOT theirselves
- 1 his wife 2 mine 3 ours 4 its 5 'I like it.' 6 It's five miles 7 It's Tuesday. 8 'It's over there.' 9 They were 10 it was wonderful 11 them 12 'It was me.' 13 That's her 14 It is cold 15 I have 16 her leg 17 It is 18 Is that my coat? 19 Whose 20 'It's me.'
- 3 1 her. 2 herself. 3 each other.

page 193

- 4 1 myself. 2 each other 3 himself 4 me; myself. 5 each other 6 themselves 7 you; yourself. 8 yourselves. 9 each other. 10 yourselves
- 5 1 myself 2 yourself 3 himself 4 myself 5 ourselves 6 yourself
- 6 1 his 2 each other 3 they 4 her 5 she 6 they 7 They 8 it's 9 Hers 10 their 11 his 12 she's 13 him 14 her 15 herself. 16 them 17 they're 18 each other 19 I 20 they

page 194

1

1	me	my	mine	myself
you	you	your	yours	yourself
he	him	his	his	himself
she	her	her	hers	herself
it	it	its	-	itself
we	us	our	ours	ourselves
you	you	your	yours	yourselves
they	them	their	theirs	themselves

- 1 I like it 2 It's 20 miles 3 It's Friday.
 4 his sister 5 theirs 6 their children
 7 Whose 8 each other 9 enjoyed myself
 10 teaching myself 11 Where's my bike?
 12 It is 13 his arm 14 I have 15 made myself comfortable
- 1 him; me. 2 her; herself. 3 each other
 4 ourselves. 5 myself. 6 each other.
 7 yourself; you 8 me; yourself. 9 me.
 10 her 11 me; me; myself 12 her 13 his
 14 myself; they 15 her

page 196

- 1 + -s: cats, chairs, gardens, hotels, planes, ships, tables, times, trees
 + -ɛs: boxes, brushes, churches, classes, dresses, gases, glasses, watches, wishes
- 2 1 +-s: guys, holidays, keys, ways +-ss: copies, countries. families, parties
- 3 1 children 2 students 3 want 4 cities 5 wives 6 do 7 teeth 8 watches 9 babies 10 matches 11 guys 12 work 13 people

- 1 1 class ✓ club ✓ Communist Party ✓ company ✓ crowd ✓ idea ✗ lunch ✗ question ✗ room ✗ school ✓ train ✗
- 2 1 D say 2 A want 3 B play 4 C haven't 5 G have 6 F are
- 3 1 dark glasses. 2 shorts. 3 scissors4 black trousers 5 silk pyjamas. 6 tights

- 1 love, meat, music, oil, salt, snow, sugar, wool
- 2 some bread; a cheque; some baggage; a fridge; some furniture; a handbag; a holiday; some knowledge; some luck; a newspaper; a problem; a station; some travel; some work
- 3 1 baggage 2 travel. 3 spaghetti 4 news 5 advice 6 furniture 7 work 8 hair
- 4 1 a job 2 a journey 3 a piece of advice 4 a piece of information 5 a piece of news

page 199

- 1 a glass 2 glass 3 chocolate 4 a chocolate
 5 paper 6 a paper 7 an iron 8 iron
 9 a chicken 10 chicken
- 6 1 bottle 2 jug 3 box 4 cup 5 mug 6 jar 7 can 8 bag 9 glass 10 packet

page 200

1 1 this one. 2 a new one. 3 another one. 4 last one 5 small one. 6 blue ones.

page 201

- 1 Alice and John's house. 2 artists' ideas
 3 my dog's ears 4 those dogs' ears 5 those
 men's faces 6 his girlfriend's piano 7 their
 grandchild's birthday 8 their grandchildren's
 school 9 ladies' hats 10 my aunt and uncle's
 shop 11 Patrick's books 12 a photographer's
 job 13 our postman's cat 14 postmen's
 uniforms 15 Joyce's pen 16 the thief's bag
 17 the thieves' car 18 that woman's brother
 19 most women's desks 20 your mum and
 dad's bedroom
- 1 That big building is a girls' school.
 2 Is this your mother's office?
 3 May I speak to the boss's secretary?
 4 What's Jane and Peter's address?
 5 This is a picture of my grandparents' wedding.
 6 Do you know John's new girlfriend?
 7 She writes for a women's magazine.
 8 Is that Robert's car?
 9 Let me have Ruth and Jack's phone number.
 10 What's your wife's job?

- 3 1 My sister's secretary's office.
 - 2 Jane's children's bicycles.
 - 3 Rob's family's holiday flat.
 - 4 Olivia's boyfriend's cat.
 - 5 The Prime Minister's wife's problem.
 - 6 Luke's uncle's farm.
 - 7 Mr Patterson's doctor's car.
 - 8 The President's niece's business.
 - 9 Charlotte's boss's wife.
 - 10 The Director's husband's friend's mother's cousin.

page 202

- 1 1 Ann's house 2 the doctors' house
 - 3 Oliver and Carla's book 4 the teacher's car
 - 5 the girls' money 6 Susan's money
- 1 The builder's car is parked in front of Anna's house.
 2 Do you know the tall woman's address?
 3 The children's bedtime is eight o'clock.
 4 Alice and Pat's brothers are all in the army.
- 1 What's your brother's name? What's the name of that book? 2 Is there anything in the children's pockets? Is there anything in the pockets of that coat? 3 You can see the church from Emma's window. You can see the church from the window of the living room. 4 Why are John's arms so dirty? Why are the arms of your chair so dirty?

page 203

- 4 1 a year's course 2 a week's holiday 3 a day's journey 4 an hour's drive 5 a minute's wait
- 5 1 The handbag is probably Aunt Matilda's.
 - 2 The gun is probably Texas Joe's.
 - 3 The crown is probably Queen Lobelia's.
 - 4 The big shoes are probably Oleg's.
 - 5 The document case is probably Mr Brown's.

- 1 business address, email address, home address
 - 2 aspirin bottle, milk bottle, perfume bottle
 - 3 jazz singer, opera singer, pop singer
 - 4 garden wall, prison wall (or kitchen wall)
 - 5 army uniform, police uniform, prison uniform
 - 6 garden chair, kitchen chair

- 1 F office building 2 D dog food 3 A computer engineer 4 B language school
 5 E baby clothes 6 G knife drawer
- 1 a metal box 2 chocolate cakes 3 a plastic fork 4 vegetable soup 5 a leather jacket
 6 cotton shirts 7 a paper plate 8 tomato salad 9 a stone wall

- 4 1 an office manager 2 a coffee maker 3 a coffee drinker 4 an animal lover 5 floor cleaner 6 a tennis player 7 a letter opener 8 a cigar smoker 9 a mountain climber
- 5 1 telephone book 2 teacher's book
 3 Elizabeth's journey 4 train journey 5 aunt's home 6 holiday home 7 brother's interview
 8 job interview

page 206

- 1 1 some 2 some 3 some 4 some 5 a 6 some 7 some 8 a 9 a 10 some
- 2 (possible answers) trousers, jeans, tights, shorts, pants, pyjamas, glasses, scissors
- 3 1 ✓ 2 ✓ 3 ✓ 4 × 5 × 6 ✓ 7 ✓ 8 ✓ 9 × 10 ✓
- 1 That's Peter's house 2 children's 3 boys'
 4 father's 5 boss's secretary or secretary's boss
 6 Jane and Peter's 7 parents' 8 teacher's
 9 John's 10 men's
- 5 1 a shoe shop 2 orange juice 3 a leather jacket 4 a train driver 5 a coffee table 6 a window cleaner 7 news readers
 8 a computer magazine 9 a street market
 10 a gold watch

page 207

6 1 bus driver 2 a mountain climber 3 a tennis player 4 a maths teacher 5 a dog trainer 6 a glass blower 7 a road cleaner 8 a butterfly collector 9 a computer programmer 10 a bird watcher

7 1 clothes shops 2 family business 3 Joe's wife 4 sons' 5 daughter's 6 plastic tables and chairs 7 have 8 Joe's 9 bus drivers 10 chocolate cake

page 208

- 1 foxes, journeys, matches, books, tables, feet, people, knives, mice, dogs, days, families, women, leaves, men, children, cars, wives, babies
- 2 1 X 2 X 3 ideas 4 ducks 5 X 6 journeys 7 X 8 governments 9 classes 10 X
- 1 tennis player 2 are 3 an hour's sleep
 4 women's 5 countries 6 A large one
 7 information 8 are 9 flower shop
 10 phone book
- 4 1 milk chocolate 2 lives 3 book shops
 4 were the people on was the person 5 sister's
 son 6 the blue ones 7 l'd like one 8 a
 football player 9 journeys 10 street market
 11 my brother's 12 an animal doctor
 13 Anna's mother 14 silver earrings
 15 orange juice 16 cities 17 door of the
 house 18 There's Peter's house. 19 Do you
 have Emma's address? 20 a big job

page 210

- 1 1 a beautiful little girl 2 in a red coat
 3 was walking through a dark forest 4 with a
 big bag 5 of wonderful red apples 6 to see
 her old grandmother 7 Under a tall green tree
 8 she saw a big bad wolf 9 with long white
 teeth
- 2 1 'Good morning, little girl,' said 2 the big bad wolf. 3 'Where are you going 4 with that heavy bag 5 on this fine day?' 6 'I'm going to see my old grandmother,' 7 said the little girl. 8 'She lives in a small house 9 near the new supermarket.'
- 3 1 friendly 2 little 3 stupid. 4 big

page 211

4 1 beautiful and intelligent 2 cold, hungry and tired

- 5 1 'That car looks expensive.' 2 'Jane seems happy.' 3 'I feel ill and tired.' 4 It gets dark very early here in winter. 5 My parents are getting old.
- 1 'The train is late.' 2 'He looks Australian.'
 3 'Your hair looks beautiful.' 4 My memory is getting very bad.' 5 I want to become rich and famous.

- 1 1 slow 2 interestingly 3 beautifully 4 easy 5 perfect 6 badly 7 happy 8 angry 9 strong 10 quietly
- 1 finally 2 sincerely 3 loudly 4 thirstily
 5 probably 6 usually 7 nicely
 8 wonderfully 9 coldly 10 unhappily
 11 comfortably

page 213

- 1 I read the letter carefully/slowly/yesterday.
 - 2 I bought a computer yesterday.
 - 3 Write your name carefully/clearly.
 - 4 You must see the doctor tomorrow.
 - 5 He speaks four languages correctly/perfectly.
 - 6 You didn't write the address clearly/correctly.
 - 7 I don't like skiing much/slowly.
 - 8 Please speak clearly and slowly.
- 3 1 extremely/terribly 2 completely
 - 3 beautifully/very well 4 extremely/terribly
 - 5 beautifully/very well 6 nearly
 - 7 badly/terribly 8 extremely/terribly

page 214

1 Jake always eats fish. He even eats fish for breakfast. 2 Ann often plays tennis, but she only plays in the evenings. 3 Edward usually puts tomato sauce on everything. He probably puts it on ice cream. 4 I sometimes forget names. I never forget faces. 5 Jane hardly ever gets angry, and she never shouts at people. 6 I always get to the station on time, and the train is always late. 7 I will definitely phone you tomorrow, and I will probably write next week. 8 I usually drink tea. I sometimes drink coffee. 9 Your sister is certainly a good singer. She is also a very interesting person. 10 My mother is still asleep. I think she is probably ill.

2 1 Do you often play cards? 2 Have you ever been to Tibet? 3 Are you always happy?
4 Does the boss ever take a holiday? 5 Do you usually eat in restaurants? 6 Is Barbara still ill?

page 215

- 3 (possible answers)
 Eva never plays football. Tom plays football three times a week. Eva plays tennis once a week. Tom hardly ever plays tennis. Eva often goes skiing. Tom never goes skiing. Eva goes to the theatre every week. Tom goes to the theatre two or three times a year. Eva goes to the cinema three or four times a year. Tom goes to the cinema twice a month. Eva never goes to concerts. Tom goes to concerts every week.

 (Other answers are possible.)
- 4 go climbing 1 go swimming 8 go sailing 4 go wind-surfing 12 go skiing 10 go skating 11 go fishing 3 go shopping 7 go to the opera 9 go to the theatre 2 go to concerts 5

page 216

- 1 1 boring 2 bored 3 interested 4 interesting
- 2 1 annoying 2 frightened; frightening3 exciting; excited 4 surprising; surprised

page 217

- 1 1 well. 2 early 3 hard 4 weekly 5 hardly
- 2 1 Daily 2 lately 3 fast 4 hardly 5 early 6 well 7 late 8 weekly 9 hard 10 lately
- 3 1 X 2 / 3 X 4 X 5 /

page 218

He was driving a fast red car. 2 She speaks perfect Chinese. 3 She speaks Chinese perfectly. 4 I lost my keys yesterday.
 I've got a very important meeting tomorrow.
 Anna read Peter's letter slowly. 7 Tim plays the piano brilliantly. 8 Lucy is terribly unhappy.
 They make very good ice cream here.
 She's been happily unmarried for 15 years.

- 2 1 terrible 2 slowly 3 hard 4 friendly
 5 badly 6 unhappy 7 extremely; late
 8 carefully 9 late 10 completely
 11 beautiful 12 hard 13 unclearly
 14 perfect 15 well
- 4 careful; extremely

- 1 interesting films 2 a good cheap restaurant
 3 and good-looking 4 interested
 5 I very much like or I like ... very much.
 6 'The poor girl/woman!' or 'Poor Emma!'
 7 terribly 8 my glasses yesterday. 9 happily
 10 have often thought 11 difficult
 12 in a friendly way/voice 13 Arabic very well.
 14 beautiful 15 fast 16 carefully 17 perfect
 18 is always 19 usually speak 20 hard
- 6 1 fast 2 daily 3 hard 4 late 5 hardly 6 friendly 7 silly 8 lonely.
- 7 1 a light/coffee 2 water 3 holidays
 4 hair, skin 5 a light 6 a bed, water
 7 hair, skin 8 milk 9 apples 10 children

page 220

- 1 1 really, completely, possibly, happily, nicely, easily, beautifully, probably, usually, incredibly, unhappily, rightly, sincerely, hungrily, carefully, perfectly, warmly, angrily, comprehensibly, slowly
- 2 1 I saw a good film yesterday. 2 Andy can definitely help you. 3 You speak Russian very well. 4 She never smiles. 5 Alice had some really interesting ideas. 6 They sell very good clothes here. 7 I have never been to Norway. 8 Karl plays the violin very badly. 9 I have already paid. 10 He was wearing a new blue suit. 11 We often see Annie and Seb. 12 Emma read the report slowly. 13 Judy and Simon are always late. 14 You are probably right. 15 I hardly ever go to the cinema.
- 3 1 x 2 x 3 √ 4 √ 5 x 6 √ 7 x 8 √ 9 x 10 x 11 √ 12 √ 13 x 14 x 15 x

4 1 and stupid-looking 2 are usually 3 bored 4 will never 5 always listen 6 'The poor girl/ woman!' or 'Poor Jenny!' 7 have often been 8 terribly 9 slowly 10 is already 11 You never tell me 12 beautiful 13 has probably 14 fast 15 slowly

page 222

- 1 greener, greenest 2 safer, safest 3 richer, richest 4 smaller, smallest 5 stranger, strangest 6 finer, finest 7 higher, highest 8 wider, widest 9 nearer, nearest 10 whiter, whitest
- 1 bigger, biggest 2 hotter, hottest
 3 newer, newest 4 wetter, wettest
 5 slimmer, slimmest
- 1 lazier, laziest 2 hungrier, hungriest
 3 sleepier, sleepiest 4 angrier, angriest
 5 dirtier, dirtiest
- 1 more careful, most careful 2 more beautiful, most beautiful 3 more intelligent, most intelligent 4 more dangerous, most dangerous 5 more important, most important 6 more boring, most boring 7 more interested, most interested
- 5 1 farther/further 2 better 3 worse.

page 223

- 1 1 the nicest 2 the best 3 more expensive 4 more dangerous 5 the most dangerous
 - 6 bigger 7 the fastest 8 most
- 2 1 shorter 2 the most intelligent 3 quieter
 - 4 the coldest 5 louder 6 the biggest
 - 7 more intelligent 8 the most boring

page 224

Dogs are friendlier than cats. 2 Dogs are more intelligent than cats. 3 Train travel is cheaper than air travel. 4 Air travel is faster than train travel. 5 The Sahara is hotter than the Himalayas. 6 The Himalayas are colder than the Sahara. 7 English is easier than Chinese.
 Chinese is more difficult than
 English. 9 Canada is bigger than Ireland.
 Ireland is smaller than Canada.

1 The Amazon is longer than all the other rivers in South America. 2 Blue whales are heavier than all the other whales. 3 Mont Blanc is higher than all the other mountains in the Alps. 4 Cheetahs are faster than all the other big cats. 5 The Atacama desert is drier than all the other deserts. 6 Redwoods are taller than all the other trees.

page 225

- 1 is more careful than him. / is more careful than he is.
 2 hungrier than me. / hungrier than I am.
 3 shorter than you. / shorter than you are.
 4 are more excited than us. / are more excited than we are.
 5 is more beautiful than her. / is more beautiful than she is.
- 1 Mark is a bit / a little taller than Simon.
 2 Simon is a bit / a little older than
 Mark. 3 Mark is a bit / a little younger than
 Simon. 4 Mark is a lot / much richer than
 Simon. 5 Mark's car is a lot / much faster
 than Simon's car. 6 Simon's car is a lot /
 much slower than Mark's car. 7 Mark's car is
 a bit / a little more comfortable than Simon's
 car. 8 Simon's car is a lot / much quieter than
 Mark's car. 9 Mark's car is a lot / much noisier
 than Simon's car.

page 226

- 1 1 F n 2 E q 3 A r 4 C m 5 B p 6 J s 7 G u 8 I t 9 H v
- 2 1 In the 1970s, the Beatles were the richest musicians in the world. 2 Eric says that Eleanor is the best singer in the group. 3 When I was a child, my father was the tallest man in our town. 4 In this country, February is the coldest month of the year. 5 Who is the oldest of your three aunts? 6 Helen is very intelligent, but she is the quietest person in my class. 7 Which is the best of these three bikes? 8 Which is the biggest city in Argentina?

page 227

- 1 Lee talks to people more politely than Ben.
 - 2 Liam works more carefully than John.
 - 3 Simon goes swimming more often than Karen.
 - 4 My car runs more quietly than my sister's car.
 - 5 Annie talks more slowly than Rob.
 - 6 Olivia thinks more clearly than most people.
 - 7 Jack dresses more expensively than me.
 - 8 I live more cheaply than my friends.
- 2 1 earlier. 2 later. 3 more. 4 nearer 5 less. 6 faster. 7 higher. 8 longer.

page 228

- Picture A is Jenny. Picture B is Cassie.
 Cassie is not as slim as Jenny. 2 Cassie is not as tall as Jenny. 3 Jenny's skirt is not as long as Cassie's. 4 Cassie's bag is not as big as Jenny's.
 Jenny's coat is not as heavy as Cassie's.
 Cassie's glass is not as big as Jenny's.
- 2 1 The other doctor isn't as nice as you. The other doctor isn't as nice as you are. 2 His boss isn't as interesting as him. His boss isn't as interesting as he is. 3 My mother isn't as slim as me. My mother isn't as slim as I am. 4 The Browns aren't as careful as us. The Browns aren't as careful as we are.

page 229

4 1 Eric has twice as many cousins as Tony.
2 Ben eats three times as many sandwiches as Jo. 3 Helen has nearly as many computer games as Adrian. 4 Chris drinks twice as much coffee as Liz. 5 Mike has just as many books as David. 6 Rebecca doesn't have nearly as much free time as Fred.

- 1 1 as; as 2 most; in 3 than 4 the; in 5 better; best 6 more 7 as; as 8 than 9 more; am. 10 than; less
- 1 in the world 2 than 3 most 4 more slowly 5 most 6 than me 7 as cold as ice
 8 than his wife 9 higher 10 worst
 11 most intelligent 12 happier 13 in
 14 of 15 the best

3 1 B is faster than C. 2 A is not as fast as B.
3 C is not as fast as B. 4 B is the fastest.
5 C is more expensive than A. 6 A is not as expensive as B. 7 B is the most expensive.
8 B is not as big as C. 9 C is bigger than A.
10 C is the biggest.

page 231

- 4 1 more than a year and less than a century
 - 2 more than a week and less than a year
 - 3 more than a day and less than a month
 - 4 more than a minute and less than a day
 - 5 more than an hour and less than a week
 - 6 more than a month and less than a decade
- 5 1 John 2 Tom 3 Hannah
- 6 than

page 232

- 1 1 more interesting, most interesting 2 thinner, thinnest 3 cheaper, cheapest 4 easier, easiest 5 worse, worst 6 more beautiful, most beautiful 7 lazier, laziest 8 farther/further, farthest/furthest 9 better, best 10 older, oldest 11 fatter, fattest 12 happier, happiest 13 later, latest 14 hotter, hottest 15 slower, slowest 16 bigger, biggest 17 more expensive, most expensive 18 dirtier, dirtiest 19 more important, most important 20 stronger, strongest
- 2 1 as; as 2 than 3 that 4 than 5 than 6 as 7 that 8 than 9 as 10 than
- 3 1 than; more 2 am. 3 earlier; earliest 4 more 5 the; in 6 As; as 7 most; in 8 as; as 9 than 10 worse; worst.
- 4 1 in 2 worst 3 most 4 than 5 more quickly 6 as hard as stones 7 bigger 8 most beautiful 9 of 10 the worst

page 234

1 1 so 2 although 3 but 4 and 5 while 6 because 7 until 8 while 9 or 10 as soon as 1 We'll be glad when this job is finished. 2 I'll be very angry if you do that again. 3 I'd like to talk to you before you go home. 4 Sue watched TV until John came home. 5 We'll see you again after we come back from holiday. 6 I like her, although she's a difficult person. 7 Henry didn't like working in a bank, so he changed his job. 8 They think they can do what they like because they're rich. 9 I want to stop working before I'm 50. 10 You look beautiful when you're smiling.

page 235

- 1 I put on two sweaters because it was very cold. Because it was very cold, I put on two sweaters.
 - 2 I'm going to work in Australia when I leave school. When I leave school, I'm going to work in Australia.
 - 3 I go and see Felix if I want to talk to somebody. If I want to talk to somebody, I go and see Felix.
 - 4 Ann made coffee while Bill fried some eggs. While Bill fried some eggs, Ann made coffee.
 - 5 I was interested in the conversation, although I didn't understand everything. Although I didn't understand everything, I was interested in the conversation.
 - 6 We went to a restaurant because there was no food in the house. Because there was no food in the house, we went to a restaurant.
 - 7 We'll have a big party when John comes home. When John comes home, we'll have a big party.
 - 8 I stayed with friends while my parents were travelling. While my parents were travelling, I stayed with friends.
 - 9 I go for long walks at the weekend if the weather's fine. If the weather's fine, I go for long walks at the weekend.
 - 10 Come and see us as soon as you arrive in Scotland. As soon as you arrive in Scotland, come and see us.

- 1 1 hear 2 make 3 leaves 4 write 5 get 6 am 7 stops. 8 go 9 arrive 10 finishes.
- 2 1 finds or gets 2 travels 3 will help 4 starts 5 will tell 6 look after 7 will look 8 stops 9 come 10 will get

- 1 Because the rooms were dirty, I changed my hotel. I changed my hotel because the rooms were dirty. The rooms were dirty, so I changed my hotel.
 - 2 Because the taxi was late, we missed the train. We missed the train because the taxi was late. The taxi was late, so we missed the train.
 - 3 Because I didn't like the film, I walked out of the cinema. I walked out of the cinema because I didn't like the film. I didn't like the film, so I walked out of the cinema.
- 2 1 Although I felt ill, I went on working. I went on working, although I felt ill. I felt ill, but I went on working.
 - 2 Although she was very kind, I didn't like her. I didn't like her, although she was very kind. She was very kind, but I didn't like her.
 - 3 Although he's a big man, he doesn't eat much. He doesn't eat much, although he's a big man. He's a big man, but he doesn't eat much.

- 1 My company has offices in London, Tokyo, New York and Cairo. 2 I've invited Paul, Alexandra, Eric, Luke and Janet. 3 I'll be here on Tuesday, Thursday, Friday and Sunday. 4 She's got five cats, two dogs, a horse and a rabbit. 5 He plays golf, rugby, hockey and badminton. 6 She addressed, stamped and posted the letter.
- 2 1 She has painted the kitchen, (the) living room and (the) dining room. 2 Bob was wearing a pink shirt, blue jeans and white trainers. 3 Can you give me a knife, fork and spoon, please? 4 Many people speak English in India, Singapore and South Africa. 5 I've written and posted six letters this morning.

page 239

- 1 1 I think that she's either Scottish or Irish.
 - 2 I'd like to work with either animals or children.
 - 3 He did well in both mathematics and history.
 - 4 This car is neither fast nor comfortable.
 - 5 She neither looked at me nor said anything.
 - 6 I've got problems both at home and in my job.
 - 7 You can either stay here or go home.
 - 8 I like both (the) theatre and (the) cinema.
 - 9 She speaks neither English nor French.
 - 10 I don't understand either politics or economics.

page 240

- 1 1 will have; go 2 will wait; arrives 3 come; will be 4 will be; goes 5 get; will cook 6 will send; receive 7 will be; are 8 go; will take 9 stops; will go 10 will have; gets up.
- 2 1 Because the teacher was ill, the children had a holiday. The children had a holiday because the teacher was ill.
 - 2 When I was in China, I made a lot of friends. I made a lot of friends when I was in China.
 - 3 Until they built the new road, it was difficult to get to our village. It was difficult to get to our village until they built the new road.
 - 4 Although Jessica wrote three letters, Dylan never answered. Dylan never answered, although Jessica wrote three letters.
 - 5 As soon as the work was finished, I phoned him. I phoned him as soon as the work was finished.
- 3 1 I both swim and play tennis.
 - 2 He either lives or works in Birmingham.
 - 3 My father speaks neither Greek nor French.
 - 4 She likes neither pop music nor jazz.
 - 5 She can have either orange juice or water.
 - 6 I can neither sing nor dance.
 - 7 He's either Scottish or Irish.
 - 8 He's studying both physics and biology.
 - 9 This sofa is neither nice-looking nor comfortable.
 - 10 Anna neither looked at Henry nor spoke to him.

- 4 1 so 2 when 3 and 4 although
 - 5 because 6 and 7 because 8 and
 - 9 until 10 although 11 before
- 5 1 Karl plays neither the trombone nor the saxophone. 2 Melanie plays both the cello and the drums. 3 Neither Steve nor Karen play(s) the violin. 4 Both Joanna and Charles play the guitar. 5 Karen plays both the piano and the trumpet. 6 Sophie plays neither the guitar nor the trumpet. 7 Both Charles and Steve play the saxophone. 8 Neither Sophie nor Steve play(s) the trumpet.

- 1 I'm going to do some gardening until it gets dark. 2 I couldn't read because it was too dark. 3 The food wasn't very good, but he ate everything. 4 The lesson finished early, so we went for a walk. 5 After I got his letter, I went round to see him. 6 As soon as Jane gets up, she makes coffee. 7 You can't have any more coffee, because there isn't any. 8 I didn't go to work, because the buses weren't running. 9 The buses weren't running, so I didn't go to work. 10 The phone always rings while I'm having a bath. 11 I can't tell you the decision until I know myself. 12 He didn't work very hard, but he passed all his exams. 13 When the holiday was over, I had to start working very hard. 14 As soon as Andrew saw Zoe, he fell madly in love with her. 15 After I left school, I worked as a taxi driver.
- 1 He plays neither the piano nor the guitar.
 2 Although the train was late, I got there in time.
 OR The train was late, but I got there in time.
 3 small, cold and dirty 4 I/he/she/we/they went out 5 gets 6 Because it was cold, I put on a coat. OR It was cold, so I put on a coat.
 7 or walk home 8 a knife and fork
 9 Although I would like to help you, I don't have time. OR I would like to help you, but I don't have time. 10 both classical music and jazz.
 11 I find 12 I'm old

page 244

1 If I can't sleep, I get up and read. I get up and read if I can't sleep. 2 If you take books from my room, please tell me. Please tell me if you take books from my room. 3 If you're hungry, why don't you cook some soup? Why don't you cook some soup if you're hungry? 4 If she's been travelling all day, she must be tired. She must be tired if she's been travelling all day. 5 If we catch the first train, we can be in London by 9.00. We can be in London by 9.00 if we catch the first train.

irlanguage

- 2 1 You can't park here unless you live in this street.
 - 2 Unless you're over 15, you can't see this film.
 - 3 I don't drive fast unless I'm really late.
 - 4 Unless I'm going fishing, I get up late on Sundays. 5 We usually go for a walk after supper unless there's a good film on TV. 6 I see my mother at weekends unless I'm travelling. 7 Unless it's raining, I play tennis most evenings. 8 I can't help you unless you tell

page 245

me the truth.

- 1 get 2 will bring 3 will give 4 phones
 5 have 6 stop 7 will be 8 won't laugh
 9 will cook 10 stops
- 2 1 will be; pass 2 leave; will catch 3 will work; needs 4 am not; will see 5 will study; has 6 will drive; can 7 marries; will not have 8 will (you) stop; tells 9 talk; will (he) lend
- 3 1 If I lose my job, I won't find another job.
 - 2 If I don't find another job, I'll lose my flat.
 - 3 If I lose my flat, I'll move back to my parents' house.
 - 4 If I move back to my parents' house, I'll get very bored.
 - 5 If I get very bored, I'll go swimming every day.
 - 6 If I go swimming every day, I'll look very good.
 - 7 If I look very good, I'll meet interesting people.
 - 8 If I meet interesting people, I'll go to lots of parties.
 - 9 If I go to lots of parties, I'll have a wonderful time.

page 246

watch

- 1 1 could; would eat 2 were; would know 3 knew; would tell 4 asked; would (you) do 5 could; would (you) do 6 would buy; had 7 asked; would (you) say 8 would finish; did not talk 9 would study; had 10 were; would
- 2 1 If Jane and Peter were here, we would play cards.
 - 2 If we had enough money, we would buy a new car. 3 If Fred answered letters, I would write to him. 4 If I could find my camera, I would take your photo. 5 If I could understand the words, I would enjoy opera. 6 If Carola didn't talk about herself all the time, I would like her. 7 If I had a dog, I would go for walks.

- 1 1 If I were you, I'd take a holiday. 2 If I were you, I'd join a club. 3 If I were you, I'd fly. 4 If I were you, I'd call the police at once. 5 If I were you, I wouldn't sell it.
- 2 1 If I were you, I'd start a business. 2 If I were you, I'd put the money in the bank. 3 If I were you, I'd buy a sports car. 4 If I were you, I'd have a big party. 5 If I were you, I'd travel round the world. 6 If I were you, I'd stop work.
 7 If I were you, I'd give the money away.

page 248

- 1 1 lived 2 could 3 go 4 started 5 gave 6 need 7 gave 8 thought 9 was 10 go
- 2 1 have; 'Il 2 had; 'd 3 get; will 4 got; would
 - 5 did; would 6 do; will 7 go; won't
 - 8 went; wouldn't 9 does; won't 10 did; would

page 249

- 1 1 had been 2 had worked 3 had taken
 - 4 had not played 5 would have studied
 - 6 Would (you) have crashed
 - 7 would not have slept
 - 8 had come: would have had
 - 9 had not broken down; would have been
 - 10 would (you) have studied; had liked
 - 11 would not have got; had not wanted
 - 12 would (you) have helped; had asked
- 2 1 If I had caught the 8.15 train, I would have sat by a beautiful foreign woman.
 - 2 If I had sat by a beautiful foreign woman, I would have fallen in love and married her.
 - 3 If I had fallen in love and married her, I would have gone to live in her country.
 - 4 If I had gone to live in her country, I would have worked in her father's diamond business.
 - 5 If I had worked in her father's diamond business, I would have become very rich.
 - 6 If I had become very rich, I would have gone into politics.
 - 7 If I had gone into politics, I would have died in a revolution.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

page 250

- 1 (possible answers)
 1 G 2 H 3 J 4 B 5 K 6 D 7 F 8 C
 9 E 10 I
 (Other answers are possible.)
- 2 1 bought; would 2 go; 'II 3 lived; would 4 went; wouldn't 5 start; won't 6 win; will 7 married; would 8 take; 'II 9 rains; won't 10 did; wouldn't
- 3 1 will 2 looks; it's 3 will; will; will take 4 will 5 won't 6 will

page 251

- 4 1 had not drunk; would have slept
 - 2 had had; would have gone
 - 3 would have gone; had not met
 - 4 had not been; would have gone
 - 5 would have caught; had run
 - 6 had stopped; would have lived
 - 7 would not have asked; had needed
 - 8 would have been; had stayed
 - 9 would have worn; had known
 - 10 had had; would have gone
- 5 ... the cat wouldn't have eaten her supper. If the cat hadn't eaten her supper, she wouldn't have gone to the shop to buy food. If she hadn't gone to the shop to buy food, she wouldn't have seen an advertisement for a secretary. If she hadn't seen an advertisement for a secretary, she wouldn't have got a new job and met my father.
- 6 1 If she goes to Egypt, she will have to learn Arabic. 2 If she goes to Brazil, she will have to learn Portuguese. 3 If she goes to Holland, she will have to learn Dutch. 4 If she goes to Kenya, she will have to learn Swahili. 5 If she goes to Greece, she will have to learn Greek. 6 If she goes to Austria, she will have to learn German.

- 1 1 cleaned 2 knows 3 will come
 - 4 would understand 5 leave 6 would not sell
 - 7 did not live 8 will translate 9 ask 10 gets
- 2 1 if I pass 2 Correct. 3 ate 4 will see
 - 5 Correct. 6 Correct. 7 he works
 - 8 Correct. 9 if we are 10 Correct.

- 3 1 had not asked; would not have known
 - 2 had been; would have gone
 - 3 would not have said; had known
 - 4 would have been; had said
 - 5 had not got; would not have met
 - 6 would have died; had not taken
 - 7 had not been; would have gone
 - 8 had done; would have studied
 - 9 would have gone; had had
 - 10 had not helped; would have been

- 1 1 who 2 which 3 which 4 which 5 who 6 which 7 which 8 who 9 who 10 which 11 which 12 who
- 2 1 took 2 live 3 she is 4 lost 5 bought 6 is parked 7 it cuts 8 writes 9 make 10 I lent you

page 255

- 3 1 The man and woman who live in flat 1 play loud music all night. 2 The woman who lives in flat 2 broke her leg skiing. 3 The three men who live in flat 3 play golf all day. 4 The students who live in flat 4 haven't got much money. 5 The doctor who lives in flat 5 has three children. 6 The man who lives in flat 6 drives a Rolls-Royce. 7 The two women who live in flat 7 are hiding from the police.
- 1 The bus which goes to Oxford isn't running today. 2 Yesterday I met a man who works with your brother. 3 The child who didn't come to the party was ill. 4 Can you pick up the papers which are lying on the floor? 5 The eggs which I bought yesterday were bad. 6 Here's the book which you asked me to buy for you. 7 I don't like the man who is going out with my sister.

page 256

John's got a motorbike that can do 200km an hour.
 Is that the computer that doesn't work?
 Those are the trousers that I use for gardening.
 A man that lives in New York wants to marry my sister.
 The doctors that looked at my leg all said different things.
 The flowers that you gave to Aunt Sarah are beautiful.
 The children that play football with Paul have gone on holiday.

2 1 an insect that doesn't make honey and can bite you 2 a bird that can't fly 3 a bird that eats small animals and birds 4 an animal that flies at night and hears very well 5 a machine that can fly straight up 6 a plane that doesn't have an engine 7 a thing that can fly to the moon

page 257

1 10 25 30 40 50 65 70 85

- 1 the languages she spoke 2 the sweater I wore 3 a man I helped 4 the weather we have had 5 the car you bought
- 1 I'm working for a man I've known for twenty years.
 2 They played a lot of music I didn't like.
 3 The campsite we found was very dirty.
 4 I'm going on holiday with some people I know.
 5 That book you gave to me is very good.
 6 The ring she lost belonged to her grandmother.
 7 I'm driving a car I bought 15 years ago.
 - 8 The papers you wanted are on the table.

- 1 the girl that I was talking about 2 the people that I work for 3 the house that I live in
 4 the music that you are listening to 5 the bus that I go to work on
- 2 1 the girl I was talking about 2 the people I work for 3 the house I live in 4 the music you are listening to 5 the bus I go to work on
- 3 1 Eric is the man she works for. 2 Monica is the woman she plays tennis with. 3 Karen is the woman she reads to. 4 Emily and Jack are the people she babysits for. 5 Tom is the man she is in love with.
- 1 The man she works for gave her chocolates.
 2 The woman she plays tennis with gave her a clock.
 3 The woman she reads to gave her theatre tickets.
 4 The people she babysits for gave her a picture.
 5 The man she is in love with gave her flowers and earrings.

page 259

- 1 1 What he did made everybody angry. 2 Take what you want. 3 Soap that's what I forgot to pack. 4 She gave me a watch. It was just what I wanted. 5 That child does what he likes. 6 What I read in the paper makes me unhappy. 7 Don't tell me what I know already. 8 What I like best in life is doing nothing.
- 3 1 that 2 What 3 what 4 that 5 what 6 What 7 that 8 that 9 what 10 that

page 260

- 1 I know a man who writes film music.
 2 The bus which I took got to London twenty minutes late.
 3 We have friends who live in Chicago.
 4 The car which I bought last month isn't very good.
 5 We stayed in a hotel which had a beautiful garden.
 6 I didn't like the man who my sister married.
 7 The people who were at the party weren't very interesting.
 8 Tim uses long words which I can't understand.
 9 The computer which I'm using crashes every five minutes.
 10 The woman who works in the flower shop is terribly nice.
- 2 1 The tickets that I got were terribly expensive.
 2 These are the scissors that I use for cutting paper. 3 The woman that gives me tennis lessons is from Brazil. 4 The man that lives next door is always very friendly. 5 I'm spending the day with some people that I know. 6 What did you do with the money that we collected? 7 People that study languages are called linguists. 8 We've got a cat that brings dead rats into the house. 9 The oranges that you bought are all bad. 10 Why did you throw away the soup that I cooked?

page 261

- 1 the clock I bought 2 the film I saw 3 No change. 4 No change. 5 a man I really disliked 6 No change. 7 that dog you had 8 No change. 9 No change. 10 those earrings I bought
- The rooms they put us in; the beds they gave us; the extra blankets we asked for; The 'full English breakfast' they served; the 'French champagne' we ordered; that brochure you showed me; The 'view of the sea' they talked about; the gym they advertised; the bill we got

- 5 1 the book I was looking at 2 the people I work for 3 the hotel we stayed in 4 the place I drove to 5 those people we were talking to 6 the train we travelled on 7 some people I work with 8 the place I was telling you about 9 the pen I write with 10 the small village my mother lives in
- 1 Naomi got what Jessica wanted. 2 Sally got what Thalia wanted. 3 Jane got what Anna wanted. 4 Jessica got what Jane wanted. 5 Thalia got what Sally wanted.

page 262

- 1 1 A, B 2 A 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A, B 7 A 8 A, B 9 A, B 10 A, B 11 A 12 A 13 A, B 14 B 15 A
- 2 which had 6 The woman who came
 8 the man who 10 which I couldn't understand. 12 People who/that live
 15 people that you can't relax with.
 (The other sentences are all correct)
- 3 1 that 2 that 3 What 4 that 5 what 6 that 7 what 8 what 9 What 10 that

page 264

- 1 1 he 2 she 3 her. 4 they; their 5 he 6 me. 7 they 8 he; his 9 she; her 10 their
- 2 1 told 2 said 3 said 4 say 5 told 6 tell 7 told 8 said

- 3 1 She said (that) her sister needed a car.
 - 2 He said (that) he had to phone Andrew.
 - 3 She said (that) nobody wanted to help her.
 - 4 She said (that) the radio didn't work.
 - 5 He said (that) he would be in Paris in July.
 - 6 He said (that) he liked the red sweater.
 - 7 He said (that) he couldn't swim.
 - 8 She said (that) her parents were travelling.
 - 9 She said (that) the lessons were very good.
 - 10 They said (that) they hadn't heard from Joseph.

4 He thought (that) cats had nine lives. He thought (that) his father knew everything. He thought (that) spaghetti grew on trees. He thought (that) the teacher lived in the school. He thought (that) he would be rich one day. He thought (that) his mother had always been old.

page 266

- 1 1 She asked him where he lived. 2 She asked him where he worked. 3 She asked him where he was going. 4 She asked him where he had been. 5 She asked him what the number of his car was. 6 She asked him why he was driving on the right.
- She asked him whether it was his car.
 She asked him if/whether he had a driving licence.
 She asked him if/whether he had it with him.
 She asked him if/whether he always drove with the door open.
 She asked him if/whether he was listening to her.
- They asked him if/whether he was married.
 They asked him if/whether he had children.
 They asked him where he had worked before.
 They asked him why he wanted to change his job.
 They asked him if/whether he could speak any foreign languages.
 They asked him what exams he had passed.

page 267

- they live in Greece. 2 she went to Belfast yesterday. 3 he's been ill. 4 it's going to rain.
 she'll ask her sister. 6 they're going to be rich.
 if/whether lunch is ready. 8 where I put my keys. 9 I'm getting a cold. 10 this is the right answer.
- 2 1 Can you tell me where I can buy tickets?
 - 2 Do you know how much it costs?
 - 3 Can you tell me if/whether John has phoned?
 - 4 Can you tell me if/whether I must pay now?
 - 5 Can you tell me if/whether Maria likes steak?
 - 6 Do you know where I parked the car?

page 268

1 now - then 2 this - that 3 tomorrow - the next day 4 yesterday - the day before
5 today - that day 6 tonight - that night
7 last week - the week before 8 next week - the next week

- 2 1 that place. 2 the week before. 3 the day before. 4 that day. 5 that night. 6 the next day.
- 3 1 He said he loved that place. 2 He said he'd seen a great film the day before. 3 He said he was going to another party that night. 4 He asked if I wanted to play tennis the next day. 5 He said his girlfriend would be there the next week.

page 269

- Dave asked Sandra to give him her phone number.
 The boss told James to work late.
 - 3 Judy asked Kim not to tell Karen about Ryan.
 - 4 Mr Sanders asked Fred not to smoke in his car.
 - 5 The general told Colonel Walker to take100 men and cross the river. 6 Ann told Polly not to study so hard.
- 2 1 His girlfriend told him to write to her every day.
 - 2 His mother told him to keep his room clean.
 - 3 His father told him to work hard. 4 His sister told him not to go to too many parties. 5 His brother told him to get a lot of exercise. 6 His mother told him to change his shirt every day.
 - 7 His father told him not to go to bed late.
 - 8 His brother told him to be careful with money.
 - 9 His sister told him not to play cards for money.
 - 10 His grandmother told him to eat properly.

- 1 1 He asked her if/whether he could have ice cream for breakfast. 2 He asked her why the stars only came out at night. 3 He asked her why Daddy / his father had to work. 4 He asked her where God was. 5 He asked her whether he would be taller than her one day. 6 He asked her if she believed in Father Christmas. 7 He asked her if/whether Scotland was in London. 8 He asked her when he would be rich. 9 He asked her why French people didn't speak English. 10 He asked her how big the universe was.
- 2 1 She told him to wash his hands before breakfast. 2 She told him not to eat with his mouth open. 3 She told him to eat everything on his plate. 4 She told him not to talk with his mouth full. 5 She told him to make his bed. 6 She told him to clean his room. 7 She told him to polish his shoes. 8 She told him to put on a clean shirt. 9 She told him not to shout at his sister. 10 She told him not to be late for school.

- 3 1 John doesn't know how to phone New York.
 - 2 John doesn't know where to pay.
 - 3 John doesn't know when to start work.
 - 4 John doesn't know how to switch the computer on.
 - 5 John doesn't know where to put his coat.
 - 6 John doesn't know how much to pay.
 - 7 John doesn't know what to study.

page 271

4 1 had been 2 told 3 was having 4 was doing 5 had had 6 the (week) before 7 would 8 said 9 had 10 had lost 11 to buy 12 if/whether 13 was 14 was 15 would 16 was living 17 had spent 18 to send 19 to give 20 told 21 hadn't heard 22 where 23 was living. 24 if/whether 25 wanted

page 272

- 1 1 said 2 told 3 told 4 said 5 said 6 told 7 told 8 told 9 said 10 told
- 2 1 x 2 x 3 \ 4 x 5 \ 6 x 7 \ 8 \ 9 x 10 x
- 3 where the post office was. 4 when Jane is arriving? 7 tell me 8 was going 9 if/ whether I was 10 what he wanted. 11 what this word means. 12 wanted. 15 why she said (All the other sentences are correct.)

page 274

- 1 1 on 2 at 3 on 4 on 5 at; on 6 on 7 on 8 at; on 9 at 10 on 11 at 12 on
- 2 1 at 2 in 3 in 4 at 5 at 6 in 7 at; in 8 in 9 in 10 at; in; on 11 in 12 in 13 at 14 in 15 in

page 275

1 I'll see you next Wednesday.
2 It rained non-stop last week.
3 Business was bad last month.
4 Shall we go out this evening?
5 We're going to America next month.
6 Ann had a car crash last Wednesday.
7 I'm going to change my job next year.
8 My holiday is in August every year.
or ... every August.
9 I've spent too much money already this month.
10 The new school will be open next March.
or ... in March next year.

- 4 In five days. 2 In a week. 3 In two weeks. 4 In a month. 5 In a year. 6 In a hundred years.
- 5 1 the twenty-first of March / March the twenty-first, nineteen ninety-nine 2 the fourteenth of February / February the fourteenth, nineteen sixty 3 the twenty-eighth of July / July the twenty-eighth, eighteen forty-six 4 the sixth of May / May the sixth, two thousand and three 5 the ninth of May / May the ninth, nineteen eighty-four 6 the seventeenth of December / December the seventeenth, two thousand and twelve

page 276

- 1 1 until lunchtime. 2 until Saturday. 3 until the age of 14. 4 until the end. 5 until July.
- 2 1 He washed the car from 8.00 to/till/until 9.00.
 - 2 He talked to the woman next door from 9.00 to/till/until 9.15.
 - 3 He played tennis from 10.00 to/till/until 11.00.
 - 4 He talked to friends from 11.00 to/till/until 11.30.
 - 5 He went for a walk from 11.30 to/till/until 12.45.
- 4 1 by 2 until 3 by 4 by 5 by 6 until

page 277

- 1 1 for 2 during 3 during 4 for; during 5 during 6 for 7 during 8 for
- while they were playing 2 during the lesson
 during the war 4 while she was teaching
 while he was speaking 6 while they were
 talking 7 during her illness 8 while it was
 snowing
- **3** (possible answers)
 - 1 for an hour or so 2 for ever 3 for a moment
 - 4 for a couple of hours 5 for a minute or two
 - 6 for a few minutes 7 for an hour or so
 - 8 for life (Other answers are possible.)

page 278

1 1 in 2 on 3 in 4 on 5 in 6 on 7 on 8 in 9 on 10 on 2 1 in my diary. 2 in the office 3 on her first finger 4 in the cupboard. 5 on the roof of the car. 6 in your car 7 On his T-shirt 8 on the wall 9 in a little village 10 on a piece of paper; in my pocket

page 279

- 1 at the cinema 2 at the station. 3 at the party 4 at a Chinese restaurant 5 at a theatre 6 at work. 7 at breakfast 8 at Birmingham.
 9 at the hotel bar 10 at the crossroads.
- 2 1 at the bottom 2 at the end 3 at the top 4 at the top 5 at the beginning

page 281

- 1 1 above 2 by 3 above 4 by 5 behind 6 under 7 against
- 2 1 under 2 between; opposite 3 against 4 behind 5 near 6 in front of 7 near
- 3 1 opposite 2 between 3 behind 4 near 5 in front of 6 under 7 against 8 between 9 by

page 282

1 1 up the steps 2 through the gate 3 over the fence 4 past the café 5 round the corner 6 out of the shop 7 across the river 8 along the yellow line 9 under the bridge 10 into the water 11 off the bike 12 down the mountain

page 283

- 1 along the road 2 up the mountain 3 down the stairs 4 over the wall 5 into the bank
 6 round the corner 7 through the door
 8 off the table 9 out of the church
 10 under the bridge 11 past the bank
 12 across the river
- 3 1 out of; along 2 down; over 3 along; through; into 4 up; into; off 5 past; under; round 6 off; into 7 out of; across; out of 8 up; down
- 4 1 to 2 in 3 to 4 from; to 5 in 6 to 7 at 8 at 9 in 10 to

page 284

- 1 1 on 2 on 3 at 4 for 5 on 6 at 7 at 8 in 9 in 10 on 11 by 12 until 13 during 14 while 15 at
- 2 1 last Saturday 2 next year 3 in September every year OR every September 4 this month 5 last week 6 tomorrow evening 7 next Saturday 8 last month 9 next month 10 next August OR in August next year
- 1 along the road 2 down the mountain
 3 into the church 4 off the table 5 out of the church 6 up the mountain 7 over the wall
 8 past the church 9 round the corner
 10 through the door
- 4 1 between 2 above 3 in front of 4 opposite 5 against 6 through 7 along; by 8 out of; across 9 off; into 10 past; under; round

- 5 1 out of the church 2 on the bus 3 up the stairs 4 under the bridge 5 into the river
 6 behind the door 7 at the bottom of the stairs
 8 down the mountain 9 in front of the police station 10 at the end
- the twenty-third of April or April the twenty-third 2 the first of September or September the first 3 the fifth of August, two thousand and ten or August the fifth ... 4 the second of March, nineteen eighty or March the second ...
 the tenth of January, two thousand and two or January the tenth ... 6 the third of April, two thousand and eight or April the third ...
 the fourth of October or October the fourth 8 the twenty-first of March, nineteen thirty-six or March the twenty-first ... 9 the twenty-second of October, two thousand and six or October the twenty-second ... 10 the first of January, two thousand and one or January the first ...
- 7 (possible answers) 1 for a moment. 2 for life. 3 for a long time. 4 for a few minutes. 5 for a long time. 6 for a couple of hours 7 for years and years. 8 for a moment 9 for a few minutes. 10 for an hour or so. (Other answers are possible.)

8 1 on 2 on 3 opposite 4 off 5 by 6 along 7 at 8 under 9 up 10 round 11 down 12 across 13 through 14 out of 15 in front of 16 in 17 by

page 286

- 1 1 on 2 over 3 on 4 at 5 off 6 by 7 in 8 for 9 through 10 while
- 2 1 on 2 from; until 3 for 4 during 5 in 6 at/in front of/opposite 7 on 8 on 9 on 10 at 11 by/before 12 between 13 at 14 in 15 along/by/near
- 1 for three hours 2 by Saturday 3 out of the room 4 opposite our house 5 across this river
 6 on the ceiling 7 across the town 8 next
 Monday 9 at Christmas 10 off the bus

page 288

- 1 1, won't you? 2, has he? 3 -? 4, isn't it?
 5, can he? 6, isn't it? 7, was it? 8 -?
 9, aren't !?
- 2 1 isn't it? 2 aren't we? 3 isn't she? 4 won't you 5 can't he? 6 doesn't she? 7 doesn't it?
- 3 1 is he? 2 can you? 3 do they? 4 does she? 5 do they? 6 has he/she?

page 289

- 4 1 wasn't there? 2 aren't there? 3 isn't there? 4 has there? 5 were there?
- 5 1 do you? 2 isn't she? 3 isn't it? 4 can you? 5 wouldn't you? 6 do they? 7 hasn't she? 8 aren't !? 9 isn't there? 10 don't you?
- 1 They've lived in France, haven't they? 2 They all went home early, didn't they? 3 It rained all last week, didn't it? 4 Her brother writes for the newspapers, doesn't he? 5 I need a visa, don't I? 6 You'd like a holiday, wouldn't you? 7 The train was late, wasn't it? 8 Sarah forgot your birthday, didn't she? 9 There was a letter for me, wasn't there? 10 I'm in time for lunch, aren't I?

page 290

- 1 1 'No, it isn't.' or 'No, it's not.' 2 'No, he hasn't.' 3 'Yes, they do.' 4 'No, it isn't.' or 'No, it's not.' 5 No, he doesn't.' 6 'Yes, I/we do.' 7 'No, thanks, she wouldn't.' 8 'No, it wasn't.' 9 'No, I'm afraid I'm not.'
- 3 1 'No, I'm not.' 2 'Yes, it is.' 3 'Yes, she does,' 4 'No, it doesn't.' 5 'Yes, he did.' 6 'Yes, he did.'

page 291

- 1 1 Have you? 2 Did he? 3 Is there? 4 Can't you? 5 Doesn't it? 6 Is she?
 - 7 Do they? 8 Don't they?
- 2 1 C Don't you? 2 B Are they? 3 F Is it? 4 D Has he? 5 E Can't you?
- 3 (possible answers)
 - 1 'Congratulations!' 2 'Say 'hello' to her for me.'
 - 3 'Good luck!' 4 'That's interesting.'
 - 5 'What a pity!' 6 'What a nuisance!'
 - 7 'I am sorry.' 8 'That's a surprise.'
 - 9 'That's terrible.' (Other answers are possible.)

page 292

- 1 1 Are you? 2 Joe didn't phone yesterday.
 - 3 I'm feeling ill. 4 John needs help.
 - 5 You don't remember David, 6 Have you?
 - 7 can't they?
- 2 1 don't you? 2 Yes, I do. 3 didn't he?
 - 4 he didn't. 5 Is he? 6 does he? 7 Yes, it is.
 - 8 Aren't you? 9 don't you? 10 Yes, I do
 - 11 haven't you? 12 Yes, I have. 13 Are you?
 - 14 Yes, I would. 15 can I? 16 Yes, you can.
 - 17 Are you?

- 1 1 ... but I do. 2 ... I have. 3 ... I don't think she will. 4 ... I hope he has. 5 ... Of course I will. 6 ... I can tomorrow.
- 2 1 'They hope to.' 2 she didn't want to. 3 I'd like to. 4 I used to. 5 'Sorry, I forgot to.' 6 'It's starting to.'

1 I couldn't understand what he wanted from me.
2 She doesn't know what she's doing.
3 The bus is late again.
4 Do you speak French?
5 I haven't seen them.
6 I don't think so.

page 294

- 1 'So is Alice.'
 2 'So does my father.'
 3 'So can I.'
 4 'So does Carla.'
 5 'So has Edward.'
- 1 neither/nor was the meat.
 2 'Neither/Nor has Gemma.'
 3 'Neither/Nor does this one.'
 4 'Neither/Nor can I.'
 5 neither/nor will his friends.
- 3 1 'My car does.' 2 her sister hasn't. 3 our dog can't. 4 'The train doesn't.' 5 the back door was. 6 'Her second one did.'

page 295

4 1 Eric plays tennis, and so does Dan. 2 Julie isn't tall, but Denise is. 3 Denise doesn't laugh a lot, and neither/nor does Paul. 4 Dan can ski, but Rachel can't. 5 Julie has been to America, and so has Denise. 6 Eric isn't tall, and neither/nor is Paul. 7 Julie doesn't play tennis, but Dan does. 8 Paul doesn't like dancing, but Rachel does.

page 296

- 1 1 she wasn't. 2 he does. 3 she wouldn't. 4 it doesn't. 5 I can. 6 I haven't. 7 he doesn't. 8 she did. 9 they won't. 10 I do.
- (possible answers)
 1 'Say 'hello' to him for me.'
 2 'Congratulations!'
 3 'I don't believe it!'
 4 'Good luck!'
 5 'That's interesting.'
 6 'That's terrible.'
 7 'What a nuisance!'
 8 'I am sorry.'
 9 'That's a surprise.'
 10 'What a pity.'
- 1 nor/neither do cats. 2 nor/neither has the
 3.15. 3 'Nor/Neither was I.' 4 nor/neither
 did Sally. 5 so does his brother. 6 so are the
 potatoes. 7 nor/neither does her brother.
 8 so were we. 9 'Nor/Neither do her parents.'
 10 'So will I.'

page 297

- 4 1 ... but I do. 2 ... 'I have.' 3 ... but I don't think he will. 4 ... 'I'm trying to.' 5 ... 'Of course I won't.' 6 ... but I can't. 7 ... but I don't want to. 8 ... but I haven't. 9 ... 'No, I didn't.' 10 ... but I hope to.
- 1 I don't know why. 2 Have you seen my mother today? 3 I don't think so. 4 Sorry, you can't come in here. 5 Do you want some help?
 6 Do you know what I think? 7 I can't understand a word. 8 The house is cold.
 9 It's raining again. 10 I've lost my keys.
- 1 They're paper clips, aren't they? 2 It's a diary, isn't it? 3 It's a hole-punch, isn't it? 4 It's an address book, isn't it? 5 They're rulers, aren't they? 6 They're calculators, aren't they?

- 1 1 \ 2 \ X 3 \ X 4 \ X 5 \ \ 6 \ X 7 \ \ 8 \ \ 9 \ X 10 \ X
- 1 can't you? 2 won't she? 3 have you?
 4 doesn't he? 5 was there? 6 didn't she?
 7 does he? 8 isn't it? 9 is it? 10 will you?
 11 haven't they? 12 have they? 13 aren't!?
 14 don't they? 15 did it?
- 3 1 They haven't gone home, have they?
 - 2 We need tickets, don't we?
 - 3 You'd like some more coffee, wouldn't you?
 - 4 Mike was away yesterday, wasn't he?
 - 5 Angela didn't tell you her news, did she?
 - 6 Sophie can't play the piano, can she?
 - 7 There will be room for everybody, won't there?
 - 8 Your father doesn't eat meat, does he?
 - 9 These books don't belong to the library, do they?
 - 10 You're tired, aren't you?
- 4 1 it wasn't. 2 he wouldn't. 3 it doesn't. 4 it did. 5 it won't.
- 5 1 Have they? 2 Won't you? 3 Do you? 4 Has it? 5 Didn't!?

index

a an assastialas	against 200, 201	the and a/an 154-155
a, an: see articles	against 280–281	the not used in generalisations
a bit with comparatives 225	ages with be 3	158–159
a few	ago, for and since 307	with countable and uncountable
and a few of 181	agree	nouns 153
and few, a little and little 175	+ infinitive 122–123	
a little	agree with 305	as and like 307
and <i>a little of</i> 181	all	as, than and that 308
with comparatives 225	all, every and each 179	
a lot	all, everybody and everything 178	jobs and roles 307
a lot (of) 174, 181	and <i>all of</i> 181	not used without article 163
with comparatives 225	position with noun or verb 178	as as 228-229
able: be able to 81	along 282-283	as I am or as me 228
<i>above</i> 280-281	already	as soon as 234
across 282–283	already, yet and still 308	with present tense for future
active and passive 94	position 64, 214–215	meaning 41, 236
active and passive verb forms	with present perfect 64	ask
300	also: position 214-215	ask for 141, 305
adjectives 209–211; 216–220	although 234	ask somebody to do something
after be, become, etc 211	and but 237	125
and adverbs: the difference 212	always: position 214-215	at (preposition of place) 279
comparatives and superlatives	<i>and</i> 234, 238	and <i>in</i> 279
221–226	with adjectives 211	at a party 306
ending in -ly 217	angry about/with 305	at the bottom/top/side 306
followed by infinitives 128	annoyed and annoying 216	at the cinema/theatre 306
with enough/too + infinitive 129	another 307	at, to and in 283
words that are both adjectives	any	at (preposition of time) 274-275
and adverbs 217	and any of 181	at the beginning 306
adverb particles (away, back etc)	and some 170–171	at/in the end 306
142–143	anybody 172	
adverbs 212–215; 217	anyone 172	back: at the back 163
and adjectives: the difference	anything 172	bad at (ing) 133, 305
212	anything to 130	<i>baggage</i> : uncountable 198
comparatives and superlatives	anywhere 172	be 1–5
227	aren't !? 288, 301	auxiliary: see progressive,
of manner 212	arrive at/in 141, 283, 305	passive
other adverbs 213	articles 151–166	be able to 81
position 214–215	a and an 152	be born 97
words that are both adjectives	a/an and one 153	be careful 146
and adverbs 217		be in/out/away/back etc 142
	a/an for jobs, roles etc 156	
advice: uncountable 198	a/an in descriptions 157	contractions 2, 3
afraid	expressions without articles (e.g.	there is 6–7
afraid of 305	in bed, have breakfast, next	with hungry, thirsty, ages etc 3
with be 3	Monday) 162–163	because 234
after	names 160–161	and so 237
and afterwards 307	not used with my etc 163, 189	and why 308
with present tense for future	pronunciation 152	become + adjective 211
meaning 41, 236	special cases 162–163	

<i>bea</i> : expressions without article	come	ao
162	come back 142	and make 307
been and gone 61	come in 146	auxiliary: see questions,
before with present tense for	company: singular or plural verb	negatives, question tags,
future meaning 41, 236	197	short answers, reply
begin + infinitive 122–123	comparative and superlative	questions
believe	adjectives 221–226	doing 307
believe in 141, 305	forms 222	don't forget 146
not normally used in progressive	superlatives with in or of 226	don't worry 146
30-31	superlatives with the 155, 223	down 282-283
belong to 141, 305	the difference between	dream about/of 305
better, best 222	comparatives and superlatives	dressed in 305
between 280-281	223	dropping words in speech 293
born: be born 97, 307	using comparatives 224–225	during, for and while 277
borrow: structures 144	using superlatives 226	-
both 180	comparative and superlative	each
and both of 181	adverbs 227	and each of 181
both and 239	conditionals: see if	each, every and all 179
both, either and neither 180	congratulations 291	each other and reflexives 191
bottom: at the bottom 163	conjunctions 233–242	early: adjective and adverb 217
bread: uncountable 198	and 238	either
bring	because and so, although and but	and either of 181
bring back 143	237	either, neither and both 180
bring somebody something 144	both and, (n)either (n)or 239	either or 239
but 234	introduction to conjunctions 234	I'm not either 295
and although 237	position of conjunctions 235	else 307
buy somebody something 144	tenses with time conjunctions	England: singular or plural verb
by	236	197
and until 276	continue + infinitive 122–123	enjoy
bying 133	contractions 301	enjoying 134
by bicycle/bus/car etc 162	cook somebody something 144	enjoy myself/yourself etc 191
by Dickens, Mozart etc 306	could: see can	enough 176, 177
by myself/yourself etc 191	countable and uncountable	and enough of 181
in passives 94	nouns 153	with adjective and infinitive 129
preposition of place 280–281	country: the country 163	even: position 214-215
		<i>ever</i> 307
can	daily: adjective and adverb 217	position 214–215
ability 80–81	decide + infinitive 122–123	tenses 62
can't and may not 83	definitely: position 214–215	every
permission 84–85	demonstratives (this, that etc)	and every one of 181
requests 86	168–169	every, each and all 179
can't helping 134	depend on 305	expressions without
capital letters 300	describe: structures 144	prepositions 274
causative have 145	determiners 167–184	everybody 172
certainly: position 214–215	with <i>of</i> 181	and <i>all</i> 178
church: expressions without	different from/to 305	everyone 172
article 162	difficulty ining 305	everything 172
cinema: at/to the cinema 163	discuss something with somebody	and <i>all</i> 178
<i>club</i> : singular or plural verb 197	305	everywhere 172
cold with be 3	dislikeing 135	example of 305
collective nouns 197	divide into 305	excited and exciting 216
college: expressions without		

article 162 colour with be 3

expect	give	showing our feelings 291
+ infinitive 122–123	give back 143	some useful questions 107
expect somebody to do something	give somebody something 144	the bathroom 190
125	give uping 134, 143	things from the office 297
explain: structures 144, 305, 307	glasses 197	things that come in twos 180
	go	things that fly 256
family: singular or plural verb 197	going 134	things that people can do 290
farther, farthest 222	go away/back/in/out/on 142	time 231
fast: adjective and adverb 217	going to 36–37	towns 174
feel + adjective 211	gonna 301	travelling by air 100
fetch somebody something 144	gone and been 61	useful time-expressions with for
few	good at (ing) 133, 305	277
and few of 181	good luck 291	vehicles 137
few, a few, little and a little 175	got: have got 11	weather 187
fill in (a form) 143	gotta (= 'got to') 301	group nouns 197
fill up 143	grammar and vocabulary	3 .
find somebody something 144	adjectives that go with particular	hair: uncountable 198
finishing 134	nouns 219	happen to 141, 305
follow me 146	adverbs of degree; subjects of	hard: adjective and adverb 217
for	study 216	hardly
and since 65	animal behaviour 117	used without <i>not</i> 115
for, since and ago 307	animals, birds and other	hardly ever: position 214–215
for, during and while 277	creatures 155	hate
for example 306	cities and countries 147	+ -ing form 135
forget	clothes 33	+ infinitive 135
+ infinitive 122–108	common adjectives 176, 177	not normally used in progressive
+ infinitive oring 308	common adjectives with	30–31
friendly: adjective, not adverb 217	somebody etc 183	have 8-11
frightened and frightening 216	common expressions with	auxiliary: see perfect
from to	reflexive pronouns 191	don't have to and mustn't 77
movement 283	common imperative expressions	have a good journey/holiday 146
time 276	146	have breakfast, a shower, a good
front; at the front 163	containers 199	flight etc 10
furniture: uncountable 198	dates 275	have got 11
further, furthest 222	discovery, invention, creation 55	have some (more) 146
future 35–44	duration 285	have something done 145
future passive 96	eight useful things 91	have to 76-78
going to 36–37	games 19	he 186–187
of <i>be</i> 5	giving directions 43	hear
of have 9	qo with spare-time activities 215	and listen to 307
present progressive 38	housework 71	somebody do/doing something
simple present 41	interests 159	308
will 39–40	jewellery 261	help
W/III 39-40	jobs 91	help yourself 190
gerunds: see -ing forms	kinds of things 156	help! 146
get: structures 140	learning and using a language	help somebody to do something
+ adjective 211	127	125
get into, out of, on, off 141, 305	materials 153, 165	her
get out 142	musical instruments 241	object pronoun 186–187
_	names of languages 251	possessive; her and his 188–189
get somebody something 144 get to a place 305	one-word noun + noun	hers 190
get up 142	structures 205	herself 191
have got 11	public notices 131	him 186–187
nave got 11	relations 13	himself 191
		scn 171
	seven useful things 152	

<i>his</i> 188–189, 190 and <i>her</i> 188	in (preposition of place) 278–279 in a picture 306	it 186–187 used for countries, animals,
holiday: on holiday 162	in a raincoat/dress/hat 306	times, dates, distance, weather
home 307	in a voice 306	186–187
without article 162	in and at 279	it depends 31
	in and on 278	it doesn't matter 30
hope 307	in front of 280–281	its 188–189
+ infinitive 122–123		
not normally used in progressive 30–31	in or of after superlatives 226 in pen/pencil 306	and it's 189, 301 itself 191
hospital: expressions without	in the middle 306	
article 162	in the rain/snow 306	jeans 197
how	in the sky 306	just 307
How do you spell/pronounce?	in, at and to 283	position 214–215
107	indirect speech 263-272	with present perfect 64
How long does it take to? 107	here and now words 268	
How long have you been here?	if and whether 266	keep on ing 134
and How long are you here for?	indirect questions 266	kind to 305
107	infinitives 269	know: not normally used in
how many as subject 108-109	present reporting verbs 267	progressive 30–31
how many/much 173	pronouns 264–265	knowledge: uncountable 198
how old/tall/far etc 106	say and tell 264	
how to 269	tenses 264–265	last: expressions without
hundred: a hundred 163	infinitives 119–130	prepositions 274
hungry with be 3	after adjectives 128	last year etc: no article 162
hurry up 142, 146	after nouns (e.g. letters to write)	late: adjective and adverb 217
	130	laugh at 141, 305
/ 186–187	after verbs 122–123	<i>learn</i> + infinitive 122–123
I am sorry 291	in indirect speech 269	leaving out words
I don't believe it 291	infinitive of purpose 121	in speech 293
I don't mind 31	it with infinitive subjects 126–	relative who, which, that 257
I hope so/not 31	127	left: on the left 163
<i>I see</i> (= '1 understand') 30	verb + object + infinitive 124-	lend somebody something 144
idea: the idea ofing 305	125	less than 225
if 243–252	with adjective and enough/too	let and make 307
and when 307	129	let in 143
if I go or if I went 248	with and without to 120	let's 147
if I were you 247	information: uncountable 198	lie down 142
in indirect questions 266	-ing forms (gerunds) 131–135	like (verb)
position of if-clauses 244	after prepositions 132–133	+ing 135
unless 244	after to 133	+ infinitive 135
unreal past 249	as subjects 131	not normally used in progressive
with past tense and would	verb + -ing form 134–135	30–31
meaning 'not real' or 'not	-ing forms (present participles)	<i>like</i> and <i>as</i> 307
probable' 246	in progressive (continuous)	listen to 141, 305
with present tense for future	verb forms: see present	and <i>hear</i> 307
meaning 41, 245, 248	progressive, past	little
imperatives 146	progressive etc	and little of 181
in (preposition of time) 274–275	interested	little, a little, few and a few 175
in/at the end 306	and interesting 216	lonely: adjective, not adverb 217
in/on time 306	interested in 305	ionery, adjective, not adverb 217
,	with be 3	
	into 282–283	
	irregular comparatives 222	
	irregular comparatives 222	
	irregular verbs 299	
	iregular verbs 255	

look	much	nothing 172
+ adjective 211	and many 173	nothing to 130
look after/at/for 141, 305	and much of 181	used without not 115
look out! 142, 146	too much 177	nouns 195-208
look round 142	with comparatives 225	+ infinitive (e.g. letters to write)
look up (something in a	must 75, 77	130
dictionary etc) 143	and should 79	countable and uncountable
look, see and watch 308	mustn't and don't have to 77	nouns 198-199
lots (of) 174, 181	<i>my</i> 188–189	group nouns 197
love	myself 191	noun + noun 204-205
+ing 135		one(s) 200
+ infinitive 135	names with or without the	possessives with 's and s' 201-
not normally used in progressive	160-161	203, 205
30-31	near 280–281	singular and plural 196
lovely: adjective, not adverb 217	need	nowhere 172
luck: uncountable 198	+ infinitive 122–123	used without not 115
<i>luggage</i> : uncountable 198	need somebody to do something	
	125	of
made of 153	not normally used in progressive	or in after superlatives 226
make	30-31	with determiners 181
and <i>do</i> 307	negatives 112-115; see also the	off 282–283
and <i>let</i> 307	units on be, have, modal verbs	offer somebody something 144
make somebody something 144	and the various tenses	often: position 214-215
make yourself at home 146	neither	on (preposition of place) 278
make yourself comfortable 191	and neither of 181	and <i>in</i> 278
many	neither nor 239	on foot 162
and many of 181	neither can l etc 294	on holiday 162
and much 173	neither, either and both 180	on page 22, 306
too many 177	never	on the phone 306
married to 305	position 214-215	on the radio 306
may	tenses 62	on TV 306
and might 82-83	used without not 115	on (preposition of time) 274-275
may not and can't 83	news: uncountable 198	on/in time 306
permission 85	next	one and <i>a/an</i> 153
me 186–187	expressions without	one(s) 200
me too 295	prepositions 274	only
mean: not normally used in	next Friday etc: no article 162	only a little/few 175
progressive 30–31	nice to 305	position 214-215
might and may 82-83	no (= 'not any')	the only 155
million: a million 163	and none (of) 181	opposite 280–281
mind ing 134	and <i>not</i> 114	orchestra: singular or plural verb
<i>mine</i> 190	noing 131	197
modal verbs 73-92, and see	used without not 115	ought to 79
entries for individual verbs	no one 172	<i>our</i> 188–189
monthly: adjective and adverb	nobody 172	ours 190
217	used without not 115	ourselves 191
more	none (of) 181	out of 282-283
and more of 181	non-progressive verbs 30-31	over 282–283
in comparatives 222–225	nor can l etc 294	
more than 225	not	pair 197
most	and <i>no</i> 114	
and most of 181	I hope not 31	
in superlatives 222–223, 226	not much/many and little/few	
mountains: the mountains 163	175	

passives 33-102	preier	promise
future 96	+ infinitive 122–123	+ infinitive 122-123
introduction to passives 94	not normally used in progressive	promise somebody something
passive and active verb forms	30-31	144
300	prepositions 273–286	punctuation 301–302
present perfect 99	+-ing form 132-133	put down 143
present progressive 98	after particular verbs 141	put on (clothes) 143
simple past 97	at (place) 279	pyjamas 197
simple present 95	at, in and on (time) 274-275	
past 282–283	by and until 276	question tags 288–289, 292
past continuous: see past	common expressions with	question words 2, 106–107
progressive	prepositions 306	as subjects 108–109
past participles (worked, broken,	for, during and while 277	questions 102–111
seen etc)	fromto (time) 276	indirect questions 266
in perfect tenses 58, 68	in and on (place) 278	prepositions in questions 111
in passives 94	in questions 111	question words 2, 106-107
past perfect 68-69	in relative clauses 258	question-words as subjects
past progressive 51-53	movement 282-283	108-109
past simple: see simple past	other prepositions of place 280-	questions with long subjects 110
past tenses 45-56	281	yes/no questions 104-105
of be 4	present participles (-ing	see also the units on be, have,
of have 9	forms) in progressive	modal verbs and the various
past progressive 51–53	(continuous) verb forms: see	tenses
past progressive and simple past	present progressive, past	
52-53	progressive etc	radio: on the radio 163
simple past 46-50	present perfect 58-67	read somebody something 144
with <i>if</i> 246-248	forms 58-59	reason for 306
<i>pay</i> and <i>pay for</i> 141, 305	passive 99	reflexives (myself etc) 191
people 196	present perfect and present 61,	and each other 191
most people or most of the people	67	refuse + infinitive 122–123
181	present perfect and simple past	relative pronouns (who, whom,
perfect tenses 57-72	compared 60-61	which, that, what) and relative
present perfect 58-65	present perfect progressive	clauses 253-262
present perfect progressive	66-67	leaving out relative pronouns
66-67	time words 62-63	257
past perfect 68-69	with already, yet and just 64	prepositions in relative clauses
personal pronouns 186–187	with since and for 65	258
phrasal verbs 142–143	present progressive 23-29	that 256, 259
pick up 143	and simple present 28-29	what 259
place names with or without the	for future 38	who and which 254-255
160–161	passive 98	whom 255
<i>plan</i> + infinitive 122–123	present simple; see simple	remember
pleased with 305	present	+ infinitive oring 308
plenty (of) 174, 181	present tenses 15-34	not normally used in progressive
plural nouns 196	simple present 16-22	30-31
<i>police</i> : plural verb 197	present progressive (continuous)	reply questions 291, 292
polite to 306	23–27	reported speech: see indirect
possessive determiners and	the two present tenses	speech
pronouns 188-190	compared 28-29	right with be 3
mine, yours etc 190	non-progressive verbs 30–31	right: on the right 163
my, your etc 188-189	present and present perfect 61,	round 282-283
possessive nouns with 's and s'	67	
201–203, 205	prison: expressions without article	's and s' possessives 201–203,
practiseing 134	162	205
	probably: position 214-215	same 308

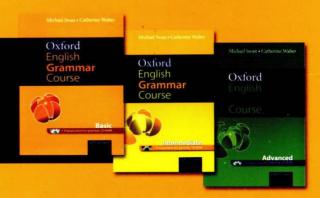
say 'hello' to him/her for me 291	spelling	the: see articles
say	adverbs in -ly 212	with superlatives 223
and tell 264	capital letters 300	the country/mountains/sea 163
structures 144	comparatives and superlatives	the same 163
school: expressions without	222	theatre: at/to the theatre 163
article 162	-ing forms 23	their 188-189
scissors 197	noun plurals 196	theirs 190
sea: the sea 163	regular past participles 58	them 186–187
see	's and s' in possessives 201	themselves 191
see, look and watch 308	simple past endings 46	there is 6-7
somebody do/doing something	simple present endings 16	in question tags 289
308	spend (time)ing 134	these 168-9
seem	spoken grammar 287–298	they 186–187
+ adjective 211	leaving out words 293	think
+ infinitive 122–123	question tags 288–289, 292	(don't) think so 31
not normally used in progressive	reply questions 291, 292	not always used in progressive
30–31	short answers 290, 292	30–31
send somebody something 144	so am I, nor can he etc 294–295	structures 308
shall 39	stand up 142	think about 141
shall I/we? 87	start + infinitive 122–123	think about/of 306
she 186–187	still	thirsty with be 3
short answers 290, 292	position 214–215	this 168-9
should 79	still, yet and already 308	expressions without
and must 79	stoping 134	prepositions 274
show somebody something 144	such and so 308	this Monday etc: no article 162
side: at the side 163	suggest: structures 144	those 168-169
silly: adjective, not adverb 217	superlative: see comparative	thousand: a thousand 163
simple past 46–50	surprised and surprising 216	through 282-283
and past progressive 52-53	switch/turn on/off (lights,	throw away 143
passive 97	electrical appliances) 143	till: see until
simple present 16–22, 28–31		to (preposition)
and present progressive 28–29	take	to, at and in 283
for future 41	take away 143	toing 133
passive 95	take care of yourself 191	to with infinitive: see infinitives
since and for 65	take off (clothes) 143	too
since, for and ago 307	take somebody something 144	+ adjective + infinitive 129
singular and plural nouns 196	talk about 141, 306	and very 308
sit down 142, 146	teach somebody something 144	too, too much/many and not
sleep well 146	team: singular or plural verb 197 tell	enough 177
smile at 306 so 234		too (= 'also'): I am too, me too 295
and because 237	and say 264	top: at the top 163 translate into/from 306
and because 237 and such 308	tell somebody something 144	translate into/from 306
I hope/think so 31	tenses: see present, past etc	trousers 197
so am l etc 294	in indirect speech 264–265 with time conjunctions 236	<i>try</i> + infinitive 122–123
some	than after comparatives 224	+ infinitive oring 308
and <i>any</i> 170–171	than, as and that 308	turn round 142
and some of 181	than I am or than me 225	turn up/down (radio, TV, heater
somebody 172	thank somebody for something	143
someone 172	306	TV: on TV 163
something 172	that (relative pronoun) 256, 259	typical of 306
something to 130	that, as and than 308	Spical of 300
sometimes: position 214–215	that, this etc 168–169	uncountable: see countable
somewhere 172	that's a surprise/interesting/	under 280–283
spachetti: uncountable 198	terrible 291	200 200

understand: not normally used in Where are you from / do you come progressive 30-31 from? 107 university: expressions without whether 266 article 162 which (question word) unless 244 and what 308 until/till 234, 276 which ...? as subject 108-109 which (relative pronoun) 254-255 + present with future meaning 41, 236 while 234 and by 276 + present with future meaning up 282-283 41, 236 us 186-187 while, for and during 277 used to 89 who (question word) as subject usually: position 214-215 108-109 who (relative pronoun) 254-255 verbs with adverb particles **whom** 308 (phrasal verbs) 142-143 relative pronoun 255 verbs with infinitives 122-123 whose and who's 301 love, like, hate 135 why and because 308 with object + infinitive 124-125 will 39-40 verbs with prepositions 141 with + article 163 verbs with two objects 144 without very and too 308 + article 163 very much: position 213 without ...ing 133 won't 39 wait: structures 141, 308 word order 304 work wait for me 146 **wake up** 142 expressions without article 162 wanna (= 'want to') 301 uncountable 198 want worse, worst 222 + infinitive 122-123 would with if 246-249 not normally used in progressive would like + infinitive 88 30-31 would like somebody to do want somebody to do something something 124 write somebody something 144 wash up (cups, plates etc) 143 write to 306 watch, look and see 308 wrong we 186-187 be wrong 3 weekly: adjective and adverb 217 wrong with 306 well: position 213 were: if I were you 247 yet what (question word) with present perfect 64 and which 308 yet, still and already 308 as subject 108-109 you 186-187 what ... with article 163 your 188-189 what ... like? 107 yours 190 yourself, yourselves 191 what a nuisance/pity 291 what time/colour/size/sort of ...? etc 3, 106 what to ... 269 what (relative pronoun) 259 when + present with future meaning 41, 236 and if 307

when to ... 269

Oxford English Grammar Course

Learn and practise the grammar you need to speak and write in English.



- Short grammar explanations are easy to remember. Colour makes the grammar clear.
- Clear simple examples show how the grammar works.

AM I? HAVE YOU? CAN SHE? DO YOU? DOES HE?

All ves/no questions begin with a verb.

To make guestions: put an auxiliary verb before the subject.

(Auxiliary verbs are be (am, are etc), have/has/had, will, would, can, could, shall, should, may, might and must.)

The train will be late. STATEMENT : The taxi is coming. Ann has arrived. QUESTION : Is the taxi coming?

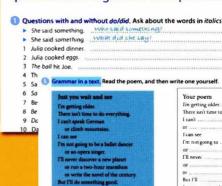
Has Ann arrived? Will the train be late? Can you pay?

 Texts, articles, quotations and poems use the grammar.

was born in 1976. She is an explorer who has travelled extensively in Asia and Africa. She has also participated in expeditions to the North and South Poles and she has climbed in the Andes and Himalayas. For the last five years, Ann has been working for the National Institute for Polar Research. Sh has written four books about her experiences.

 Hundreds of exercises practise the grammar. questions and negatives: more practice

You can pay.





- Internet exercises and grammar-and-vocabulary work
- Tests in the book and online

About the authors

Michael Swan and Catherine Walter are experts in English and language teaching. Michael is the author of Practical English Usage. Catherine is a Lecturer in Applied Linguistics at Oxford University. Their well-known books include The Good Grammar Book and How English Works (the basis for Oxford English Grammar Course Basic and Intermediate).



Pronunciation for grammar CD-ROM practises rhythm, stress and intonation. Listen, think, repeat and record.

Online exercises take you from practising grammar to using grammar.

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

irlanguage

www.oup.com/elt

